Super Power Series Book

EXPLORING INDIA & BEYOND FOR YOUNG THINKERS

Study Material BOOK for 7th Standard Social Science

(PART 2)

Based on NCERT/CBSE Curriculum



Compiled By: Dr. P. S. Aithal

Alevoor Poornaprajna Public School, Udupi

www.alevoorpps.in

Published BY:

Poornaprajna Publication, Udupi, India

www.poornaprajnapublication.com

Super Power Series Book

EXPLORING INDIA & BEYOND FOR YOUNG THINKERS

Study Material BOOK for 7th Standard Social Science

(PART 2)

Based on NCERT/CBSE Curriculum

Compiled By: Dr. P. S. Aithal

Alevoor Poornaprajna Public School, Udupi

www.alevoorpps.in

Published BY:

Poornaprajna Publication, Udupi, India

www.poornaprajnapublication.com

EXPLORING INDIA & BEYOND FOR YOUNG THINKERS

Study Material BOOK for 7th Standard Social Science

(PART 2)

(Prepared as per Poornaprajna Integrated Student Support Model)

CONTENTS

Cha. No.	Chapters	Page No.
-	PREFACE	01
1	The Story of Indian Farming	01-43
2	India and Her Neighbours	01-44
3	Empires and Kingdoms: 6th to 10th Centuries	01-42
4	Turning Tides: 11th and 12th Centuries	01-41
5	India, a Home to Many	01-38
6	The State, the Government, and You	01-40
7	Infrastructure: Engine of India's Development	01-39
8	Banks and the Magic of Finance	01-39

Published BY:
Poornaprajna Publication, Udupi, India
Year of Publication: October, 2026
ISBN:
DOI: https://doi.org/10.5281/zenodo.23306357
www.poornaprajnapublication.com

PREFACE

EXPLORING INDIA & BEYOND FOR YOUNG THINKERS – Study Material Book for 7th Standard Social Science (Part 2) has been thoughtfully developed with the help of AI-driven GPTs in accordance with the Poornaprajna Integrated Student Service Model to provide comprehensive, learner-centred academic support to Grade 7 students. Based on the NCERT/CBSE Curriculum, this book aims to strengthen students' understanding of India's rich history, geographical diversity, cultural heritage, democratic institutions, and economic development. It seeks to nurture curiosity, critical thinking, analytical reasoning, social awareness, responsible citizenship, and a spirit of inquiry, transforming Social Science from a subject of memorisation into an exciting journey of discovery and meaningful learning.

The book systematically covers eight important chapters: The Story of Indian Farming; India and Her Neighbours; Empires and Kingdoms: 6th to 10th Centuries; Turning Tides: 11th and 12th Centuries; India, a Home to Many; The State, the Government, and You; Infrastructure: Engine of India's Development; and Banks and the Magic of Finance. Each chapter provides structured learning support through chapter summaries, important concepts and rules, Lower-Order Thinking Skills (LOTS) and Higher-Order Thinking Skills (HOTS) questions, fill-in-the-blanks, one-mark to five-mark descriptive questions, application-oriented exercises, and Olympiad-type multiple-choice questions. This integrated approach encourages students to progress from basic factual understanding to conceptual clarity, historical interpretation, geographical reasoning, critical analysis, and real-life application of knowledge.

Designed to prepare students confidently for both CBSE school examinations and competitive examinations such as Social Science Olympiads, EXPLORING INDIA & BEYOND FOR YOUNG THINKERS (Part 2) aims to bridge classroom learning with competitive-examination readiness and lifelong learning. Through systematic practice, thought-provoking questions, practical applications, and opportunities for independent exploration, the book seeks to develop knowledge, confidence, creativity, problem-solving abilities, ethical values, and global awareness. We hope this book inspires every young thinker to explore the past, understand the present, envision the future, appreciate India's unity in diversity, and grow into an informed, compassionate, responsible, and globally aware citizen.

Dr. P. S. Aithal
(www.psaithal.in)

7th Standard Social Science Book (Part 2) Chapter 1

Chapter 1: The Story of Indian Farming

1.1 Summary of the Chapter:

Summary: "The Story of Indian Farming":

(1) Agriculture includes preparing soil, growing crops, raising livestock, forestry, horticulture, fisheries, and related activities. It supports food production and the livelihoods of many people in India.

(2) Indian farming has a long history. Evidence of early crops such as rice, barley, and millets has been found at ancient sites, including the Ganga Plain and Mehrgarh.

(3) Over time, farmers cultivated a wider range of crops, including pulses, oilseeds, cotton, jute, vegetables, and fruits. They also domesticated animals and developed practices such as intercropping.

(4) Ancient Indian texts recorded knowledge about seeds, soil preparation, planting, irrigation, trees, and animal care. Some practices described in these texts, such as grafting, are still used today.

(5) India's varied climate, terrain, soil, and water availability determine which crops grow in each region. Farming practices must suit local conditions.

(6) The monsoon is especially important to Indian agriculture. Crops are grown in three main seasons: **kharif** during the monsoon, **rabi** in winter, and **zaid** in summer.

(7) India has different soil types, each suited to particular crops. Maintaining soil health helps farms remain productive and sustainable.

(8) Farming methods have changed from traditional tools and irrigation systems to tractors, machinery, improved seeds, and other modern technologies. Modern methods can raise production, while traditional practices often work closely with local conditions and nature.

(9) Sustainable agriculture seeks to meet food needs while protecting soil, water, and ecosystems. Combining useful modern innovations with eco-friendly practices can help reduce harm to nature.

(10) Government support can include seeds and farming information, training, affordable irrigation electricity, crop insurance, crop purchases, cold storage, and digital access to markets.

(11) Farmers face difficulties such as small and divided landholdings, costly equipment, climate change, unpredictable weather, water stress, and debt. These challenges can damage crops and livelihoods, so resilient and sustainable farming is important for farmers and the country's food supply.

1.2 Important Formulas:

Important Rules for Solving Qualitative Problems on Indian Farming:

(1) **Identify the crop's needs first.** Consider the amount of water, warmth, sunlight, and growing time the crop requires.

(2) **Match the crop to the climate.** A crop grows well when the region's temperature and rainfall suit it. Different climates across India support different crops.

(3) **Consider the soil type.** Soil fertility, texture, and water-holding capacity affect which crops can grow successfully.

(4) **Check water availability.** Farming depends on rainfall, rivers, groundwater, and irrigation. Water availability can influence both the crop choice and the farming method.

(5) **Account for the land's shape and terrain.** Flat plains, plateaus, and hills require different farming methods. For example, terrace farming is suited to slopes.
(6) **Classify crops by season.** Kharif crops are generally grown during the monsoon, rabi crops in winter, and zaid crops in summer.
(7) **Use regional conditions to explain crop patterns.** When comparing two regions, relate their crops to differences in climate, soil, water, and terrain.
(8) **Explain why swapping crops may not work.** A crop suited to one region may fail elsewhere if the climate, soil, or water supply is unsuitable.
(9) **Compare traditional and modern methods by their effects.** Consider productivity, cost, labour, environmental impact, and suitability for the farm.
(10) **Choose sustainable practices where possible.** Prefer methods that conserve soil and water and reduce harm to ecosystems, while meeting food needs.
(11) **Consider the farmer's resources and limits.** The size of the landholding, access to machinery, money, seeds, and market access can affect which choices are practical.
(12) **Include risks and support in your reasoning.** Weather changes, droughts, heavy rainfall, and water stress can threaten crops. Government support, insurance, training, and market information can help farmers respond.

Use these rules to build each answer as: **condition → effect on farming → suitable crop or method → reason**.

1.3 Fill-Up the Blank LOTS type questions with Answers: (50 Questions)

LOTS Fill-in-the-Blank Questions: The Story of Indian Farming:

1. Agriculture includes the preparation of soil and the cultivation of _____.
   Answer: plants
2. Rearing livestock is also known as animal _____.
   Answer: husbandry
3. The rearing of fish is called _____.
   Answer: pisciculture
4. The cultivation of fruits, vegetables, flowers, and ornamental plants is called _____.
   Answer: horticulture
5. Archaeological evidence of early rice grains has been found in the _____ Plain.
   Answer: Ganga
6. At Mehrgarh, the cultivation of barley and _____ dates to the 7th millennium BCE.
   Answer: millets
7. Barley and wheat were staple crops of the _____.
   Answer: Harappans
8. Growing two or more different crops at the same time is called _____.
   Answer: intercropping
9. The ancient text *Vṛikṣhāyurveda* is associated with _____.
   Answer: Surapāla
10. Joining one plant with another so they grow as a single plant is called _____.
    Answer: grafting
11. India is divided into _____ agroclimatic zones.
    Answer: 15
12. The two main monsoon systems in India are the southwest and _____ monsoons.
    Answer: northeast
13. The southwest monsoon generally brings rain from _____ to September.
    Answer: June

14. The northeast monsoon generally prevails from October to _____.
    Answer: December
15. Indian agriculture is mainly divided into _____ cropping seasons.
    Answer: three
16. The three main cropping seasons are kharif, rabi, and _____.
    Answer: zaid
17. Kharif crops are generally grown during the _____ season.
    Answer: monsoon
18. Rabi crops are generally grown during the _____ season.
    Answer: winter
19. Zaid crops are generally grown during the _____ season.
    Answer: summer
20. Kharif crops depend greatly on the timely arrival of the _____.
    Answer: monsoons
21. Before the terms kharif, rabi, and zaid became common, wet crops were called _____.
    Answer: kedāra
22. Before the term rabi became common, winter crops were called _____.
    Answer: haimana
23. Before the term zaid became common, summer crops were called _____.
    Answer: graiṣhmika
24. Soil is the thin, upper layer of the Earth's crust that supports _____ life.
    Answer: plant
25. Soil forms through the breakdown of rocks and the decay of _____ matter.
    Answer: organic
26. The nutrient-rich material formed from decayed plant and animal matter is called _____.
    Answer: humus
27. India's soils are classified into _____ major types in the chapter.
    Answer: six
28. Soil deposited by rivers is called _____ soil.
    Answer: alluvial
29. Black soil is also known as _____ soil.
    Answer: cotton
30. Laterite soil is also called _____ earth.
    Answer: brick
31. Mountain or _____ soil is thin, rough, and rocky.
    Answer: alpine
32. Small grains of sand make up most of _____ soil.
    Answer: sandy
33. The movement of groundwater reserves is affected by the development of _____.
    Answer: irrigation
34. Seeds have traditionally been passed down through _____ from generation to generation.
    Answer: families
35. The Indian Council of Agricultural Research is abbreviated as _____.
    Answer: ICAR
36. The seed-coating paste made with cow dung and urine is called _____.
    Answer: beejamrit

37. The ancient Indian seed drill combined soil preparation, seed planting, and closing the _____.
Answer: furrow
38. High-yielding varieties of seeds are abbreviated as _____.
Answer: HYV
39. The Green Revolution brought major changes to Indian agriculture in the 1960s and _____.
Answer: 1970s
40. The Green Revolution especially increased the production of wheat and _____.
Answer: rice
41. M. S. Swaminathan is known as the architect of the _____ Revolution.
Answer: Green
42. A farming method that uses steps cut into a hillside is called _____ farming.
Answer: terrace
43. Terrace farming helps prevent soil erosion and conserve _____.
Answer: water
44. In gokṛiṣhi, cows provide manure and bullocks are used to _____ the fields.
Answer: plough
45. The traditional homestead farming system common in the Konkan Plains is called _____.
Answer: kulāgar
46. Modern farming commonly uses machinery such as tractors and _____.
Answer: harvesters
47. Heavy use of chemical fertilisers and pesticides can contaminate soil and _____.
Answer: water
48. Hydroponics grows plants in nutrient-rich _____ solutions.
Answer: water
49. The Pradhan Mantri Fasal Bima Yojana is a crop _____ scheme.
Answer: insurance
50. The chapter identifies climate change and small landholdings as challenges faced by _____.
Answer: farmers

1.4 Fill-Up the Blank HOTS type questions with Answers: (40 Questions)

HOTS Fill-in-the-Blank Questions: The Story of Indian Farming:

1. A farmer chooses rice for a field that receives heavy monsoon rain and has plenty of water. The choice is suitable because the crop matches the local _____.
Answer: climate and water conditions
2. If a region receives very little rain during the monsoon, farmers may need other sources of water, such as canals or _____.
Answer: groundwater
3. A farmer plants two different crops in the same field at the same time. This practice is called _____.
Answer: intercropping
4. A farmer on a hillside makes flat steps for cultivation. This method can reduce soil erosion and help _____.
Answer: conserve water
5. A farmer grows a crop that needs abundant water in a dry area without irrigation. The main reason the crop may fail is insufficient _____.
Answer: water

6. Two regions grow different crops because their climate, soil, terrain, and water supply are _____.
   Answer: different
7. A farmer plans to sow a kharif crop. The farmer should consider whether the _____ will arrive on time.
   Answer: monsoon
8. Excessive rainfall can destroy crops and cause financial _____ for farmers.
   Answer: distress
9. A farmer in a region with a dry winter uses river water to grow a rabi crop. This is an example of using _____ to support farming.
   Answer: irrigation
10. A coastal farmer receives rain from both monsoon periods. This can provide more opportunities for _____ during the year.
    Answer: cultivation
11. If a farmer's soil is low in organic matter, adding farmyard manure can help improve the soil's _____.
    Answer: fertility
12. Soil supports crops by providing nutrients, water, and physical _____.
    Answer: support
13. If soil and water are both contaminated by excessive chemical use, the farming method may be considered less _____.
    Answer: sustainable
14. A farmer wants to protect soil organisms and reduce chemical use. A suitable approach is to combine modern methods with _____ practices.
    Answer: eco-friendly
15. High-yielding seeds may increase production, but if the next generation of seeds cannot be replanted, farmers may become dependent on _____.
    Answer: seed companies
16. A farmer saves suitable seeds from one season for planting the next year. This can help preserve seed _____.
    Answer: independence
17. Applying beejamrit to seeds can protect them from damage and reduce the time needed for _____.
    Answer: germination
18. An ancient seed drill performs several tasks in one operation. Its use can reduce the amount of _____ required.
    Answer: labour
19. A small farmer cannot afford a large tractor. This shows how small landholdings and equipment costs can limit access to _____.
    Answer: mechanisation
20. When land is divided among family members over generations, the size of each farmer's _____ may decrease.
    Answer: landholding
21. A farmer grows crops, rears poultry, and keeps livestock. Having several income sources can help build _____.
    Answer: resilience
22. If untimely rain damages a crop close to harvest, the farmer may face crop loss and reduced _____.
    Answer: income

23. Repeated droughts make farming riskier because they reduce water available for crops and may lower _____.
Answer: yields
24. If farmers pump excessive groundwater for irrigation, groundwater reserves may _____.
Answer: decrease
25. Excessive water diversion and groundwater use can place stress on rivers such as the _____.
Answer: Ganga
26. A farmer who receives a reliable weather forecast can make better decisions about sowing and _____.
Answer: harvesting
27. Crop insurance can help farmers manage financial losses when their crops are _____.
Answer: damaged
28. Government purchase of important crops can help farmers find a market and receive _____ prices.
Answer: fair
29. Cold storage helps prevent some produce from spoiling before it reaches the _____.
Answer: market
30. Digital access to market information can help farmers compare prices and make better _____ decisions.
Answer: selling
31. A farmer chooses a crop after considering soil, climate, water, and terrain. This is an example of matching farming to local _____.
Answer: conditions
32. If two crops require different resources and grow in different seasons, growing them together may require careful _____.
Answer: planning
33. The Green Revolution increased food-grain production, but its long-term effects included groundwater depletion and soil _____.
Answer: impoverishment
34. A farming system that works with natural cycles and uses manure can support healthier _____.
Answer: soil
35. Farmers in hilly regions create terraces because steep slopes make ordinary field cultivation more _____.
Answer: difficult
36. Hydroponics may help grow vegetables in cities where soil is poor because plants receive minerals through nutrient-rich _____.
Answer: water
37. If climate change makes rainfall less predictable, farmers may need practices that make agriculture more _____.
Answer: resilient
38. A farmer facing debt may find it difficult to repay loans if repeated crop failures reduce farm _____.
Answer: income

39. Balancing high food production with protection of soil, water, and ecosystems is the central challenge of _____ agriculture.
Answer: sustainable
40. The chapter suggests that combining useful modern innovations with traditional knowledge can help farming meet food needs while protecting _____.
Answer: nature

1.5 One-mark questions with Answers of LOTS Type: (45 Questions)

LOTS One-Mark Descriptive Questions with Answers:

1. **What does agriculture include?**
Answer: Agriculture includes crop cultivation, animal husbandry, forestry, and horticulture.
2. **What is pisciculture?**
Answer: Pisciculture is the rearing of fish.
3. **What is animal husbandry?**
Answer: Animal husbandry is the raising of livestock.
4. **Where have archaeologists found evidence of early rice grains?**
Answer: Evidence of early rice grains has been found in the Ganga Plain.
5. **Which crops were cultivated at Mehrgarh around the 7th millennium BCE?**
Answer: Barley and millets were cultivated at Mehrgarh.
6. **Which crops were staples of the Harappans?**
Answer: Barley and wheat were staple crops of the Harappans.
7. **What is intercropping?**
Answer: Intercropping is the practice of growing two or more crops at the same time.
8. **Name one ancient Indian text that contains information about agriculture.**
Answer: *Kṛiṣhiparāśhara* is one ancient text that contains information about agriculture.
9. **What is grafting?**
Answer: Grafting is a technique of joining one plant with another so they grow as a single plant.
10. **What are agroclimatic zones based on?**
Answer: Agroclimatic zones are based on climate, soil, terrain, and vegetation.
11. **How many agroclimatic zones are there in India, according to the chapter?**
Answer: India has 15 agroclimatic zones.
12. **Name the two main monsoon systems in India.**
Answer: The two main monsoon systems are the southwest and northeast monsoons.
13. **When does the southwest monsoon generally bring rain?**
Answer: The southwest monsoon generally brings rain from June to September.
14. **When does the northeast monsoon generally prevail?**
Answer: The northeast monsoon generally prevails from October to December.
15. **What are the three main cropping seasons in India?**
Answer: The three main cropping seasons are kharif, rabi, and zaid.
16. **In which season are kharif crops generally grown?**
Answer: Kharif crops are generally grown during the monsoon season.
17. **In which season are rabi crops generally grown?**
Answer: Rabi crops are generally grown during winter.
18. **In which season are zaid crops generally grown?**
Answer: Zaid crops are generally grown during summer.

19. **What is one risk faced by kharif crops?**
    Answer: Kharif crops may be damaged if the monsoon arrives late or brings excessive rain.
20. **What is soil?**
    Answer: Soil is the thin upper layer of the Earth's crust that supports plant life.
21. **How is soil formed?**
    Answer: Soil forms through the breakdown of rocks and the decay of organic matter.
22. **What is humus?**
    Answer: Humus is nutrient-rich material formed from decayed plant and animal matter.
23. **Name any two major soil types found in India.**
    Answer: Alluvial soil and black soil are two major soil types found in India.
24. **What is another name for black soil?**
    Answer: Black soil is also called cotton soil.
25. **What is laterite soil also called?**
    Answer: Laterite soil is also called brick earth.
26. **What are the characteristics of alpine soil?**
    Answer: Alpine soil is thin, rough, and rocky.
27. **What does soil provide to growing crops?**
    Answer: Soil provides crops with nutrients, water, and support.
28. **How have seeds traditionally been preserved and shared?**
    Answer: Seeds have traditionally been preserved and shared by families and communities.
29. **What is beejamrit?**
    Answer: Beejamrit is a paste made with cow dung, urine, and other materials to coat seeds.
30. **How can beejamrit help seeds?**
    Answer: Beejamrit can protect seeds from damage and reduce germination time.
31. **What did the ancient Indian seed drill do?**
    Answer: The seed drill prepared the soil, planted seeds, and closed the furrow in one operation.
32. **What does HYV stand for?**
    Answer: HYV stands for high-yielding varieties.
33. **When did the Green Revolution take place in India?**
    Answer: The Green Revolution took place mainly during the 1960s and 1970s.
34. **Name one change introduced by the Green Revolution.**
    Answer: The Green Revolution introduced high-yielding seeds.
35. **Which crops saw a significant increase in production during the Green Revolution?**
    Answer: Wheat and rice production increased significantly during the Green Revolution.
36. **Who is known as the architect of the Green Revolution in India?**
    Answer: M. S. Swaminathan is known as the architect of the Green Revolution in India.
37. **What is terrace farming?**
    Answer: Terrace farming is a method of making step-like flat fields on a hillside.
38. **How does terrace farming help the land?**
    Answer: Terrace farming helps prevent soil erosion and conserve water.

39. **What is hydroponics?**
    Answer: Hydroponics is the method of growing plants in nutrient-rich water solutions.
40. **Name one way the government supports farmers.**
    Answer: The government supports farmers through crop insurance schemes.
41. **What is one difficulty faced by farmers with small landholdings?**
    Answer: Farmers with small landholdings may find machinery expensive or unsuitable for their farms.
42. **How can climate change affect farming?**
    Answer: Climate change can cause unpredictable weather and increase the risk of crop loss.
43. **What can happen when farmers struggle to repay loans?**
    Answer: Farmers may become trapped in debt.
44. **How can cold storage help farmers?**
    Answer: Cold storage can help preserve produce before it is sold.
45. **What is the aim of sustainable agriculture?**
    Answer: Sustainable agriculture aims to meet food needs while protecting soil, water, and ecosystems.

1.6 One-mark questions with Answers of HOTS Type: (30 Questions)

HOTS One-Mark Descriptive Questions with Answers:

1. **Why may rice be a suitable crop in a region with abundant rainfall?**
   Answer: Rice may suit the region because its water needs can be met by the abundant rainfall.
2. **Why might a crop fail if it is grown in soil unsuited to its needs?**
   Answer: The crop may not receive the right nutrients or growing conditions from that soil.
3. **Why should farmers consider both climate and soil before choosing a crop?**
   Answer: Climate and soil together influence whether a crop can grow well in a region.
4. **A kharif farmer faces a delayed monsoon; why might sowing be affected?**
   Answer: Kharif crops depend on monsoon rainfall, so a delay can disrupt sowing.
5. **Why can excessive rainfall be harmful even to crops that need monsoon water?**
   Answer: Excessive rain can damage crops and cause losses for farmers.
6. **Why might farmers in a dry season use canals or groundwater?**
   Answer: They use these sources to irrigate crops when rainfall is insufficient.
7. **Why can coastal regions have different cropping opportunities from northern regions?**
   Answer: Some coastal regions receive rain from both the southwest and northeast monsoons.
8. **Why might a farmer choose terrace farming on a hillside?**
   Answer: Terraces create flatter fields and help reduce soil erosion and conserve water.
9. **How can intercropping help a farmer use a field for more than one crop?**
   Answer: Intercropping allows two or more crops to grow in the same field at the same time.
10. **Why can saving seeds from one harvest reduce a farmer's dependence on companies?**
    Answer: Saved seeds may be used for planting in the next season.

11. **Why might some farmers become dependent on seed companies?**
    Answer: Some purchased high-yield seeds may not produce seeds suitable for replanting.
12. **Why might beejamrit be useful before seeds are planted?**
    Answer: It can protect seeds from damage and reduce the time needed for germination.
13. **Why was the ancient seed drill a useful invention?**
    Answer: It combined soil preparation, seed planting, and covering the furrow in one operation.
14. **How can a seed drill reduce the work involved in planting?**
    Answer: It performs several planting steps together and therefore reduces labour.
15. **Why did the Green Revolution increase food-grain production?**
    Answer: It introduced high-yielding seeds, increased irrigation, chemical inputs, and mechanised equipment.
16. **Why can the increased use of chemical fertilisers and pesticides create problems?**
    Answer: They can contaminate soil and water and harm living organisms.
17. **Why should farmers balance modern methods with traditional practices?**
    Answer: This balance can support food production while reducing harm to soil, water, and ecosystems.
18. **Why are natural cycles important in traditional farming systems?**
    Answer: Traditional systems often plan farming activities around seasonal cycles and local conditions.
19. **How can livestock support a farming household beyond providing food?**
    Answer: Livestock can provide manure and create an additional source of livelihood.
20. **Why might a small landholding make mechanised farming difficult?**
    Answer: Large machines may be costly and unsuitable for small fields.
21. **Why can several sources of farm income make a household more resilient?**
    Answer: Other activities such as livestock rearing or fishing can provide income when crop earnings are low.
22. **Why does unpredictable weather increase the risk of farming?**
    Answer: It can cause crop damage through events such as droughts, untimely rain, or heavy rainfall.
23. **Why can crop insurance be helpful after a crop failure?**
    Answer: Insurance can provide financial support when farmers suffer crop losses.
24. **How can weather information help a farmer make better decisions?**
    Answer: It can help the farmer plan activities such as sowing and irrigation.
25. **Why can cold storage improve a farmer's ability to sell produce?**
    Answer: It can preserve produce until the farmer is ready to take it to market.
26. **Why can digital market information benefit farmers?**
    Answer: It can help them learn about markets and make better decisions about selling produce.
27. **Why can excessive groundwater use threaten farming in the long term?**
    Answer: It can deplete water reserves needed for future irrigation.
28. **Why might stress on the Ganga affect both farmers and food production?**
    Answer: Reduced river water can threaten irrigation and the livelihoods of people who depend on farming.
29. **Why is soil health important for future harvests?**
    Answer: Healthy soil supplies crops with nutrients, water, and support for growth.

30. **Why might hydroponics be useful in an urban area with poor soil?**
    Answer: It allows plants to grow using nutrient-rich water instead of relying on local soil.
31. **Why does the chapter connect crop choice with regional conditions?**
    Answer: Crops grow best when their needs match a region's climate, soil, water, and terrain.
32. **Why can dividing farmland among generations create an economic challenge?**
    Answer: It can leave each family member with a smaller plot that may provide limited income.
33. **How can government support help farmers market their crops?**
    Answer: Government purchasing and market information can help farmers find buyers and seek fair prices.
34. **Why is sustainable agriculture important for both farmers and consumers?**
    Answer: It supports food production while protecting the natural resources agriculture depends on.
35. **Why may combining local farming knowledge with modern technology be useful?**
    Answer: It can help farmers improve production while adapting methods to local conditions.

1.7 Two-mark questions with Answers of LOTS Type: (35 Questions)

LOTS Two-Mark Descriptive Questions and Answers:

1. **What does agriculture include?**
   Answer:
   (i) Agriculture includes preparing soil and cultivating plants.
   (ii) It also includes animal husbandry, forestry, and horticulture.
2. **What is pisciculture? Give one related activity included in agriculture.**
   Answer:
   (i) Pisciculture is the rearing of fish.
   (ii) Beekeeping is another activity related to agriculture.
3. **What crops were cultivated at Mehrgarh?**
   Answer:
   (i) Barley was cultivated at Mehrgarh.
   (ii) Millets were also grown there.
4. **Which crops were staples of the Harappans?**
   Answer:
   (i) Barley was a staple crop of the Harappans.
   (ii) Wheat was another staple crop.
5. **What is intercropping? Give the example shown in the chapter.**
   Answer:
   (i) Intercropping is growing two or more different crops at the same time.
   (ii) The chapter shows sugarcane grown with pumpkin.
6. **Name two ancient Indian texts that discuss agriculture.**
   Answer:
   (i) *Kauṭilya's Arthaśhāstra* discusses agriculture.
   (ii) *Surapāla's Vṛikṣhāyurveda* also contains agricultural knowledge.
7. **What is grafting? What can it help combine?**
   Answer:

(i) Grafting joins one plant with another so they grow as a single plant.
(ii) It can combine useful traits such as pest resistance and fruit sweetness.

8. **What factors are used to identify agroclimatic zones?**
   Answer:
   (i) Climate and soil are considered when identifying agroclimatic zones.
   (ii) Terrain and vegetation are also considered.
9. **Name the two main monsoon systems in India.**
   Answer:
   (i) India receives the southwest monsoon.
   (ii) It also receives the northeast monsoon.
10. **When does the southwest monsoon generally bring rain?**
    Answer:
    (i) The southwest monsoon generally brings rain from June to September.
    (ii) It is important for kharif crops in northern and central India.
11. **When does the northeast monsoon generally prevail, and where does it bring rain?**
    Answer:
    (i) The northeast monsoon generally prevails from October to December.
    (ii) It brings rainfall to eastern and southern India.
12. **Name the three main cropping seasons in India.**
    Answer:
    (i) The three main cropping seasons are kharif and rabi.
    (ii) The third season is zaid.
13. **What are kharif and rabi crops associated with?**
    Answer:
    (i) Kharif crops are associated with the monsoon season.
    (ii) Rabi crops are associated with winter.
14. **What are zaid crops, and when are they generally grown?**
    Answer:
    (i) Zaid crops are summer crops.
    (ii) They are generally grown between the rabi and kharif seasons.
15. **Name two old terms used for crop seasons before kharif, rabi, and zaid.**
    Answer:
    (i) Wet crops were called *kedāra*.
    (ii) Winter crops were called *haimana*.
16. **What is soil, and how does it form?**
    Answer:
    (i) Soil is the thin upper layer of the Earth's crust that supports plant life.
    (ii) It forms through the breakdown of rocks and decay of organic matter.
17. **What is humus, and how does it help soil?**
    Answer:
    (i) Humus forms from decayed plant and animal matter.
    (ii) It is rich in nutrients and helps soil retain moisture.
18. **Name any four major soil types found in India.**
    Answer:
    (i) Alluvial soil and black soil are two major types found in India.
    (ii) Red soil and laterite soil are two others.
19. **What are two features of alpine soil?**
    Answer:

(i) Alpine soil is thin and rough.
(ii) It is also rocky.

20. **How does soil support crop growth?**
Answer:
(i) Soil provides nutrients and water to crops.
(ii) It also gives their roots physical support.
21. **How were seeds traditionally preserved and shared?**
Answer:
(i) Families preserved seeds from one generation to the next.
(ii) Communities also shared seeds.
22. **What is beejamrit, and how is it used?**
Answer:
(i) Beejamrit is a paste made with cow dung, urine, and other materials.
(ii) It is used to coat seeds before planting.
23. **What were two functions of the ancient Indian seed drill?**
Answer:
(i) The seed drill prepared the soil and planted the seeds.
(ii) It also closed the furrow in the same operation.
24. **What does HYV mean, and why are such seeds used?**
Answer:
(i) HYV means high-yielding varieties.
(ii) These seeds are developed to provide higher crop yields.
25. **What changes did the Green Revolution introduce?**
Answer:
(i) The Green Revolution introduced high-yielding seeds and increased irrigation.
(ii) It also brought chemical fertilisers, pesticides, and mechanised equipment.
26. **Name two harmful effects associated with the Green Revolution's methods.**
Answer:
(i) These methods can deplete groundwater.
(ii) They can also contaminate soil and water with chemicals.
27. **What is terrace farming, and where is it used?**
Answer:
(i) Terrace farming creates flat steps on a hillside.
(ii) It is used in hilly areas.
28. **How does terrace farming help the land?**
Answer:
(i) It helps prevent soil erosion.
(ii) It also helps conserve water.
29. **What is hydroponics, and where can it be useful?**
Answer:
(i) Hydroponics grows plants in nutrient-rich water solutions.
(ii) It can be useful in urban areas or places with poor soil.
30. **Name two kinds of support the government provides to farmers.**
Answer:
(i) The government may provide weather information, research, or training.
(ii) It may also provide crop insurance or help farmers access markets.
31. **Name two challenges faced by farmers with small landholdings.**
Answer:
(i) Small landholdings may not provide enough income.
(ii) Large machines can be costly or unsuitable for small farms.

32. **How can climate change affect farmers?**
    Answer:
    (i) Climate change can make weather patterns less predictable.
    (ii) Droughts or heavy rainfall can damage crops.
33. **How can farmers diversify their sources of livelihood? Give two examples.**
    Answer:
    (i) Farmers may rear cows, goats, or poultry.
    (ii) They may also practise fishing or beekeeping.
34. **What are two ways digital technology can help farmers?**
    Answer:
    (i) Digital technology can give farmers better access to information.
    (ii) It can also help them find markets and seek better prices.
35. **What can happen when farmers have difficulty repaying loans?**
    Answer:
    (i) Farmers may fall into a debt trap.
    (ii) Some may eventually leave agriculture.

1.8. Two-mark questions with Answers of HOTS Type: (35 Questions)

HOTS Two-Mark Descriptive Questions with Answers:

1. **Why should a farmer consider climate and soil before selecting a crop?**
   Answer:
   (i) Climate affects the crop's access to suitable temperature and rainfall.
   (ii) Soil affects the nutrients and moisture available to its roots.
2. **Why might rice grow well in one region but poorly in another?**
   Answer:
   (i) Rice grows well where water and climatic conditions suit its needs.
   (ii) A region without sufficient water may not support it well.
3. **How can delayed monsoon rains affect kharif cultivation?**
   Answer:
   (i) Kharif crops depend on monsoon rainfall.
   (ii) Delayed rains can disrupt sowing and crop growth.
4. **Why can too much rain be harmful to farmers?**
   Answer:
   (i) Heavy rainfall can damage or destroy crops.
   (ii) Crop damage can reduce farmers' income.
5. **Why might farmers in a dry season use canals or groundwater?**
   Answer:
   (i) Rainfall may not provide enough water for their crops.
   (ii) Irrigation supplies water from other sources.
6. **How might receiving rain from both monsoons benefit some coastal regions?**
   Answer:
   (i) It can provide water during more than one period of the year.
   (ii) This can allow farmers to grow crops across a longer season.
7. **Why is terrace farming useful on hillsides?**
   Answer:
   (i) Terraces create flatter areas for cultivation.
   (ii) They help conserve water and reduce soil erosion.
8. **How does intercropping make use of a field?**
   Answer:

(i) It allows farmers to grow two or more crops in the same field.
(ii) The crops are grown at the same time.

9. **Why can saving seeds from one harvest be useful to a farming family?**
   Answer:
   (i) The family may use the seeds for planting in the next season.
   (ii) This can reduce reliance on purchased seeds.
10. **Why might some farmers depend on seed companies for seeds each season?**
    Answer:
    (i) Some purchased high-yield seeds may not produce seeds suitable for replanting.
    (ii) Farmers may therefore need to buy new seeds again.
11. **How can beejamrit benefit seeds before planting?**
    Answer:
    (i) It can help protect seeds from being spoiled.
    (ii) It can reduce the time needed for germination.
12. **Why was the ancient seed drill considered an efficient tool?**
    Answer:
    (i) It combined soil preparation, seed planting, and closing the furrow.
    (ii) Combining these steps reduced labour.
13. **How did the Green Revolution help increase food production?**
    Answer:
    (i) It introduced high-yielding seeds and increased irrigation.
    (ii) It also brought chemical inputs and mechanised equipment.
14. **Why can the benefits of chemical fertilisers and pesticides come with costs?**
    Answer:
    (i) They can increase crop production.
    (ii) Their excessive use can contaminate soil and water.
15. **Why is it useful to combine modern technology with traditional farming practices?**
    Answer:
    (i) Modern methods can help farmers produce more food.
    (ii) Traditional practices can support soil and ecosystem health.
16. **How can farmyard manure support traditional farming?**
    Answer:
    (i) It supplies nutrients to the soil.
    (ii) Soil organisms help make nutrients available to plants.
17. **Why might a large tractor be unsuitable for a very small farm?**
    Answer:
    (i) The machine may be designed for larger fields.
    (ii) It may also be too expensive to buy or rent.
18. **How can keeping livestock help a farming household?**
    Answer:
    (i) Livestock can provide manure for fields.
    (ii) Rearing animals can also add another source of income.
19. **Why can having several sources of livelihood make a farm family more resilient?**
    Answer:
    (i) The family can earn income from activities beyond growing crops.
    (ii) These other sources can help when crop income is low.
20. **How can climate change increase the risk of crop loss?**
    Answer:

(i) It can make rainfall and weather less predictable.
(ii) Droughts or heavy rain can damage crops.

21. **Why can declining groundwater reserves threaten agriculture?**
Answer:
(i) Farmers may have less water available for irrigation.
(ii) Reduced irrigation can make crop production more difficult.
22. **How could stress on the Ganga affect farming communities?**
Answer:
(i) Reduced river water can limit water available for irrigation.
(ii) This can threaten farmers' livelihoods and food production.
23. **Why can crop insurance be valuable to a farmer?**
Answer:
(i) It can provide financial assistance after crop losses.
(ii) This may help the farmer manage hardship.
24. **How can weather forecasts help farmers plan their work?**
Answer:
(i) Forecasts give farmers information about expected weather.
(ii) Farmers can use it when planning sowing and other activities.
25. **Why can cold storage help farmers sell their produce?**
Answer:
(i) It can keep produce from spoiling quickly.
(ii) Farmers can store it until it is ready to be sold.
26. **How can digital technology help farmers make market decisions?**
Answer:
(i) It can improve farmers' access to market information.
(ii) Farmers can use that information when deciding where or when to sell.
27. **Why can a smaller landholding make it harder for a farmer to earn enough?**
Answer:
(i) A small plot may produce only a limited amount of crops.
(ii) The income from that produce may not be sufficient.
28. **How might hydroponics help in a place with poor soil?**
Answer:
(i) Plants are grown in nutrient-rich water rather than ordinary soil.
(ii) This can make cultivation possible where soil quality is poor.
29. **Why is healthy soil important for continued farming?**
Answer:
(i) Healthy soil supplies crops with nutrients and moisture.
(ii) Protecting soil helps maintain its ability to support future crops.
30. **Why is sustainable agriculture important for the future?**
Answer:
(i) It helps meet people's food needs.
(ii) It also aims to protect soil, water, and ecosystems.
31. **How can government crop purchases help farmers?**
Answer:
(i) They can help farmers find a buyer for important crops.
(ii) They can help farmers receive fair prices.
32. **Why can dividing farmland among family members create difficulties?**
Answer:
(i) Each person may inherit a smaller plot.
(ii) Smaller plots can limit income and use of machinery.

33. **How can growing different crops and rearing animals reduce a family's dependence on one activity?**
    Answer:
    (i) The family can earn from more than one kind of farm activity.
    (ii) Losses in one activity may be partly offset by another.
34. **Why do farmers need to consider terrain as well as rainfall when choosing how to farm?**
    Answer:
    (i) Terrain determines the shape and slope of the land.
    (ii) Farming methods such as terraces may be needed on hillsides.
35. **Why does the chapter encourage balancing food production with care for nature?**
    Answer:
    (i) Modern methods can help produce more food.
    (ii) Protecting soil, water, and ecosystems supports farming over time.

1.9. Three-mark questions with Answers of LOTS Type: (32 Questions)

LOTS Three-Mark Descriptive Questions with Answers:

1. **What activities are included in agriculture?**
   Answer:
   (i) Agriculture includes preparing soil and cultivating plants.
   (ii) It includes animal husbandry and forestry.
   (iii) It also includes horticulture and fisheries.
2. **What evidence shows that farming has a long history in India?**
   Answer:
   (i) Rice grains have been found in the Ganga Plain.
   (ii) Barley and millets were cultivated at Mehrgarh.
   (iii) Harappan sites show evidence of barley, wheat, rice, and other crops.
3. **Which crops were grown by ancient Indian farmers?**
   Answer:
   (i) Farmers grew grains such as barley, wheat, and rice.
   (ii) They cultivated oilseeds and legumes.
   (iii) They also grew fibre crops, vegetables, and fruits.
4. **What is intercropping?**
   Answer:
   (i) Intercropping means growing two or more different crops together.
   (ii) It was practised at the Harappan site of Kalibangan.
   (iii) The chapter gives sugarcane and pumpkin as an example.
5. **Name three ancient Indian texts that contain information about agriculture.**
   Answer:
   (i) *Kauṭilya's Arthaśhāstra* contains agricultural information.
   (ii) *Kṛiṣhiparāśhara* discusses farming.
   (iii) Surapāla's *Vṛikṣhāyurveda* includes knowledge about plants and cultivation.
6. **What kinds of agricultural knowledge are found in ancient texts?**
   Answer:
   (i) They describe seed preparation and soil cultivation.
   (ii) They discuss planting and irrigation methods.
   (iii) Some also explain plant care and animal rearing.

7. **What factors influence the crops grown in different regions?**
   Answer:
   (i) Climate influences crop growth.
   (ii) Soil and water availability affect crop choice.
   (iii) Terrain also shapes farming practices.
8. **What are agroclimatic zones based on?**
   Answer:
   (i) They are based on climate factors.
   (ii) They take soil and terrain into account.
   (iii) They also consider vegetation.
9. **Name three examples of agroclimatic regions mentioned in the chapter.**
   Answer:
   (i) The Upper Gangetic Plain Region is one example.
   (ii) The Southern Plateau and Hills Region is another.
   (iii) The Western Dry Region is also mentioned.
10. **What are the two main monsoon systems in India?**
    Answer:
    (i) India experiences the southwest monsoon.
    (ii) It also experiences the northeast monsoon.
    (iii) Both monsoons bring rainfall to different parts of the country.
11. **Describe the southwest monsoon.**
    Answer:
    (i) It generally brings rain from June to September.
    (ii) It is important for kharif crops in northern and central India.
    (iii) Its timely arrival supports seasonal crop growth.
12. **Describe the northeast monsoon.**
    Answer:
    (i) It generally prevails from October to December.
    (ii) It brings rainfall to eastern and southern India.
    (iii) The Malabar and Coromandel coastal plains receive rain from both monsoons.
13. **Name the three main cropping seasons in India.**
    Answer:
    (i) Kharif is one main cropping season.
    (ii) Rabi is another main cropping season.
    (iii) Zaid is the third main cropping season.
14. **Describe the three cropping seasons.**
    Answer:
    (i) Kharif crops are associated with the monsoon season.
    (ii) Rabi crops are winter crops.
    (iii) Zaid crops are summer crops.
15. **What difficulties can kharif crops face?**
    Answer:
    (i) They depend on the timely arrival of the monsoon.
    (ii) A delay in rainfall can affect their growth.
    (iii) Excessive rainfall can destroy crops.
16. **What are the main functions of soil for plants?**
    Answer:
    (i) Soil provides nutrients to plants.
    (ii) It supplies water and support for crop growth.
    (iii) It contains minerals, organic matter, air, and water.

17. **How is soil formed?**
Answer:
(i) Rocks break down into smaller particles.
(ii) Organic matter from plants and animals decays.
(iii) These materials gradually develop into layers of soil.
18. **Name the six major soil types listed in the chapter.**
Answer:
(i) Alluvial soil, black soil, and red soil are three types.
(ii) Laterite soil and desert soil are two more.
(iii) Mountain or alpine soil is the sixth type.
19. **What are the characteristics of alpine soil?**
Answer:
(i) It forms through the freezing and melting of ice.
(ii) It is thin and rough.
(iii) It is rocky.
20. **What is humus?**
Answer:
(i) Humus forms from decayed plant and animal matter.
(ii) It is rich in nutrients.
(iii) It helps soil retain moisture.
21. **How have seeds traditionally been preserved and shared?**
Answer:
(i) Families have passed seeds down through generations.
(ii) Communities have preserved and shared seeds.
(iii) Farmers have selected and stored high-yielding seeds for future planting.
22. **What does the chapter say about beejamrit?**
Answer:
(i) Beejamrit is a paste used to coat seeds.
(ii) It is made with cow dung, urine, and other materials.
(iii) It helps protect seeds and reduce germination time.
23. **What could the ancient Indian seed drill do?**
Answer:
(i) It prepared the soil.
(ii) It planted the seeds.
(iii) It closed the furrow in the same operation.
24. **What features marked the Green Revolution in India?**
Answer:
(i) It introduced high-yielding varieties of seeds.
(ii) It increased irrigation and the use of chemical inputs.
(iii) It brought mechanised equipment into farming.
25. **What were two results of the Green Revolution?**
Answer:
(i) Food-grain production increased significantly.
(ii) Wheat and rice production rose especially.
(iii) India achieved self-sufficiency in food.
26. **What problems can result from the long-term use of Green Revolution methods?**
Answer:
(i) Soil can become impoverished.
(ii) Groundwater can be depleted.
(iii) Fertilisers and pesticides can contaminate soil and water.

27. **What are some features of traditional farming systems?**
    Answer:
    (i) They consider the plant and soil ecosystem together.
    (ii) They often use farmyard manure and rely on local resources.
    (iii) They are closely connected to natural cycles.
28. **What is terrace farming, and what does it help prevent?**
    Answer:
    (i) Terrace farming creates flat steps on hillsides.
    (ii) It makes cultivation possible on slopes.
    (iii) It helps prevent soil erosion and conserve water.
29. **How does the government support farmers?**
    Answer:
    (i) It may provide seeds, farming information, research, and training.
    (ii) It can support irrigation and crop insurance.
    (iii) It may purchase important crops and support access to markets.
30. **What challenges do farmers face today?**
    Answer:
    (i) Landholdings are often small and divided.
    (ii) Climate change can bring unpredictable weather and crop losses.
    (iii) Farmers may struggle with expenses, low income, and debt.
31. **How can farmers diversify their sources of income?**
    Answer:
    (i) They may rear cows, goats, or poultry.
    (ii) They may practise beekeeping or fishing.
    (iii) They may grow trees or collect forest produce where possible.
32. **How can technology help farmers access markets?**
    Answer:
    (i) Digital tools can provide information about markets.
    (ii) Cold storage can help preserve produce.
    (iii) Better access to markets may help farmers receive better prices.

1.10. Three-mark questions with Answers of HOTS Type: (34 Questions)

HOTS Three-Mark Descriptive Questions with Answers:

1. **A farmer's region has heavy monsoon rain and fertile soil. How should these conditions guide the farmer's crop choice?**
   Answer:
   (i) The farmer should identify crops suited to the region's rainfall and soil.
   (ii) The farmer should match crop water needs with local water availability.
   (iii) This can help the crop grow well in the region.
2. **A farmer plans to grow a kharif crop, but the monsoon is late. What problems may arise?**
   Answer:
   (i) Sowing may be delayed because kharif crops depend on monsoon rains.
   (ii) The crop may not receive enough water during early growth.
   (iii) The farmer may face reduced yields or financial losses.
3. **A field receives more rain than the crop can tolerate. Explain two possible effects on the farmer.**
   Answer:
   (i) Excessive rain may damage or destroy the crop.

(ii) The farmer may lose expected income.
(iii) The loss may make it harder to repay farming expenses or loans.

4. **A farmer has a small field and cannot afford a large tractor. What factors should the farmer consider?**
   Answer:
   (i) The farmer should consider whether the machine is suitable for the field's size.
   (ii) The cost of buying or renting it should be compared with the expected benefit.
   (iii) Smaller tools or shared machinery may be more practical.
5. **A farmer on a hill is losing soil during rain. Which method from the chapter could help, and how?**
   Answer:
   (i) The farmer could use terrace farming by making flat steps on the slope.
   (ii) Terraces can slow the movement of rainwater.
   (iii) This can help conserve water and reduce soil erosion.
6. **A family depends only on one crop for income. How could diversifying farm activities help?**
   Answer:
   (i) The family could add activities such as livestock rearing or fishing.
   (ii) These activities could provide income when the main crop does poorly.
   (iii) Having more than one source of income can increase resilience.
7. **A farmer saves seeds from one harvest. How could this benefit the farmer, and what should be checked?**
   Answer:
   (i) Saved seeds may reduce the need to buy seeds for the next season.
   (ii) The farmer should check that they are suitable for planting and have been stored well.
   (iii) Saving seeds may reduce dependence on seed companies.
8. **A farmer buys high-yielding seeds that cannot be replanted from the next harvest. What is one benefit and one concern?**
   Answer:
   (i) The seeds may produce higher yields.
   (ii) The farmer may need to buy new seeds again for the next season.
   (iii) This can create dependence on seed companies.
9. **A farmer wants to protect seeds before planting them. How might beejamrit help?**
   Answer:
   (i) Beejamrit can be applied as a coating on seeds.
   (ii) It can help protect seeds from being spoiled.
   (iii) It can also reduce the time needed for germination.
10. **A farmer uses a seed drill that prepares soil, plants seeds, and closes furrows. Why is this useful?**
    Answer:
    (i) It combines several planting steps in one operation.
    (ii) It can reduce the labour needed for sowing.
    (iii) It can make field preparation more efficient.
11. **A region's groundwater is declining because of heavy irrigation. Suggest two concerns and one response.**
    Answer:
    (i) Farmers may have less water available for future irrigation.

(ii) Continued groundwater loss can threaten crop production.
(iii) Farmers can use water more efficiently and consider suitable irrigation methods.

12. **A farmer uses chemical fertilisers and pesticides to increase production. What should the farmer consider about long-term effects?**
Answer:
(i) Chemicals may help increase crop production.
(ii) Excessive use can contaminate soil and water.
(iii) It can also harm organisms that are important to ecosystems.
13. **How could combining traditional knowledge with modern technology support sustainable farming?**
Answer:
(i) Modern technology can help farmers increase production and efficiency.
(ii) Traditional practices may support soil health and work with natural cycles.
(iii) Combining suitable methods can help meet food needs while reducing environmental harm.
14. **A farmer grows crops on land with poor soil. How might hydroponics offer an alternative?**
Answer:
(i) Hydroponics grows plants in nutrient-rich water solutions.
(ii) It supplies essential minerals directly to the roots.
(iii) It can be useful where soil quality is poor or space is limited.
15. **A farmer in a dry season has no rain but has access to a canal. How can the farmer use this resource?**
Answer:
(i) The farmer can use canal water to irrigate crops.
(ii) Irrigation can supply water when rainfall is inadequate.
(iii) The farmer should use the water efficiently to avoid waste.
16. **A coastal region receives rainfall from both monsoons. How could this affect its farming calendar?**
Answer:
(i) The two rainy periods may provide water at different times of the year.
(ii) Farmers may be able to grow crops during a longer period.
(iii) The crop calendar should still match local soil and water conditions.
17. **Why might a crop suitable for Punjab not be suitable for Kerala, or vice versa?**
Answer:
(i) The regions may have different climates and rainfall patterns.
(ii) Their soils and water availability may also differ.
(iii) A crop must match the conditions of the region where it is grown.
18. **A farmer faces unpredictable rainfall and frequent droughts. What planning steps could help reduce risk?**
Answer:
(i) The farmer could use weather information when planning sowing.
(ii) The farmer could choose crops suited to local water availability.
(iii) Efficient irrigation and crop insurance may help manage risks.
19. **A farm household has little income after a crop failure. How could government support help?**
Answer:
(i) Crop insurance may provide financial assistance after crop loss.
(ii) Training and information can help farmers make future decisions.
(iii) Crop purchases or market support may help farmers sell their produce.

20. **A farmer's produce spoils before it reaches the market. What facility could help, and why?**
    Answer:
    (i) Cold storage could help preserve the produce.
    (ii) Better preservation can reduce spoilage.
    (iii) The farmer may then have more time to arrange a sale.
21. **A farmer has no current information about market prices. How could digital technology help?**
    Answer:
    (i) Digital tools can provide access to market information.
    (ii) The farmer can compare prices or selling opportunities.
    (iii) This can help the farmer make more informed decisions.
22. **A family's farmland is divided among several generations. What effects could this have on farming?**
    Answer:
    (i) Each family member may receive a smaller landholding.
    (ii) Smaller plots can make some machinery difficult to use.
    (iii) They may also limit the income earned from crops.
23. **A farmer rears cattle as well as growing crops. How can these activities support each other?**
    Answer:
    (i) Cattle can provide manure for the fields.
    (ii) Crops can provide some feed for livestock.
    (iii) The two activities can support farm resources and income.
24. **A farmer wants to reduce soil erosion and conserve water on a slope. Why is terrace farming suitable?**
    Answer:
    (i) Terraces create level areas for cultivation on a hillside.
    (ii) They help slow water flowing down the slope.
    (iii) This can reduce soil erosion and conserve water.
25. **A farmer wants to grow two crops in the same field. What practice could be used, and what does it involve?**
    Answer:
    (i) The farmer could use intercropping.
    (ii) It involves growing two or more different crops at the same time.
    (iii) The crops should be planned to suit the field's conditions.
26. **Why should a farmer consider the type of soil as well as the crop's water needs?**
    Answer:
    (i) Different soils have different properties.
    (ii) Soil affects the nutrients and moisture available to crops.
    (iii) Matching soil and water conditions to the crop can support healthy growth.
27. **A community wants to protect farming for future generations. What should it consider about soil and water?**
    Answer:
    (i) It should prevent practices that degrade soil.
    (ii) It should use water carefully and protect water sources.
    (iii) Protecting these resources supports continued crop production.
28. **A farmer receives a weather forecast predicting heavy rain. How might this information be useful?**
    Answer:

(i) The farmer can plan field activities around the expected rain.
(ii) The farmer may take steps to protect crops from water damage.
(iii) This can help reduce avoidable losses.

29. **Why can traditional farming practices be valuable even when modern methods are available?**
Answer:
(i) Traditional methods may be adapted to local conditions.
(ii) They often work with natural cycles and soil ecosystems.
(iii) Some have been tested and found useful for reducing chemical use or improving soil health.
30. **A farmer wants higher yields but also wants to protect nature. What balance should the farmer seek?**
Answer:
(i) The farmer can use suitable modern methods to improve production.
(ii) The farmer can also adopt practices that conserve soil and water.
(iii) This balance supports food needs and environmental health.
31. **Why can a decline in the Ganga's water level affect people beyond the river itself?**
Answer:
(i) Many people depend on the river basin for water and food production.
(ii) Reduced river water can affect irrigation and farming livelihoods.
(iii) Lower agricultural production can threaten food supplies.
32. **How could a farmer prepare for the risk of crop loss without relying on only one solution?**
Answer:
(i) The farmer can use weather information and plan crops carefully.
(ii) The farmer can diversify income through livestock or other activities.
(iii) Irrigation support and crop insurance can help manage additional risks.
33. **Why is sustainable agriculture connected to the long-term well-being of farmers?**
Answer:
(i) Farmers depend on healthy soil and reliable water to grow crops.
(ii) Environmental damage can make farming more difficult over time.
(iii) Sustainable practices help protect the resources farms need.
34. **A farmer is deciding whether to use a traditional or modern method. What three factors should guide the decision?**
Answer:
(i) The farmer should consider how well the method suits local climate and soil.
(ii) The farmer should consider its cost and expected production.
(iii) The farmer should also consider its effects on soil, water, and the environment.

1.11 Five-mark questions with Answers of LOTS Type: (22 Questions)

LOTS Five-Mark Descriptive Questions with Answers:
1. What activities are included in agriculture?
Answer:
(i) Agriculture includes preparing the soil.
(ii) It includes cultivating plants and crops.
(iii) It includes animal husbandry, or raising livestock.
(iv) It includes forestry and horticulture.
(v) In some places, it also includes fisheries and related activities.

2. Describe the early history of farming in India.
Answer:
(i) The history of Indian farming goes back to prehistoric times.
(ii) Rice grains have been found in the Ganga Plain from the 7th or 8th millennium BCE.
(iii) Barley and millets were cultivated at Mehrgarh.
(iv) Barley and wheat were staple crops of the Harappans.
(v) Harappan sites also show evidence of rice, millets, and vegetables.
3. Name different crops cultivated by ancient Indian farmers.
Answer:
(i) Farmers cultivated grains such as barley, wheat, and rice.
(ii) They grew oilseeds such as sesame and mustard.
(iii) They cultivated legumes such as green gram and black gram.
(iv) They grew fibre crops such as cotton, hemp, and jute.
(v) They also cultivated vegetables and fruits.
4. Describe the agricultural knowledge found in ancient Indian texts.
Answer:
(i) Ancient texts contain information about agriculture and horticulture.
(ii) They describe methods of preparing seeds.
(iii) They discuss soil cultivation and planting techniques.
(iv) Some texts provide information about irrigation and tree care.
(v) Some also describe the rearing and care of animals.
5. What factors influence farming in different parts of India?
Answer:
(i) Climate influences the crops that can grow in a region.
(ii) Soil provides nutrients and moisture to plants.
(iii) Water availability affects crop growth and irrigation.
(iv) Terrain influences the kind of farming methods used.
(v) Vegetation is also considered when identifying agroclimatic zones.
6. Describe the three main cropping seasons in India.
Answer:
(i) Indian agriculture has three main cropping seasons.
(ii) Kharif is associated with the monsoon season.
(iii) Rabi is associated with winter.
(iv) Zaid is associated with summer.
(v) Together, these seasons help provide different agricultural products throughout the year.
7. Write about the importance of the southwest monsoon to Indian agriculture.
Answer:
(i) The southwest monsoon generally brings rain from June to September.
(ii) It provides rainfall needed by many crops.
(iii) It is important for kharif crops in northern India.
(iv) It is also important for kharif crops in central India.
(v) Its timely arrival supports the seasonal growth of these crops.
8. Describe the northeast monsoon and its effects on farming.
Answer:
(i) The northeast monsoon generally prevails from October to December.
(ii) It brings rainfall to eastern India.
(iii) It also brings rainfall to southern India.
(iv) The Malabar and Coromandel coastal plains receive rain from both monsoons.
(v) These rainfall periods help support crop cultivation in parts of the south.
9. What are the six major soil types found in India?

Answer:
(i) Alluvial soil is one major type found in India.
(ii) Black soil is another major type.
(iii) Red soil and laterite soil are also found in India.
(iv) Desert soil is one of the six major types.
(v) Mountain or alpine soil completes the list.

10. Describe soil and explain how it forms.
Answer:
(i) Soil is the thin upper layer of the Earth's crust.
(ii) It supports plant life.
(iii) Soil forms through the breakdown of rocks.
(iv) It also forms through the decay of organic matter.
(v) Soil provides crops with nutrients, water, and physical support.

11. What is humus, and why is it useful in soil?
Answer:
(i) Humus forms from decayed plant and animal matter.
(ii) It is rich in nutrients.
(iii) It contributes organic matter to the soil.
(iv) It helps soil retain moisture.
(v) Moist and nutrient-rich soil supports plant growth.

12. Describe how seeds have been preserved and prepared for farming.
Answer:
(i) Families have traditionally passed seeds from one generation to another.
(ii) Communities have also preserved and shared seeds.
(iii) Farmers selected high-yielding seeds for use in future seasons.
(iv) Ancient texts described methods of preparing seeds before planting.
(v) Today, some farmers also buy scientifically developed seeds from companies.

13. Explain the use and benefits of beejamrit.
Answer:
(i) Beejamrit is a paste used to coat seeds before planting.
(ii) It is made using cow dung, urine, and other materials.
(iii) It is used to protect seeds from being spoiled.
(iv) It can reduce the time needed for germination.
(v) ICAR has developed methods for using beejamrit.

14. Describe the ancient Indian seed drill.
Answer:
(i) The Indian seed drill was an invention of ancient farmers.
(ii) It prepared the soil for sowing.
(iii) It planted seeds in the soil.
(iv) It closed the furrow after planting.
(v) It combined tasks that otherwise required several steps.

15. What changes were introduced during the Green Revolution?
Answer:
(i) High-yielding varieties of seeds were introduced.
(ii) Irrigation was increased.
(iii) Chemical fertilisers and pesticides were used.
(iv) Mechanised equipment became more common.
(v) These changes contributed to increased food-grain production.

16. Write about the effects of the Green Revolution on food production in India.
Answer:

(i) The Green Revolution led to a significant increase in food-grain production.
(ii) Wheat production increased substantially.
(iii) Rice production also increased.
(iv) The use of modern machinery made farm work faster and easier.
(v) India achieved self-sufficiency in food.

17. What are some long-term concerns about the methods used during the Green Revolution?

Answer:

(i) Intensive farming can impoverish the soil over time.
(ii) Heavy irrigation can deplete groundwater.
(iii) Fertilisers can contaminate soil and water.
(iv) Pesticides can also harm the environment.
(v) These concerns have led to questions about the sustainability of such methods.

18. Describe traditional farming systems.

Answer:

(i) Traditional farming considers the plant and soil ecosystem together.
(ii) It treats soil as a major source of nutrients.
(iii) It often uses farmyard manure.
(iv) It may rely on family labour and domestic animals.
(v) It is often closely connected to local conditions and natural cycles.

19. What is terrace farming, and what are its benefits?

Answer:

(i) Terrace farming is used on hilly slopes.
(ii) Farmers cut steps into the hillside to create flat land.
(iii) These flat areas can be used for cultivation.
(iv) Terraces help prevent soil erosion.
(v) They also help conserve water.

20. Describe the support provided by the government to farmers.

Answer:

(i) The government may help farmers access seeds and other inputs.
(ii) It may provide weather information, research, and training.
(iii) It may provide electricity for irrigation at lower prices.
(iv) Crop insurance schemes can provide financial assistance.
(v) Government purchases and market support can help farmers sell their produce.

21. What challenges do Indian farmers face?

Answer:

(i) Farmland is often divided into smaller holdings across generations.
(ii) Small holdings may not provide enough income.
(iii) Modern machinery may be costly or unsuitable for small farms.
(iv) Climate change can bring unpredictable weather and crop damage.
(v) Some farmers face difficulties repaying loans.

22. Describe how farmers can have more than one source of livelihood.

Answer:

(i) Farmers may rear cows or goats.
(ii) They may keep poultry.
(iii) They may practise beekeeping or fishing.
(iv) They may grow trees on the boundaries of fields.
(v) These activities can provide income in addition to crop cultivation.

1.12 Five-mark questions with Answers of HOTS Type: (20 Questions)

HOTS Five-Mark Descriptive Questions with Answers:

1. A farmer is deciding what to grow in a region with heavy monsoon rainfall and fertile soil. Explain how the farmer should make this decision.

Answer:

(i) The farmer should first consider the crop's rainfall requirements.
(ii) The farmer should check whether the soil suits the crop.
(iii) The farmer should consider the land's terrain and drainage.
(iv) The farmer should choose a crop that matches the region's growing season.
(v) Matching the crop to local conditions can improve its chances of growing well.

2. A delayed monsoon threatens a farmer's kharif crop. What effects might follow, and what could the farmer consider doing?

Answer:

(i) Delayed rain may postpone sowing.
(ii) The crop may receive too little water during early growth.
(iii) The farmer could check weather information before deciding when to sow.
(iv) Irrigation from a canal or another available source may help.
(v) Crop insurance may provide support if the crop is damaged.

3. A farmer's field is on a hillside and loses soil during heavy rain. Recommend a suitable practice and explain its benefits.

Answer:

(i) The farmer could use terrace farming.
(ii) Terraces create flat steps on the hillside for cultivation.
(iii) The steps can slow the flow of rainwater.
(iv) Slower water flow can help reduce soil erosion.
(v) Terraces can also help conserve water.

4. A farmer wants to grow two crops in the same field. Explain how intercropping could be used and what should be considered.

Answer:

(i) The farmer could practise intercropping by growing two or more crops together.
(ii) The crops should be chosen to suit the same field conditions.
(iii) Their water and soil needs should be considered.
(iv) The planting arrangement should allow the crops to grow well.
(v) Intercropping is a long-standing practice in Indian agriculture.

5. A farmer's purchased seeds give a good harvest, but the seeds from those plants cannot be replanted. Explain the benefit and concern.

Answer:

(i) The purchased seeds may provide a higher yield.
(ii) The farmer may get more produce from the field.
(iii) The seeds from the harvest may not be suitable for planting again.
(iv) The farmer may need to purchase new seeds for the next season.
(v) Repeated purchases can increase dependence on seed companies.

6. A farmer wants to reduce chemical use while maintaining crop production. Suggest a balanced approach.

Answer:

(i) The farmer could use appropriate modern tools and farming information.
(ii) The farmer could preserve and use suitable traditional practices.
(iii) Farmyard manure can help supply nutrients to the soil.
(iv) Efficient irrigation can help reduce unnecessary water use.
(v) The farmer should monitor soil and crop health over time.

7. Explain how the Green Revolution increased food production and why its methods raised sustainability concerns.
Answer:
(i) It introduced high-yielding varieties of seeds.
(ii) It increased irrigation and the use of farm machinery.
(iii) These changes helped raise wheat and rice production.
(iv) Intensive use of fertilisers and pesticides can contaminate soil and water.
(v) Heavy irrigation can deplete groundwater and affect future farming.
8. A small farmer cannot afford a large tractor and earns little from a small plot. Explain the challenges and identify possible support.
Answer:
(i) A small plot may produce limited income.
(ii) Large machinery may be costly to buy or rent.
(iii) The machinery may not be suitable for a small farm.
(iv) The farmer could explore equipment designed for small farms or shared access.
(v) Training, financial support, and market access may also help.
9. A farming family depends only on crop sales. Explain how diversifying farm activities may improve its resilience.
Answer:
(i) The family could rear livestock such as cows or goats.
(ii) It could also keep poultry or practise beekeeping.
(iii) Fishing may provide another source of income where possible.
(iv) These activities can provide useful products such as manure or food.
(v) Several income sources can help when crop earnings are low.
10. A farmer faces repeated droughts and untimely rain. Explain how these conditions affect farming and what preparations may help.
Answer:
(i) Drought can reduce the water available to crops.
(ii) Untimely rain can damage crops or disrupt farm work.
(iii) Weather information can help the farmer plan sowing.
(iv) Efficient irrigation and suitable crop choices may reduce some risks.
(v) Crop insurance may help manage financial losses.
11. A region's groundwater supply is falling because of heavy irrigation. Explain why this is a concern and suggest responses.
Answer:
(i) Falling groundwater levels can reduce water available for future irrigation.
(ii) Reduced water supply can make crop production less reliable.
(iii) The farmer should use available water efficiently.
(iv) Soil moisture and other water sources should be considered in planning.
(v) Protecting groundwater helps sustain farming over time.
12. Explain how stress on the Ganga could affect agriculture and people living in its basin.
Answer:
(i) The Ganga basin supports the water needs of many people.
(ii) Water diverted for irrigation can reduce the river's flow.
(iii) Groundwater pumping and dams can also affect water availability and flow.
(iv) Reduced water can threaten agriculture and farmers' livelihoods.
(v) This may also affect food production for people who depend on the basin.
13. A farmer's produce spoils before it can be sold. Explain how storage and digital market information could help.

Answer:
(i) Cold storage can keep some produce from spoiling quickly.
(ii) Longer storage gives the farmer more time to arrange a sale.
(iii) Digital tools can provide information about markets.
(iv) The farmer can use that information to compare selling opportunities.
(v) Better storage and information may help the farmer obtain a better price.

14. A farmer is considering hydroponics because the local soil is poor. Explain how this method works and where it may be useful.
Answer:
(i) Hydroponics grows plants in nutrient-rich water solutions.
(ii) Essential minerals are supplied directly to the roots.
(iii) It does not depend on ordinary soil for plant growth.
(iv) It may be useful in urban farming.
(v) It may also help in areas with poor soil quality.

15. Explain why crop choice should be based on more than rainfall alone.
Answer:
(i) Temperature and seasonal climate also affect crop growth.
(ii) Soil influences available nutrients and moisture.
(iii) Terrain affects which farming methods can be used.
(iv) Irrigation and other water sources may supplement rainfall.
(v) Considering these factors together helps match crops to local conditions.

16. A family's farmland becomes smaller as it is divided among generations. Explain how this can affect the family's farming.
Answer:
(i) Each family member may receive a smaller landholding.
(ii) A smaller plot may produce less crop income.
(iii) Large machines may be difficult to use on small fields.
(iv) The family may need other sources of income.
(v) Access to suitable equipment and market support may help address some difficulties.

17. Explain how traditional knowledge and modern technology can complement each other in farming.
Answer:
(i) Traditional knowledge can reflect local soil, climate, and seasonal conditions.
(ii) Traditional practices may support soil health and conserve resources.
(iii) Modern technology can improve efficiency and crop production.
(iv) Farmers can select methods suited to their particular needs.
(v) Combining suitable practices can support both food production and sustainability.

18. A farmer is choosing between a traditional method and a modern method. What should guide the decision?
Answer:
(i) The farmer should consider whether the method suits local conditions.
(ii) The method's cost should be compared with its likely benefits.
(iii) Its effect on crop production should be considered.
(iv) Its effect on soil, water, and ecosystems should also be considered.
(v) The farmer can combine methods when that is more suitable.

19. Explain how government support can help farmers manage risk and sell their produce.
Answer:
(i) Weather information can help farmers plan their activities.
(ii) Research and training can introduce useful farming practices.

(iii) Crop insurance can provide financial support after crop losses.
(iv) Government purchases can help farmers find buyers for important crops.
(v) Cold storage and digital market access can help farmers reach markets.

20. Why is sustainable agriculture important, and how can farmers work towards it?
Answer:
(i) Agriculture depends on healthy soil and adequate water.
(ii) Excessive chemical use can harm soil, water, and ecosystems.
(iii) Efficient irrigation can help conserve water.
(iv) Traditional practices may support natural cycles and soil health.
(v) Combining appropriate modern and traditional methods can help meet food needs over time.

1.13 Five-mark questions with Answers of Applied Type: (20 Questions)

Applied Five-Mark Descriptive Questions with Answers:

1. Your family has a small farm in a hilly area. Suggest a suitable farming method and explain how it can help.
Answer:
(i) The family can use terrace farming on the hillside.
(ii) Steps can be cut into the slope to create flat areas.
(iii) These areas can be used to cultivate crops.
(iv) Terraces can help reduce soil erosion.
(v) They can also help conserve water.

2. A farmer in your district wants to choose crops for the coming year. What information should the farmer collect first?
Answer:
(i) The farmer should identify the local soil type.
(ii) The farmer should check the expected rainfall and climate.
(iii) The availability of irrigation water should be assessed.
(iv) The farmer should consider the terrain and cropping season.
(v) The chosen crops should suit these local conditions.

3. A farmer expects less-than-normal monsoon rain this year. Suggest five practical steps the farmer could take.
Answer:
(i) The farmer should follow weather forecasts before planning sowing.
(ii) The farmer should choose crops suited to the expected water supply.
(iii) Available water from canals, ponds, or groundwater should be assessed.
(iv) Irrigation water should be used efficiently.
(v) Crop insurance may help manage financial losses.

4. A farmer grows only one crop and wants to reduce the risk of losing all income. Suggest a plan.
Answer:
(i) The farmer could consider growing more than one suitable crop.
(ii) Intercropping could be used to grow different crops together.
(iii) The farmer could rear livestock such as cows or goats.
(iv) Beekeeping or fishing could provide additional income where suitable.
(v) The activities should match the farm's land, water, and resources.

5. A school is planning a garden on a small patch of land with poor soil. Suggest how hydroponics could be used.
Answer:

(i) The school can grow selected plants in nutrient-rich water solutions.
(ii) Essential minerals can be supplied directly to plant roots.
(iii) The system can be placed in a small, controlled space.
(iv) Students can observe how plants grow without ordinary soil.
(v) The garden can demonstrate an option for areas with poor soil.

6. A farmer has saved seeds from the previous harvest. Explain how the farmer should prepare for the next planting season.

Answer:

(i) The farmer should check that the saved seeds are in good condition.
(ii) Seeds should be stored safely until planting time.
(iii) The farmer may use suitable seed-preparation practices.
(iv) Beejamrit can be used to coat seeds before planting.
(v) The farmer should select seeds suited to the soil and climate.

7. A community wants to reduce soil erosion on sloping farmland. Prepare a simple recommendation.

Answer:

(i) Farmers can create terraces across the slope.
(ii) Crops should be selected to suit the local climate and soil.
(iii) Water should be managed so that it does not run rapidly downhill.
(iv) Soil should be protected from practices that degrade it.
(v) These steps can help conserve soil and support farming.

8. A farmer wants to use a tractor but owns a very small plot. What should the farmer consider before hiring or buying one?

Answer:

(i) The farmer should check whether the tractor can operate efficiently on the small plot.
(ii) The cost of buying or renting it should be calculated.
(iii) The farmer should compare the cost with the time and labour saved.
(iv) Smaller machines or shared equipment could be considered.
(v) The choice should fit the farm's size and budget.

9. Your class is preparing a display about the three cropping seasons. What information should the display include?

Answer:

(i) It should name kharif, rabi, and zaid as the three main seasons.
(ii) It should show that kharif crops are associated with the monsoon.
(iii) It should show that rabi crops are associated with winter.
(iv) It should show that zaid crops are associated with summer.
(v) It can explain that crop choice depends on seasonal conditions.

10. A farmer's crop was damaged by unexpected heavy rain. What steps could help the farmer recover and prepare for the future?

Answer:

(i) The farmer should assess the extent of crop damage.
(ii) Crop insurance may provide financial assistance if the farmer is covered.
(iii) The farmer can seek advice or training on managing crop risks.
(iv) Weather information can be used in future planning.
(v) Crop choices and water-management practices can be reviewed.

11. A village is facing declining groundwater levels. Suggest five ways farming can respond to this problem.

Answer:

(i) Farmers should monitor how much groundwater they use.
(ii) Irrigation water should be applied efficiently.

(iii) Crops should be selected with local water availability in mind.
(iv) Other available water sources should be considered where appropriate.
(v) The community should protect water resources for future farming.

12. A farmer wants to sell vegetables but does not have enough time to reach the market immediately. Suggest how storage and information could help.

Answer:

(i) The farmer can use cold storage to slow spoilage.
(ii) Stored produce can be sold when transport or buyers are available.
(iii) Digital tools can provide information about market opportunities.
(iv) The farmer can compare prices before deciding where to sell.
(v) These steps may help reduce losses and improve the sale.

13. A family is starting a farm near its home. Suggest how it could use the idea of kulāgar.

Answer:

(i) The family can grow a variety of crops around the home.
(ii) It can include food crops, fruits, and vegetables.
(iii) It may also grow spices or medicinal plants.
(iv) The family can plan an organised irrigation system.
(v) The crops should be chosen to suit local conditions.

14. A farmer wants to reduce dependence on chemical fertilisers. Suggest how traditional farming knowledge could help.

Answer:

(i) The farmer can use farmyard manure as a source of plant nutrients.
(ii) The farmer can protect soil organisms that help make nutrients available to plants.
(iii) Suitable traditional practices can be explored and tested.
(iv) Modern scientific guidance can help assess these practices.
(v) The farmer should monitor crop growth and soil health.

15. Your group is advising a farmer who wants to grow crops on a river plain. What factors should the group examine?

Answer:

(i) The group should examine the soil type and its fertility.
(ii) It should consider the water available from rainfall and rivers.
(iii) The local climate and cropping seasons should be checked.
(iv) The crops should be matched to these conditions.
(v) Farming should be planned to protect soil and water resources.

16. A farmer wants to use intercropping in a field. Describe how the farmer should plan the work.

Answer:

(i) The farmer should choose two or more crops suited to the field.
(ii) The crops' growing seasons should be considered.
(iii) Their soil and water needs should be checked.
(iv) The farmer should decide how to arrange the crops in the field.
(v) The crops should be monitored as they grow.

17. A farming family is considering keeping livestock along with cultivating crops. Explain how it can organise this plan.

Answer:

(i) The family should choose animals it can care for with its available resources.
(ii) It should plan how to provide feed and water for the animals.
(iii) Animal manure can be used to support soil fertility.

(iv) Livestock products may add to the family's income.
(v) The animal and crop activities should be planned to support each other.

18. A farmer wants to protect the farm from the effects of climate change. Suggest five areas the farmer should plan for.

Answer:

(i) The farmer should monitor weather information.
(ii) Crop choices should reflect local climate and water conditions.
(iii) Irrigation should be planned carefully.
(iv) More than one source of livelihood may reduce financial risk.
(v) Crop insurance can help in case of crop loss.

19. Your school is preparing a project comparing traditional and modern farming. What five aspects should the students investigate?

Answer:

(i) Students should compare the tools and machinery used.
(ii) They should examine how seeds are selected and prepared.
(iii) They should compare water and irrigation methods.
(iv) They should investigate effects on crop production and labour.
(v) They should consider impacts on soil, water, and ecosystems.

20. A farmer wants to keep producing food while protecting the farm's soil and water. Recommend a sustainable farming plan.

Answer:

(i) The farmer should match crops to the local climate and soil.
(ii) Water should be used efficiently.
(iii) Soil health should be supported through suitable practices such as using manure.
(iv) Chemical inputs should be used carefully to avoid harming soil and water.
(v) Useful modern methods can be combined with sustainable traditional practices.

1.14 Multiple Choice Questions with answers for Olympiad type Competitive Exams:

Olympiad-Style Multiple-Choice Questions:

1. **Which combination best describes agriculture as explained in the chapter?**
   A. Crop cultivation only
   B. Crop cultivation and animal husbandry only
   C. Crop cultivation, animal husbandry, forestry, and horticulture
   D. Trade and transport of food only
   Answer: C. Crop cultivation, animal husbandry, forestry, and horticulture
2. **At which ancient site does the chapter mention evidence of barley and millet cultivation?**
   A. Kalibangan
   B. Mehrgarh
   C. Udupi
   D. Coromandel
   Answer: B. Mehrgarh
3. **Which crops were staple foods of the Harappans, according to the chapter?**
   A. Cotton and jute
   B. Barley and wheat
   C. Tea and coffee
   D. Sugarcane and pumpkin
   Answer: B. Barley and wheat

4. **A farmer grows sugarcane and pumpkin together in the same field. What is this practice called?**
   A. Grafting
   B. Hydroponics
   C. Intercropping
   D. Terrace farming
   Answer: C. Intercropping
5. **Which ancient text is associated with guidance on seed preparation and planting?**
   A. *Vṛikṣhāyurveda*
   B. *Indica*
   C. *Arthashastra* only
   D. *Meghadūta*
   Answer: A. *Vṛikṣhāyurveda*
6. **A gardener joins a plant with another to combine useful traits. Which technique is being used?**
   A. Intercropping
   B. Grafting
   C. Irrigation
   D. Hydroponics
   Answer: B. Grafting
7. **Which set of factors is used to define agroclimatic zones?**
   A. Climate, soil, terrain, and vegetation
   B. Roads, markets, and population
   C. Rivers, cities, and industries
   D. Language, culture, and transport
   Answer: A. Climate, soil, terrain, and vegetation
8. **How many agroclimatic zones does the chapter say India has?**
   A. 7
   B. 12
   C. 15
   D. 25
   Answer: C. 15
9. **A farmer in northern India plans to sow a kharif crop. Which seasonal event is especially important?**
   A. Northeast monsoon ending
   B. Southwest monsoon arriving on time
   C. Winter frost
   D. Summer harvest
   Answer: B. Southwest monsoon arriving on time
10. **When does the southwest monsoon generally bring rain to India?**
    A. January to March
    B. March to May
    C. June to September
    D. October to December
    Answer: C. June to September
11. **Which region receives rain from both the southwest and northeast monsoons, according to the chapter?**
    A. Malabar coastal plain
    B. Thar Desert

C. Upper Gangetic Plain only
D. Central Deccan Plateau only
Answer: A. Malabar coastal plain

12. **Which pairing of crop season and time of year is correct?**
A. Kharif—winter
B. Rabi—summer
C. Zaid—summer
D. Zaid—monsoon
Answer: C. Zaid—summer

13. **A crop is sown during the monsoon and depends on timely rainfall. Which season is it most likely associated with?**
A. Kharif
B. Rabi
C. Zaid
D. Alpine
Answer: A. Kharif

14. **Which older term referred to winter crops before "rabi" became widely used?**
A. Kedāra
B. Haimana
C. Graiṣhmika
D. Vṛikṣha
Answer: B. Haimana

15. **Which type of soil is also called cotton soil?**
A. Red soil
B. Black soil
C. Alluvial soil
D. Alpine soil
Answer: B. Black soil

16. **Which soil is described as thin, rough, and rocky?**
A. Alluvial soil
B. Black soil
C. Alpine soil
D. Laterite soil
Answer: C. Alpine soil

17. **What is humus?**
A. A type of irrigation canal
B. Decayed plant and animal matter rich in nutrients
C. A kind of seed drill
D. A crop grown in summer
Answer: B. Decayed plant and animal matter rich in nutrients

18. **Why is soil important to crops?**
A. It provides nutrients, water, and support
B. It controls the monsoon
C. It produces seeds without plants
D. It replaces sunlight
Answer: A. It provides nutrients, water, and support

19. **A farmer needs to cultivate a hillside while reducing erosion. Which method is most suitable?**
A. Hydroponics
B. Terrace farming

C. Deep flooding
D. Seed storage
Answer: B. Terrace farming

20. **What is one main benefit of terrace farming?**
A. It increases groundwater depletion
B. It helps conserve water and prevent soil erosion
C. It eliminates the need for seeds
D. It changes the crop season
Answer: B. It helps conserve water and prevent soil erosion

21. **What is beejamrit used for?**
A. Coating seeds before planting
B. Storing harvested crops
C. Creating terraces
D. Measuring rainfall
Answer: A. Coating seeds before planting

22. **Which combination describes the functions of the ancient Indian seed drill?**
A. Harvesting, threshing, and storing
B. Preparing soil, planting seeds, and closing the furrow
C. Irrigating, fertilising, and harvesting
D. Sorting, drying, and selling seeds
Answer: B. Preparing soil, planting seeds, and closing the furrow

23. **What does HYV stand for?**
A. High-yielding varieties
B. Harvest-year vegetation
C. Healthy young vines
D. High-year value
Answer: A. High-yielding varieties

24. **Which set of changes was associated with the Green Revolution?**
A. HYV seeds, increased irrigation, chemicals, and machinery
B. Fewer seeds, less irrigation, and no machinery
C. Only terrace farming and intercropping
D. Fishing, forestry, and animal rearing only
Answer: A. HYV seeds, increased irrigation, chemicals, and machinery

25. **Which crops saw a significant increase in production during the Green Revolution?**
A. Tea and coffee
B. Wheat and rice
C. Cotton and jute
D. Grapes and dates
Answer: B. Wheat and rice

26. **Which is a long-term concern linked to intensive use of Green Revolution methods?**
A. Increased soil fertility in every region
B. Groundwater depletion
C. Elimination of all crop diseases
D. Reduced need for rainfall
Answer: B. Groundwater depletion

27. **A farmer wants plants to grow without ordinary soil. Which method from the chapter could be used?**
A. Intercropping

B. Hydroponics
C. Grafting
D. Terrace farming
Answer: B. Hydroponics

28. **In hydroponics, plants receive essential minerals mainly through:**
A. Nutrient-rich water solutions
B. Dry sand alone
C. Mountain rocks
D. Sunlight only
Answer: A. Nutrient-rich water solutions

29. **Which practice best reflects a traditional farming system?**
A. Treating soil and plants as part of one ecosystem
B. Using only large machinery
C. Replacing all soil with concrete
D. Depending entirely on purchased seeds
Answer: A. Treating soil and plants as part of one ecosystem

30. **In gokṛiṣhi, how are cows and bullocks used?**
A. Cows provide manure and bullocks plough fields
B. Cows provide irrigation and bullocks harvest crops
C. Cows sow seeds and bullocks store grain
D. Cows provide pesticides and bullocks make terraces
Answer: A. Cows provide manure and bullocks plough fields

31. **A farmer's purchased seeds cannot be replanted from the next harvest. What concern may arise?**
A. Greater dependence on seed companies
B. Less need for irrigation
C. Soil turns into alpine soil
D. Kharif changes to rabi
Answer: A. Greater dependence on seed companies

32. **Which government support can help farmers manage losses when crops are damaged?**
A. Crop insurance
B. Grafting
C. Intercropping
D. Seed drilling
Answer: A. Crop insurance

33. **How can cold storage help farmers?**
A. It helps preserve produce before sale
B. It increases monsoon rainfall
C. It changes soil type
D. It turns rabi crops into kharif crops
Answer: A. It helps preserve produce before sale

34. **How can digital technology help farmers?**
A. It can improve access to information and markets
B. It can stop all climate change
C. It can replace soil in every farm
D. It can guarantee rainfall
Answer: A. It can improve access to information and markets

35. **Why can small landholdings make mechanised farming difficult?**
A. Machines may be expensive or designed for larger farms

B. Small fields always have too much rainfall
C. Machines cannot be used on any Indian soil
D. Small farms cannot grow crops
Answer: A. Machines may be expensive or designed for larger farms

36. **Which is a farming challenge linked to climate change?**
A. More predictable rainfall everywhere
B. Untimely rains and extreme weather events
C. Permanent increase in soil fertility
D. Elimination of droughts
Answer: B. Untimely rains and extreme weather events

37. **Why might a farmer raise livestock in addition to growing crops?**
A. To diversify livelihood and gain other useful products
B. To avoid all seasonal planning
C. To prevent the need for soil
D. To make rainfall unnecessary
Answer: A. To diversify livelihood and gain other useful products

38. **Which approach best expresses sustainable agriculture in the chapter?**
A. Using modern innovations while adopting eco-friendly practices
B. Increasing chemical use without limits
C. Using groundwater until it is exhausted
D. Growing the same crop regardless of local conditions
Answer: A. Using modern innovations while adopting eco-friendly practices

39. **Why should a farmer choose crops according to local conditions?**
A. Crops depend on soil, climate, water, and terrain
B. All crops grow equally well everywhere
C. Crop choice depends only on market colour
D. Terrain has no effect on farming
Answer: A. Crops depend on soil, climate, water, and terrain

40. **Which statement best explains why farming practices should differ between regions?**
A. India has varied climates, soils, water availability, and terrain
B. Every region has identical rainfall and soil
C. Farmers are required to grow only one crop
D. Cropping seasons do not affect agriculture
Answer: A. India has varied climates, soils, water availability, and terrain

1.15 Best Practices Opportunity List from the Chapter: (14 Ideas)

Best Practices for Teaching "The Story of Indian Farming":

(1) Begin with familiar foods: Ask students to list foods they eat and identify the grains, pulses, vegetables, fruits, or oils used in them.

(2) Connect crops to the map: Have students locate their state on a map of India and identify crops grown there.

(3) Use a crop-season chart: Prepare a class chart showing kharif, rabi, and zaid seasons, with examples of crops from each.

(4) Compare regional farming: Discuss why different crops grow in places with different climates, soils, water supplies, and terrain.

(5) Explore soil samples: Let students observe safe soil samples and describe their colour, texture, and visible contents.

(6) **Demonstrate intercropping:** Use a simple field diagram or classroom model to show how two crops can be grown together.
(7) **Model terrace farming:** Use a sloping tray or folded paper to demonstrate how terraces slow water flow and help reduce soil erosion.
(8) **Compare traditional and modern methods:** Ask students to compare tools, seeds, irrigation, labour, crop production, and effects on nature.
(9) **Use a farming decision activity:** Give groups a region's climate, soil, water supply, and terrain; ask them to choose suitable crops and explain why.
(10) **Discuss sustainable choices:** Invite students to suggest ways farmers can conserve soil and water while producing enough food.
(11) **Include farmers' challenges:** Use short case studies about small landholdings, unpredictable weather, machinery costs, and crop losses.
(12) **Use formative checks:** At the end of the lesson, ask students to classify a crop by season, name a suitable farming method, or explain one government support measure.
(13) **Encourage respectful discussion of farming work:** Highlight the contributions of women and men in sowing, planting, harvesting, and other farm activities.
(14) **Connect government support to real needs:** Ask students how weather information, crop insurance, cold storage, and market access could help farmers.

These activities build on the chapter's themes of farming history, regional conditions, cropping seasons, soils, agricultural practices, and farmers' challenges.

1.16 Innovations Opportunity List from the Chapter: (14 Ideas)

Innovations in Teaching and Learning "The Story of Indian Farming":

(1) **Create an interactive crop map:** Students mark major crops on a map of India and connect each crop to its region, climate, soil, and water needs.
(2) **Build a digital crop calendar:** Use a shared slide or classroom chart to place kharif, rabi, and zaid crops in the correct seasons.
(3) **Run a "Farmer for a Day" simulation:** Give groups a region, weather forecast, soil type, and budget; ask them to choose crops and farming methods.
(4) **Make a mini terrace-farming model:** Use a tray of soil or folded cardboard to model a hillside, then compare water flow on a slope and across terraces.
(5) **Design an intercropping layout:** Students draw a small field plan showing two crops growing together and explain their choices.
(6) **Create a seed-to-harvest story map:** Students arrange illustrated stages of farming, from choosing seeds and preparing soil to harvesting and selling produce.
(7) **Host a "Traditional or Modern?" debate:** Students compare methods such as farmyard manure, tractors, high-yielding seeds, and irrigation, considering benefits and possible effects.
(8) **Make a classroom soil investigation station:** Students examine different soil samples with magnifiers and record their colour, texture, and observations.
(9) **Prototype a water-saving farm:** Using paper, blocks, or recycled materials, groups design a model farm that uses water carefully and explains its irrigation choices.
(10) **Create a farmer-support service poster or app screen:** Students design a simple concept showing how weather alerts, crop insurance, cold storage, or market information could help farmers.
(11) **Produce a short "Farm News" bulletin:** Groups report on a fictional farming situation, such as delayed monsoon, heavy rainfall, or falling groundwater, and suggest responses.

(12) **Explore hydroponics through a class model:** Students draw or assemble a simple diagram showing how roots receive nutrients from water, then compare it with soil-based growing.
(13) **Use a virtual field trip:** Show images or a short video of farms across different Indian regions; students identify how terrain and climate influence farming practices.
(14) **Build a concept web:** Students connect the words *soil*, *climate*, *water*, *crops*, *seasons*, *technology*, and *sustainability*, then explain links between them.

The activities draw on the chapter's topics: Indian farming history, regional conditions, cropping seasons, soils, traditional and modern practices, and farmers' challenges.

1.17: Practicing Questions/Question Bank:

Question Bank: "The Story of Indian Farming":

A. Fill in the Blanks:

1. The practice of growing two or more different crops at the same time is called _____.
   Answer: Intercropping
2. The three main cropping seasons in India are kharif, rabi, and _____.
   Answer: zaid
3. Black soil is also known as _____ soil.
   Answer: cotton
4. Growing plants in nutrient-rich water solutions is called _____.
   Answer: hydroponics
5. The paste used to coat seeds before planting is called _____.
   Answer: beejamrit

B. One-Mark Descriptive Questions:

1. **What is animal husbandry?**
   Answer: Animal husbandry is the raising of livestock.
2. **What is grafting?**
   Answer: Grafting is joining one plant with another so they grow as a single plant.
3. **When does the southwest monsoon generally bring rain?**
   Answer: It generally brings rain from June to September.
4. **What is humus?**
   Answer: Humus is nutrient-rich material formed from decayed plant and animal matter.
5. **Name one challenge faced by farmers today.**
   Answer: Farmers may face unpredictable weather due to climate change.

C. Two-Mark Descriptive Questions:

1. **What is intercropping? Give one example.**
   Answer:
   (i) Intercropping is growing two or more crops at the same time.
   (ii) An example is growing sugarcane along with pumpkin.
2. **How does terrace farming help farmers?**
   Answer:

(i) Terraces create flat areas for cultivation on hillsides.
(ii) They help reduce soil erosion and conserve water.

3. **Name two ways the government supports farmers.**
   Answer:
   (i) The government may provide weather information and farming training.
   (ii) It may also support farmers through crop insurance or market assistance.

4. **Why can small landholdings make farming difficult?**
   Answer:
   (i) Small plots may not provide enough income.
   (ii) Large machinery may be costly or unsuitable for them.

5. **How can digital technology help farmers?**
   Answer:
   (i) It can improve access to farming and weather information.
   (ii) It can help farmers find markets and compare selling opportunities.

D. Three-Mark Descriptive Questions:

1. **How do climate, soil, and water influence crop choice?**
   Answer:
   (i) Climate affects the temperature and rainfall crops receive.
   (ii) Soil provides nutrients and moisture for plant growth.
   (iii) Water availability affects whether crops can grow successfully.

2. **Describe the three main cropping seasons in India.**
   Answer:
   (i) Kharif crops are associated with the monsoon season.
   (ii) Rabi crops are associated with winter.
   (iii) Zaid crops are associated with summer.

3. **Give three benefits of traditional farming practices.**
   Answer:
   (i) They may be adapted to local conditions.
   (ii) They often work with natural cycles.
   (iii) Some can help maintain soil health and reduce chemical use.

4. **How can climate change affect farmers?**
   Answer:
   (i) It can make rainfall and weather less predictable.
   (ii) Droughts or heavy rainfall can damage crops.
   (iii) Crop damage can reduce farmers' income.

5. **Why is soil health important for farming?**
   Answer:
   (i) Soil supplies nutrients to crops.
   (ii) It holds water and supports plant roots.
   (iii) Healthy soil helps farms remain productive.

E. Five-Mark Descriptive Questions:

1. **Explain how the monsoons influence farming in India.**
   Answer:
   (i) The southwest monsoon generally brings rain from June to September.

(ii) This rainfall is important for kharif crops in northern and central India.
(iii) The northeast monsoon generally prevails from October to December.
(iv) It brings rain to eastern and southern parts of India.
(v) The timing and amount of rainfall affect sowing and crop growth.

2. **Describe the main changes introduced during the Green Revolution and mention its long-term concerns.**
Answer:
(i) High-yielding varieties of seeds were introduced.
(ii) Irrigation increased, and chemical fertilisers and pesticides were used.
(iii) Mechanised equipment such as tractors and harvesters became more common.
(iv) Food-grain production, especially wheat and rice, increased significantly.
(v) Long-term concerns include soil damage, groundwater depletion, and chemical contamination.

3. **Suggest ways farmers can make agriculture more sustainable.**
Answer:
(i) Farmers can match crops to local climate, soil, and water conditions.
(ii) They can use water efficiently for irrigation.
(iii) They can protect soil health through suitable practices such as using manure.
(iv) They can limit harmful effects from excessive chemical use.
(v) They can combine useful modern technology with eco-friendly traditional practices.

4. **Describe five challenges that Indian farmers may face.**
Answer:
(i) Landholdings may become small when farmland is divided among family members.
(ii) Machinery may be expensive or unsuitable for small farms.
(iii) Unpredictable weather can damage crops.
(iv) Farmers may face water shortages or declining groundwater.
(v) Low income and crop losses can make loan repayment difficult.

5. **Explain how government support can help farmers.**
Answer:
(i) Weather information can help farmers plan their work.
(ii) Research and training can introduce useful farming practices.
(iii) Crop insurance can provide support after crop losses.
(iv) Government purchases can help farmers find buyers for important crops.
(v) Cold storage and digital market access can help farmers sell produce.

****

7th Standard Social Science Book (Part 2) Chapter 2

Chapter 2: India and Her Neighbours

2.1 Summary of the Chapter:

Summary: India and Her Neighbours:

(1) A neighbour may share a land border with India or be connected by the sea. Pakistan, China, Nepal, Bhutan, Bangladesh and Myanmar are land neighbours; Sri Lanka and the Maldives are nearby across the water.

(2) India's long coastline and position in the Indian Ocean connect it to countries across South Asia, West Asia and Southeast Asia. Sea routes have supported trade, cultural exchange and cooperation for centuries.

(3) India and China have longstanding cultural and trade links, including the spread of Buddhism. Their relationship also includes border tensions, which both countries address through dialogue and other mechanisms.

(4) India and Pakistan share a complex history shaped by Partition, wars and continuing tensions. Shared religious sites, languages, food and cultural traditions also reflect their connected past.

(5) The Kartarpur Corridor enables Indian pilgrims to visit an important Sikh shrine in Pakistan, showing how practical arrangements can support religious and cultural connections.

(6) India and Bangladesh share history, language, rivers and a coastline. Their cooperation includes trade and diplomacy, as well as conservation of the Sundarbans, which both countries share.

(7) India and Nepal are connected through culture, trade, religious sites and an open border. People cross for work, family, pilgrimage and other everyday activities.

(8) India and Bhutan cooperate closely. Shared rivers, trade and development links connect the two countries, while their Himalayan location makes their relationship strategically important.

(9) India's maritime neighbours—including Sri Lanka, the Maldives, Thailand, Malaysia, Singapore and Indonesia—have long-standing links with India through trade, migration, religion and culture.

(10) Buddhism, Hindu traditions, the Ramayana, languages and Indian-origin communities have shaped connections across Southeast Asia. These influences travelled through trade, pilgrimage and cultural exchange.

(11) India's ties with Iran and Oman also have deep historical roots. Today, cooperation includes trade, energy, transport, ports and maritime security; Chabahar Port helps connect India with Afghanistan and Central Asia.

(12) Neighbouring countries face shared challenges such as climate change, cyclones, earthquakes, tsunamis and protecting sea routes. Regional cooperation, disaster warning systems and connectivity projects can help them respond together and support peace and progress.

2.2 Important Formulas:

Important Rules for Answering Qualitative Questions:

Use these rules when answering questions that ask you to explain, compare, discuss or give reasons about India's neighbours.

(1) **Identify the type of neighbour.** State whether the country is connected to India by a land border, a shared sea or both.

(2) **Use relevant geography.** Mention nearby regions, mountains, rivers, coastlines or sea routes when they help explain the relationship.
(3) **Include historical background.** Refer to important shared events or long-standing links, such as Partition, the spread of Buddhism or ancient trade.
(4) **Explain the connection clearly.** Describe how the countries are linked through culture, language, religion, trade, migration or shared natural features.
(5) **Show cause and effect.** Explain how a feature leads to a result—for example, shared rivers connect livelihoods and make cooperation important.
(6) **Support points with examples.** Use examples from the chapter, such as the Kartarpur Corridor, the Sundarbans, the India–Nepal open border or Chabahar Port.
(7) **Include both cooperation and challenges.** Where relevant, describe areas of partnership as well as tensions or shared problems.
(8) **Explain why cooperation matters.** Link it to practical benefits such as trade, safety, disaster response, environmental protection or people's livelihoods.
(9) **Distinguish shared history from present-day relations.** A long cultural connection does not mean every current political or economic issue is settled.
(10) **Use respectful, balanced language.** Describe countries and their people fairly; avoid sweeping claims or unsupported judgments.
(11) **Answer the question directly.** Start with the main idea, then add reasons and examples. Keep each point relevant to what is being asked.
(12) **End with the wider idea when appropriate.** Conclude by explaining how neighbourly ties can support peace, stability and shared progress.

These rules reflect the chapter's focus on how geography, history, culture and cooperation shape India's neighbourhood.

2.3 Fill-Up the Blank LOTS type questions with Answers: (48 Questions)

Fill in the Blanks: LOTS Type:

1. India's total land boundary stretches over approximately _____ **km**.
   Answer: 15,100
2. A country connected to another by a shared sea or ocean is called a _____ **neighbour**.
   Answer: maritime
3. India's immediate neighbours across the water include Sri Lanka and the _____.
   Answer: Maldives
4. India's peninsular shape extends deep into the _____ **Ocean**.
   Answer: Indian
5. Buddhism originated in _____ and reached China around the 1st century CE.
   Answer: India
6. Chinese monks _____ and _____ travelled to Indian centres of learning.
   Answer: Faxian; Xuanzang
7. The India–China border passes through the Union Territory of _____.
   Answer: Ladakh
8. India and Pakistan were separated by the _____ **of 1947**.
   Answer: Partition
9. The Kargil War between India and Pakistan took place in _____.
   Answer: 1999
10. The Kartarpur Corridor allows Indian pilgrims to visit Gurdwara Darbar Sahib in _____.
    Answer: Kartarpur, Pakistan

11. The Kartarpur Sahib Gurdwara is associated with Guru _____ **Dev**.
    Answer: Nanak
12. Bangladesh was earlier known as _____ **Pakistan**.
    Answer: East
13. Bangla is spoken in Bangladesh and in the Indian state of _____ **Bengal**.
    Answer: West
14. India and Bangladesh share river systems originating from the Ganga and the _____.
    Answer: Brahmaputra
15. The Sundarbans are home to the _____ **tiger**.
    Answer: Bengal
16. The India–Nepal open-border arrangement is supported by the 1950 Treaty of Peace and _____.
    Answer: Friendship
17. Nepal's capital city is _____.
    Answer: Kathmandu
18. Indian pilgrims visit the Paśhupatinātha Temple in _____.
    Answer: Kathmandu
19. Bhutan is also called the "Land of the _____ **Dragon**."
    Answer: Thunder
20. The Tala _____ **Project** was built with support from India.
    Answer: Hydroelectric
21. Bhutanese pilgrims visit the Buddhist site of _____ **Gaya** in India.
    Answer: Bodh
22. Myanmar was earlier known as _____.
    Answer: Burma
23. India and Myanmar share a land border and a maritime boundary in the _____ **of Bengal**.
    Answer: Bay
24. The India–Myanmar–Thailand Trilateral Highway begins in the Indian state of _____.
    Answer: Manipur
25. The ancient Uttarāpatha trade route connected the Ganga plains with _____ **Asia** through Afghanistan.
    Answer: Central
26. The Buddhas of Bamiyan were located in _____.
    Answer: Afghanistan
27. India helped build the Zaranj–Delaram _____ in Afghanistan.
    Answer: highway
28. Sri Lanka's capital city is _____.
    Answer: Colombo
29. Buddhism was introduced to Sri Lanka by Mahendra and _____, the children of Emperor Aśhoka.
    Answer: Sanghamitrā
30. The Maldives consists of more than _____ **islets**.
    Answer: 1,100
31. The Indian island near the Maldives mentioned in the chapter is _____.
    Answer: Minicoy
32. The official language of the Maldives is _____.
    Answer: Dhivehi

33. India and the Maldives are members of the _____ **Solar Alliance**.
    Answer: International
34. The Dvāravatī culture in Thailand flourished from the 6th to the _____ **centuries CE**.
    Answer: 11th
35. The Ayutthayā Kingdom in Thailand was founded in _____.
    Answer: 1351
36. The official name of Bangkok's airport is _____ **Airport**.
    Answer: Suvarnabhumi
37. The Malay Peninsula was connected to India by sea routes across the _____ **of Bengal**.
    Answer: Bay
38. The script adopted in the Malay Peninsula around the 4th century CE was based on India's _____ **script**.
    Answer: Brāhmī
39. Singapore became a separate nation in _____.
    Answer: 1965
40. One area of Singapore where many residents of Indian origin live is called _____ **India**.
    Answer: Little
41. Indonesia is an _____, or a large group of islands.
    Answer: archipelago
42. The world's largest Buddhist monument mentioned in the chapter is the _____ **Stūpa**.
    Answer: Borobudur
43. India's Tsunami Early Warning Centre is located in _____.
    Answer: Hyderabad
44. India is helping to develop Iran's _____ **Port**.
    Answer: Chabahar
45. The ancient sacred text of Zoroastrianism is called the _____.
    Answer: Avesta
46. Oman is located on the southeastern coast of the _____ **Peninsula**.
    Answer: Arabian
47. The Harappan traders are thought to have brought copper ingots from _____.
    Answer: Oman
48. The Indian Ocean connects countries that are home to around _____ **billion people**.
    Answer: 2.7

2.4 Fill-Up the Blank HOTS type questions with Answers: (30 Questions)

Fill in the Blanks: HOTS Type:

Complete each statement using the chapter's ideas. The answers require applying or connecting information rather than simply recalling a name or date.

1. Since a country may be connected to India by sea without sharing a land border, the idea of a neighbour includes _____ **connections**.
   Answer: maritime
2. India's position between Southeast Asia, West Asia and Africa makes its location useful for _____ **between regions**.
   Answer: trade and connectivity

3. If a storm affects a coastline shared by two countries, protecting the Sundarbans requires _____ **between India and Bangladesh**.
   Answer: cooperation
4. Rivers flowing across the India–Bangladesh border matter to both countries because people depend on them for farming, fishing and _____.
   Answer: transportation
5. Since cyclones can affect both sides of the Sundarbans, joint conservation can also help strengthen _____ **resilience**.
   Answer: climate
6. The Kartarpur Corridor shows how a border crossing can support _____ **visits** between countries with a difficult history.
   Answer: religious
7. If people in India and Nepal cross the border for work, education and family visits without passports or visas, this reflects an _____ **border**.
   Answer: open
8. India and Nepal's open border supports everyday connections, so the relationship is shaped by more than _____ **alone**.
   Answer: geography
9. If India supplies medicines and petroleum to Nepal while Nepal sells agricultural produce and handicrafts to India, both countries benefit from _____.
   Answer: trade
10. Bhutan's rivers support farming and hydropower, so managing water and electricity links is an important area of _____.
    Answer: bilateral cooperation
11. When Bhutanese pilgrims visit Buddhist sites in India, their journeys strengthen _____ **ties** between the countries.
    Answer: spiritual
12. Since India and Myanmar share both a land border and a maritime boundary, the relationship can support _____ **connectivity**.
    Answer: regional
13. A highway running from Manipur through Myanmar to Thailand can improve trade by strengthening _____ **connectivity**.
    Answer: overland
14. Myanmar is described as India's gateway to Southeast Asia because routes through Myanmar help connect India with _____.
    Answer: Southeast Asia
15. When India helps restore a damaged temple in Myanmar, it supports the preservation of _____ **heritage**.
    Answer: cultural
16. The Uttarāpatha linked the Ganga plains with Central Asia, showing how trade routes also carried _____ **and ideas**.
    Answer: people
17. The Bamiyan Buddhas showed the reach of Buddhism from India into Afghanistan, so monuments can provide evidence of _____ **exchange**.
    Answer: cultural
18. India's support for education, healthcare and infrastructure in Afghanistan is an example of _____ **assistance**.
    Answer: development

19. When Indian and Sri Lankan pilgrims visit sacred sites across the sea, the ocean acts as a _____ **between communities**.
    Answer: link
20. The movement of Tamil families from Sri Lanka to Tamil Nadu during the civil war illustrates how conflict can cause _____ **across borders**.
    Answer: migration
21. India's quick help to the Maldives during a water crisis shows how neighbours can provide _____ **support** during emergencies.
    Answer: humanitarian
22. Because rising sea levels threaten the Maldives, climate change is a _____ **challenge** for island nations.
    Answer: shared
23. If an island country is vulnerable to sea-level rise, cooperation on solar energy and sustainability can support its _____ **future**.
    Answer: sustainable
24. Indian traders carried goods and religious ideas to Thailand, so ancient sea voyages encouraged both _____ **and cultural exchange**.
    Answer: trade
25. Thai kingdom names connected to Indian cities show that cultural influence can continue through _____.
    Answer: place names
26. The India–Myanmar–Thailand Highway revives older connections by making _____ **travel and trade** easier.
    Answer: overland
27. Indian workers who migrated to Malaysia helped create lasting _____ **links** between the two countries.
    Answer: people-to-people
28. When Indian companies and Malaysian organisations collaborate, the relationship includes _____ **cooperation**.
    Answer: economic
29. Tamil being one of Singapore's official languages suggests a continuing connection with _____ **India**.
    Answer: South
30. Singapore's Indian-origin community and the area called Little India show how migration can preserve _____ **identity** abroad.
    Answer: cultural
31. India and Indonesia's cooperation on maritime security matters because both countries have long coastlines and depend on _____ **sea lanes**.
    Answer: safe
32. The tsunami warning network created after the 2004 disaster shows how a shared natural hazard can lead to _____ **cooperation**.
    Answer: regional
33. Sensors, satellites and communication links help countries respond to undersea earthquakes by improving _____ **warnings**.
    Answer: tsunami
34. Borobudur's Buddhist architecture and mandala design show that Indian ideas were adapted into _____ **traditions**.
    Answer: Indonesian

35. India and Iran's cooperation on Chabahar Port can improve India's access to Afghanistan and _____ **Asia**.
Answer: Central
36. The use of Persian in Indian courts and the presence of Parsis in India show that cultural connections can develop through _____ **and migration**.
Answer: language
37. Oman's copper links with Harappan traders suggest that ancient India's trade included _____.
Answer: metal exchange
38. India and Oman's joint military exercises and work on maritime security show that neighbours can cooperate on _____ as well as trade.
Answer: defence
39. If countries share historical trade routes, present-day connectivity projects can help _____ **those links**.
Answer: revive
40. India's relationships with its neighbours involve geography, history, culture and shared interests, showing that neighbourhood is _____ **than a border**.
Answer: broader
41. When countries coordinate disaster relief, they can respond more effectively to problems that _____ **borders**.
Answer: cross
42. The chapter's examples of trade, pilgrimage, roads and cultural traditions show that India's connections with neighbours are _____.
Answer: multidimensional

2.5 One-mark questions with Answers of LOTS Type: (40 Questions)

One-Mark Descriptive Questions: LOTS Type:

1. **What is a maritime neighbour?**
Answer: A maritime neighbour is a country connected to another by a shared sea or ocean.
2. **Name two of India's neighbours across the water.**
Answer: Sri Lanka and the Maldives are India's neighbours across the water.
3. **Which ocean does India's peninsula extend into?**
Answer: India's peninsula extends into the Indian Ocean.
4. **Name two Chinese monks who travelled to Indian centres of learning.**
Answer: Faxian and Xuanzang travelled to Indian centres of learning.
5. **Which religion created an important cultural link between India and China?**
Answer: Buddhism created an important cultural link between India and China.
6. **In which year did the Kargil War take place?**
Answer: The Kargil War took place in 1999.
7. **What is the Kartarpur Corridor used for?**
Answer: The Kartarpur Corridor allows Indian pilgrims to visit Gurdwara Darbar Sahib in Pakistan.
8. **Which Indian state shares the Bangla language with Bangladesh?**
Answer: West Bengal shares the Bangla language with Bangladesh.
9. **Name one river system shared by India and Bangladesh.**
Answer: The Ganga river system is shared by India and Bangladesh.
10. **Which famous mangrove forest is shared by India and Bangladesh?**
Answer: The Sundarbans are shared by India and Bangladesh.

11. **What is the capital of Nepal?**
    Answer: Kathmandu is the capital of Nepal.
12. **Which treaty provides for an open border between India and Nepal?**
    Answer: The 1950 Treaty of Peace and Friendship provides for an open border between India and Nepal.
13. **Name one Hindu festival celebrated in both India and Nepal.**
    Answer: Holi is celebrated in both India and Nepal.
14. **What is Bhutan also called?**
    Answer: Bhutan is also called the Land of the Thunder Dragon.
15. **Which renewable energy source is a major area of cooperation between India and Bhutan?**
    Answer: Hydroelectric power is a major area of cooperation between India and Bhutan.
16. **Which Buddhist master introduced Vajrayāna Buddhism to Bhutan?**
    Answer: Guru Padmasambhava introduced Vajrayāna Buddhism to Bhutan.
17. **What was Myanmar formerly called?**
    Answer: Myanmar was formerly called Burma.
18. **Which Indian state shares a border with Myanmar?**
    Answer: Manipur shares a border with Myanmar.
19. **Which three countries are connected by the Trilateral Highway mentioned in the chapter?**
    Answer: India, Myanmar and Thailand are connected by the Trilateral Highway.
20. **What is the capital of Afghanistan?**
    Answer: Kabul is the capital of Afghanistan.
21. **Which ancient trade route connected the Ganga plains with Central Asia through Afghanistan?**
    Answer: The Uttarāpatha connected the Ganga plains with Central Asia through Afghanistan.
22. **Where were the Buddhas of Bamiyan located?**
    Answer: The Buddhas of Bamiyan were located in Afghanistan.
23. **Who introduced Buddhism to Sri Lanka, according to the chapter?**
    Answer: Mahendra and Sanghamitrā introduced Buddhism to Sri Lanka.
24. **What is the capital of Sri Lanka named in the chapter's map?**
    Answer: Colombo is named as Sri Lanka's capital in the chapter's map.
25. **Approximately how many islets make up the Maldives?**
    Answer: The Maldives consists of more than 1,100 islets.
26. **What is the official language of the Maldives?**
    Answer: Dhivehi is the official language of the Maldives.
27. **Which Indian island is about 130 km from the Maldives?**
    Answer: Minicoy is about 130 km from the Maldives.
28. **What is the capital of Thailand?**
    Answer: Bangkok is the capital of Thailand.
29. **In which year was the Ayutthayā Kingdom founded?**
    Answer: The Ayutthayā Kingdom was founded in 1351.
30. **What is the official name of Bangkok's airport mentioned in the chapter?**
    Answer: Suvarnabhumi Airport is the official name mentioned in the chapter.
31. **Which script influenced the script adopted in the Malay Peninsula?**
    Answer: India's Brāhmī script influenced the script adopted in the Malay Peninsula.
32. **In which year did Singapore become a separate nation?**
    Answer: Singapore became a separate nation in 1965.

33. **What is the Indian-origin neighbourhood in Singapore called?**
    Answer: The Indian-origin neighbourhood in Singapore is called Little India.
34. **What is Indonesia's geographical form?**
    Answer: Indonesia is an archipelago made up of many islands.
35. **Name the world's largest Buddhist monument mentioned in the chapter.**
    Answer: Borobudur Stūpa is the world's largest Buddhist monument mentioned in the chapter.
36. **Where is India's Tsunami Early Warning Centre located?**
    Answer: India's Tsunami Early Warning Centre is located in Hyderabad.
37. **Which Iranian port is India helping to develop?**
    Answer: India is helping to develop Chabahar Port in Iran.
38. **What is the ancient sacred text of Zoroastrianism called?**
    Answer: The ancient sacred text of Zoroastrianism is called the Avesta.
39. **Where is Oman located?**
    Answer: Oman is located on the southeastern coast of the Arabian Peninsula.
40. **What metal did Harappan traders likely bring from Oman?**
    Answer: Harappan traders likely brought copper from Oman.

2.6 One-mark questions with Answers of HOTS Type: (35 Questions)

One-Mark Descriptive Questions: HOTS Type:

1. **Why is India considered a maritime nation?**
   Answer: India is considered a maritime nation because its long coastline and peninsular shape connect it to important ocean routes.
2. **How can the Indian Ocean help India build relationships with distant countries?**
   Answer: The Indian Ocean provides routes for trade, travel and cultural exchange with countries across its shores.
3. **Why can Sri Lanka and the Maldives be considered India's neighbours even without a land border?**
   Answer: They are maritime neighbours connected to India across nearby waters.
4. **How did Buddhism help create links between India and China?**
   Answer: Buddhist teachings travelled from India to China, while monks travelled between the two countries to study and share ideas.
5. **What does the Kartarpur Corridor show about the role of pilgrimage in neighbourly relations?**
   Answer: It shows that pilgrimage arrangements can help people maintain religious and cultural connections across a border.
6. **Why are India–Pakistan relations described as complex in the chapter?**
   Answer: Their shared history includes Partition and conflicts, alongside cultural connections and efforts such as pilgrimage routes.
7. **Why do rivers matter to both India and Bangladesh?**
   Answer: The shared rivers support farming, fishing, transportation and the livelihoods of people in both countries.
8. **Why is cooperation important for protecting the Sundarbans?**
   Answer: The Sundarbans crosses the India–Bangladesh border, so both countries need to coordinate its protection.
9. **How can the Sundarbans help protect people as well as wildlife?**
   Answer: Its mangrove forest supports biodiversity and acts as a barrier against cyclones.

10. **How does the India–Nepal open border affect people's daily lives?**
    Answer: It allows people to cross for work, education, healthcare, trade and family visits without a passport or visa.
11. **Why is the India–Nepal relationship an example of close interdependence?**
    Answer: People, goods and cultural traditions move across the border and connect communities in both countries.
12. **How does hydropower cooperation benefit India and Bhutan?**
    Answer: Hydropower supports Bhutan's economic growth and supplies renewable energy to India.
13. **Why is Bhutan's relationship with India shaped by more than geography?**
    Answer: The two countries also share Buddhist heritage and cooperate in economic and strategic areas.
14. **Why is Myanmar important for India's connections with Southeast Asia?**
    Answer: Myanmar borders India and provides a route for regional travel, trade and connectivity with Southeast Asia.
15. **How can a highway through India, Myanmar and Thailand strengthen regional ties?**
    Answer: It can improve overland travel and trade among the three countries.
16. **What does India's restoration of the Ananda temple in Myanmar demonstrate?**
    Answer: It demonstrates cooperation in protecting shared religious and cultural heritage.
17. **How did the Uttarāpatha connect India with regions beyond its borders?**
    Answer: It linked the Ganga plains to Central Asia through Afghanistan and carried goods, people and ideas.
18. **Why are the Buddhas of Bamiyan significant to India's connections with Afghanistan?**
    Answer: They reflected the spread of Buddhist culture from India into Afghanistan.
19. **How can development projects strengthen India's relationship with Afghanistan?**
    Answer: Projects in areas such as education, healthcare and transport can support people's welfare and connectivity.
20. **What does the movement of Tamil families from Sri Lanka to India during the civil war illustrate?**
    Answer: It illustrates how conflict can cause people to migrate across national borders.
21. **Why is India's emergency assistance to the Maldives significant?**
    Answer: It shows how a nearby country can provide timely help during a crisis.
22. **Why is climate change a concern for the Maldives?**
    Answer: Rising sea levels threaten the low-lying islands that make up the Maldives.
23. **How can shared cultural influences be seen in the Maldives?**
    Answer: South Indian influences appear in Maldivian language, cuisine, arts and boat-building traditions.
24. **What can the names of Thai kingdoms tell us about India–Thailand connections?**
    Answer: Names such as Dvāravatī and Ayutthayā reflect the influence of Indian traditions and stories.
25. **How did ancient trade help connect India and Thailand?**
    Answer: Traders carried goods such as spices and textiles as well as religious and cultural ideas by sea.
26. **Why can migration strengthen India's ties with Malaysia?**
    Answer: Indian communities formed through migration maintain lasting people-to-people and cultural connections.

27. **What does the presence of Tamil as an official language in Singapore suggest?**
Answer: It suggests a continuing historical and cultural connection with South India.
28. **Why is cooperation between India and Indonesia important for maritime security?**
Answer: Both countries depend on safe sea routes and face shared concerns such as piracy and climate change.
29. **What lesson did the 2004 tsunami provide about regional cooperation?**
Answer: It showed that countries can work together on warning systems to help protect lives.
30. **How can Chabahar Port improve India's connectivity?**
Answer: It can give India better access to Afghanistan and Central Asia.
31. **What do India's historical ties with Oman suggest about ancient trade?**
Answer: They suggest that Indian traders exchanged goods with communities across the Arabian Sea long ago.
32. **How do India and Oman combine economic and strategic cooperation?**
Answer: They cooperate in trade and maritime security, as well as through joint military exercises.
33. **Why can a country be a neighbour even if it does not share a land border with India?**
Answer: It can be connected to India through shared seas, trade routes or long-standing cultural ties.
34. **How can historical routes help countries plan modern connectivity projects?**
Answer: Modern projects can revive earlier links and make travel and trade easier.
35. **What broader idea about neighbourhood does the chapter communicate?**
Answer: Neighbourhood is shaped by shared history, culture, trade and cooperation as well as by borders.

2.7 Two-mark questions with Answers of LOTS Type: (40 Questions)

Two-Mark Descriptive Questions: LOTS Type:

1. **What is a maritime neighbour? Give one example of India's maritime neighbour.**
Answer:
(i) A maritime neighbour is a country connected to another by a shared sea or ocean.
(ii) Sri Lanka is a maritime neighbour of India.
2. **Name two countries that share a land border with India.**
Answer:
(i) Nepal shares a land border with India.
(ii) Bangladesh shares a land border with India.
3. **Name two water bodies that surround India.**
Answer:
(i) The Arabian Sea lies to the west of India.
(ii) The Bay of Bengal lies to the east of India.
4. **Name two Chinese monks who travelled to Indian centres of learning.**
Answer:
(i) Faxian travelled to India.
(ii) Xuanzang travelled to India.
5. **Name two Indian Buddhist teachers who carried Buddhist teachings to China.**
Answer:
(i) Bodhidharma carried Buddhist teachings to China.
(ii) Dharmakṣhema carried Buddhist teachings to China.

6. **Name two goods that India exported to China in 2024–2025, according to the chapter.**
   Answer:
   (i) Iron ore was one of India's exports to China.
   (ii) Cotton yarn was another export.
7. **Name two Indian states that share a border with Pakistan.**
   Answer:
   (i) Gujarat shares a border with Pakistan.
   (ii) Rajasthan shares a border with Pakistan.
8. **What is the Kartarpur Corridor? Which gurdwara does it help pilgrims visit?**
   Answer:
   (i) It is a visa-free border crossing between India and Pakistan.
   (ii) It helps Indian pilgrims visit Gurdwara Darbar Sahib in Kartarpur.
9. **Name two cultural connections shared by India and Pakistan.**
   Answer:
   (i) The two countries share connections through languages and cuisine.
   (ii) Music and festivals also connect people across the border.
10. **Which Indian states share a border with Bangladesh? Name any two.**
    Answer:
    (i) West Bengal shares a border with Bangladesh.
    (ii) Tripura also shares a border with Bangladesh.
11. **Name two rivers whose systems connect India and Bangladesh.**
    Answer:
    (i) The Ganga river system connects the two countries.
    (ii) The Brahmaputra river system also connects them.
12. **Name two ways in which the shared rivers support people in India and Bangladesh.**
    Answer:
    (i) The rivers support agriculture and fisheries.
    (ii) They also support transportation and people's livelihoods.
13. **Name two countries that share the Sundarbans.**
    Answer:
    (i) India shares the Sundarbans with Bangladesh.
    (ii) The two countries coordinate its protection and management.
14. **Name two Indian states along the India–Nepal border.**
    Answer:
    (i) Uttarakhand shares a border with Nepal.
    (ii) Bihar also shares a border with Nepal.
15. **What does the India–Nepal open-border policy allow?**
    Answer:
    (i) Citizens can cross the border without a passport or visa.
    (ii) They can travel for work, education, trade or family visits.
16. **Name two festivals celebrated in both India and Nepal.**
    Answer:
    (i) Daśhain is celebrated in both countries.
    (ii) Tihar is also celebrated in both countries.
17. **Name two goods India supplies to Nepal.**
    Answer:
    (i) India supplies petroleum to Nepal.
    (ii) India also supplies medicines and food items.

18. **Name two states that share a border with Bhutan.**
    Answer:
    (i) Sikkim shares a border with Bhutan.
    (ii) Assam also shares a border with Bhutan.
19. **Name two ways Bhutan's rivers are useful.**
    Answer:
    (i) The rivers support agriculture.
    (ii) They provide water for hydroelectric power generation.
20. **Name two Buddhist sites in India visited by Bhutanese pilgrims.**
    Answer:
    (i) Bhutanese pilgrims visit Bodh Gaya.
    (ii) They also visit Nalanda.
21. **Name two Indian states that share a border with Myanmar.**
    Answer:
    (i) Manipur shares a border with Myanmar.
    (ii) Mizoram also shares a border with Myanmar.
22. **Name two ways the India–Myanmar Land Border Crossing Agreement of 2018 helped border communities.**
    Answer:
    (i) It eased cross-border movement for people living near the border.
    (ii) It supported trade and people-to-people ties.
23. **Name two countries linked by the India–Myanmar–Thailand Trilateral Highway besides India.**
    Answer:
    (i) The highway connects India with Myanmar.
    (ii) It continues through Myanmar to Thailand.
24. **Name two areas in which India has supported development in Afghanistan.**
    Answer:
    (i) India has supported education and healthcare in Afghanistan.
    (ii) India has also supported infrastructure development.
25. **Name two Indian maritime neighbours in the chapter.**
    Answer:
    (i) The Maldives is a maritime neighbour of India.
    (ii) Oman is also a maritime neighbour of India.
26. **Name the two people who introduced Buddhism to Sri Lanka, according to the chapter.**
    Answer:
    (i) Mahendra introduced Buddhism to Sri Lanka.
    (ii) His sister Sanghamitrā also helped introduce it.
27. **Name two occasions when India provided help to the Maldives.**
    Answer:
    (i) India helped the Maldives during the 2004 tsunami.
    (ii) India also helped during the 2014 water crisis in Malé.
28. **Name two Indian cultural influences found in the Maldives.**
    Answer:
    (i) South Indian influences can be seen in Maldivian cuisine.
    (ii) They can also be seen in language and dance.
29. **Name two Indian cultural traditions reflected in Thailand.**
    Answer:

(i) Buddhism and Hinduism are part of Thailand's cultural heritage.
(ii) Stories from Indian epics appear in Thai royal ceremonies, dance and literature.

30. **Name two economic areas in which India and Malaysia cooperate.**
Answer:
(i) India and Malaysia cooperate in palm oil and energy.
(ii) They also collaborate in infrastructure and information technology.
31. **Name two official languages of Singapore that reflect its diverse population.**
Answer:
(i) Tamil is one of Singapore's official languages.
(ii) Malay is also an official language.
32. **Name two islands in Indonesia with which ancient Indian kingdoms traded.**
Answer:
(i) Indian kingdoms traded with Java.
(ii) They also traded with Sumatra.
33. **Name two shared concerns that make India–Indonesia cooperation important.**
Answer:
(i) Both countries share concerns about maritime security and piracy.
(ii) They also share concerns about climate change and protecting sea lanes.
34. **Name two tools used in the Indian Ocean tsunami warning network.**
Answer:
(i) The network uses sensors and satellites.
(ii) It also uses communication links.
35. **Name two areas in which India and Iran cooperate.**
Answer:
(i) India and Iran cooperate in trade and energy.
(ii) They also cooperate in transport.
36. **Name two ways in which ancient India and Oman were connected.**
Answer:
(i) People had contact through maritime trade.
(ii) Harappan traders are thought to have brought copper from Oman.
37. **Name two forms of modern cooperation between India and Oman.**
Answer:
(i) India and Oman cooperate in maritime security.
(ii) They conduct joint military exercises.
38. **Name two ancient trade routes mentioned in the chapter.**
Answer:
(i) The Uttarāpatha was an ancient trade route.
(ii) The Silk Route was another important route.
39. **Name two ways Indian traditions spread to neighbouring regions.**
Answer:
(i) Indian traditions spread through trade and pilgrimage.
(ii) They also spread through cultural exchange.
40. **Name two purposes of present-day regional connectivity projects.**
Answer:
(i) They aim to revive historical links between countries.
(ii) They support trade and regional cooperation.

2.8. Two-mark questions with Answers of HOTS Type: (35 Questions)

Two-Mark Descriptive Questions: HOTS Type:

1. **Why is it useful to include maritime countries when describing India's neighbourhood?**
   Answer:
   (i) Sea routes connect India with countries that do not share a land border.
   (ii) These routes support trade, cultural exchange and regional cooperation.
2. **How does India's location in the Indian Ocean support its role in the region?**
   Answer:
   (i) India's position links Southeast Asia, West Asia and Africa.
   (ii) Its ports and sea routes support trade and humanitarian assistance.
3. **What do the historical Buddhist links between India and China tell us about cultural exchange?**
   Answer:
   (i) Religious ideas travelled between the countries through trade and pilgrimage routes.
   (ii) Monks from both regions helped share learning and spiritual traditions.
4. **How can trade and dialogue help India and China manage tensions?**
   Answer:
   (i) Trade gives the countries shared economic interests.
   (ii) Dialogue and border mechanisms provide ways to discuss disputes.
5. **How does the Kartarpur Corridor show that a border can support connections as well as separation?**
   Answer:
   (i) It allows pilgrims to cross the border for a religious visit.
   (ii) It keeps a shared cultural and spiritual connection alive.
6. **Why is it important to consider both conflict and cultural ties when studying India–Pakistan relations?**
   Answer:
   (i) Wars and tensions have shaped the countries' political relationship.
   (ii) Shared languages, food, music and religious sites also reflect their common heritage.
7. **How do shared rivers make India and Bangladesh interdependent?**
   Answer:
   (i) People in both countries rely on the rivers for farming, fishing and transport.
   (ii) Cooperation is needed to manage resources that cross their border.
8. **Why is joint protection of the Sundarbans important for both countries?**
   Answer:
   (i) The forest and its wildlife extend across India and Bangladesh.
   (ii) Its mangroves also help protect the region from cyclones.
9. **How can the India–Nepal open border affect daily life in border communities?**
   Answer:
   (i) People can cross for work, education, healthcare and family visits.
   (ii) Regular movement supports trade and social connections between communities.
10. **Why is India–Nepal cooperation shaped by more than their shared border?**
    Answer:
    (i) People in the two countries share festivals, pilgrimage sites and cultural traditions.
    (ii) They also exchange goods and maintain close diplomatic relations.
11. **How can hydropower cooperation benefit both Bhutan and India?**
    Answer:
    (i) Hydroelectric projects contribute to Bhutan's economic growth.
    (ii) They also provide renewable energy to India.

12. **What do Bhutanese visits to Buddhist sites in India show about the countries' relationship?**
    Answer:
    (i) The visits reflect a shared Buddhist heritage.
    (ii) Pilgrimage helps maintain spiritual and people-to-people ties.
13. **Why is Myanmar important to India's regional connectivity?**
    Answer:
    (i) It shares both a land border and a maritime boundary with India.
    (ii) Routes through Myanmar connect India with Southeast Asia.
14. **How can a road linking India, Myanmar and Thailand benefit the region?**
    Answer:
    (i) It can make travel between the three countries easier.
    (ii) Better connectivity can support trade and cooperation.
15. **What does India's assistance in restoring Myanmar's Ananda temple demonstrate?**
    Answer:
    (i) Neighbouring countries can cooperate to protect cultural heritage.
    (ii) Shared religious history can support modern partnerships.
16. **How did the Uttarāpatha connect India with Afghanistan and Central Asia?**
    Answer:
    (i) It linked the Ganga plains with Central Asia through Afghanistan.
    (ii) It carried goods, people, religious traditions and ideas.
17. **Why are the Buddhas of Bamiyan evidence of historical cultural links?**
    Answer:
    (i) They showed the presence and influence of Buddhism in Afghanistan.
    (ii) Their history reflects the spread of Buddhist traditions from India into the region.
18. **How can development projects strengthen India's relationship with Afghanistan?**
    Answer:
    (i) Projects in education, healthcare and infrastructure can support people's needs.
    (ii) Roads and other links can improve connectivity between communities.
19. **How can shared spiritual traditions strengthen India–Sri Lanka relations?**
    Answer:
    (i) Pilgrimage and religious heritage connect people in both countries.
    (ii) These connections support cultural exchange alongside economic cooperation.
20. **What does the movement of Tamil families from Sri Lanka to India during the civil war illustrate?**
    Answer:
    (i) Conflict can force people to leave their homes and migrate.
    (ii) Cultural and family links can influence where displaced people seek safety.
21. **How does India's emergency assistance to the Maldives illustrate regional cooperation?**
    Answer:
    (i) India provided help during crises such as the tsunami and water shortage.
    (ii) Timely support can strengthen trust between neighbouring countries.
22. **Why is climate change a shared concern for India and the Maldives?**
    Answer:
    (i) Rising sea levels threaten the Maldives' low-lying islands.
    (ii) The countries can cooperate on sustainability and renewable energy.
23. **How do cultural influences from South India appear in the Maldives?**
    Answer:

(i) They can be seen in language and food traditions.
(ii) The chapter also notes links in dance and boat-building.

24. **What do Thai place names such as Dvāravatī and Ayutthayā suggest about historical cultural exchange?**
Answer:
(i) They reflect the influence of Indian names and traditions.
(ii) They show how cultural ideas travelled and were adopted in Thailand.
25. **How did ancient maritime trade shape India–Thailand relations?**
Answer:
(i) Traders exchanged goods such as spices and textiles.
(ii) They also carried religious and cultural ideas across the sea.
26. **How can migration contribute to India–Malaysia connections?**
Answer:
(i) Indian workers who settled in Malaysia helped form a lasting community.
(ii) Their presence supports continuing cultural and people-to-people links.
27. **What does Tamil's status as an official language in Singapore suggest about its connections with India?**
Answer:
(i) It reflects historical connections with South India.
(ii) It also represents the presence of people of Indian origin in Singapore.
28. **Why is maritime cooperation between India and Indonesia important?**
Answer:
(i) Both countries depend on safe sea routes and face concerns such as piracy.
(ii) Cooperation can also help address climate change and disaster relief.
29. **What lesson did the 2004 tsunami provide about responding to regional disasters?**
Answer:
(i) A disaster in one part of the Indian Ocean can affect many countries.
(ii) Shared warning systems can help alert communities and save lives.
30. **How can Chabahar Port improve India's access to other regions?**
Answer:
(i) The port gives India a transport link through Iran.
(ii) It improves access to Afghanistan and Central Asia.
31. **What do India's ancient links with Oman show about trade across the Arabian Sea?**
Answer:
(i) Trade and contact between the regions existed thousands of years ago.
(ii) The exchange included goods such as copper.
32. **How do India and Oman combine defence cooperation with maritime partnership?**
Answer:
(i) They hold joint military exercises.
(ii) They also work together on Indian Ocean maritime security.
33. **How can present-day connectivity projects build on ancient trade routes?**
Answer:
(i) They can reopen or strengthen routes that once connected neighbouring regions.
(ii) They can make modern trade and travel easier.
34. **Why does the chapter describe India's relationships with neighbours as multidimensional?**
Answer:

(i) The relationships include geography, history, trade, culture and religion.
(ii) They also involve present-day cooperation on security and shared challenges.

35. **How can cooperation on shared challenges promote regional progress?**
Answer:
(i) Countries can combine their efforts to address problems such as disasters and climate change.
(ii) Working together can support stability and shared development.

2.9. Three-mark questions with Answers of LOTS Type: (35 Questions)

Three-Mark Descriptive Questions: LOTS Type:

1. **Describe India's neighbourhood by land and sea.**
Answer:
(i) Pakistan, China, Nepal, Bhutan, Bangladesh and Myanmar are among India's land neighbours.
(ii) Sri Lanka and the Maldives are nearby across the water.
(iii) Iran, Oman, Thailand, Malaysia, Singapore and Indonesia are part of India's wider maritime neighbourhood.
2. **State three ways the Indian Ocean is important to India.**
Answer:
(i) It connects India with Southeast Asia, West Asia and Africa.
(ii) It carries important trade and shipping routes.
(iii) India's central position helps it provide humanitarian aid and disaster relief.
3. **Give three examples of historical links between India and China.**
Answer:
(i) Buddhism travelled from India to China around the 1st century CE.
(ii) Chinese monks Faxian and Xuanzang travelled to Indian centres of learning.
(iii) Indian monks carried Buddhist teachings to China.
4. **Name three Indian states or territories along the India–China border.**
Answer:
(i) Arunachal Pradesh shares a border with China.
(ii) Sikkim shares a border with China.
(iii) Ladakh also lies along the India–China border.
5. **State three goods mentioned as part of India–China trade.**
Answer:
(i) India exported iron ore to China in 2024–2025.
(ii) India also exported chemicals.
(iii) India exported cotton yarn as well.
6. **Name three Indian states or territories along the India–Pakistan border.**
Answer:
(i) Gujarat shares a border with Pakistan.
(ii) Rajasthan shares a border with Pakistan.
(iii) Punjab also shares a border with Pakistan.
7. **State three features of the Kartarpur Corridor.**
Answer:
(i) It is a border crossing between India and Pakistan.
(ii) Indian pilgrims can use it to visit Gurdwara Darbar Sahib in Kartarpur.
(iii) Pilgrims need a permit but do not need a visa to use it.
8. **Name three cultural connections between India and Pakistan mentioned in the chapter.**

Answer:
(i) The countries share connections through languages.
(ii) Their cuisines and music also reflect shared cultural links.
(iii) Festivals and religious sites connect people across the border.

9. **Name three Indian states that share a border with Bangladesh.**
Answer:
(i) West Bengal shares a border with Bangladesh.
(ii) Assam shares a border with Bangladesh.
(iii) Tripura also shares a border with Bangladesh.
10. **State three ways shared rivers support people in India and Bangladesh.**
Answer:
(i) The rivers support agriculture.
(ii) They support fisheries and transportation.
(iii) They contribute to the livelihoods of millions of people.
11. **Give three facts about the Sundarbans mentioned in the chapter.**
Answer:
(i) The Sundarbans are a UNESCO World Heritage Site.
(ii) About two-thirds of the forest lies in Bangladesh and the rest in India.
(iii) The mangrove forest is home to the Bengal tiger.
12. **Name three Indian states that share a border with Nepal.**
Answer:
(i) Uttarakhand shares a border with Nepal.
(ii) Uttar Pradesh shares a border with Nepal.
(iii) Bihar also shares a border with Nepal.
13. **State three ways the India–Nepal open border affects people.**
Answer:
(i) People can cross without passports or visas.
(ii) They can travel for work, education and healthcare.
(iii) They can maintain family connections and take part in trade.
14. **Name three festivals celebrated in both India and Nepal.**
Answer:
(i) Daśhain is celebrated in both countries.
(ii) Tihar is celebrated in both countries.
(iii) Holi is also celebrated in both countries.
15. **Name three goods India supplies to Nepal.**
Answer:
(i) India supplies petroleum to Nepal.
(ii) India supplies medicines and food items.
(iii) India also supplies manufactured products.
16. **Give three facts about Bhutan's geography and name.**
Answer:
(i) Bhutan is a landlocked Himalayan kingdom.
(ii) It lies between India and China.
(iii) It is called Drukyul, or the "Land of the Thunder Dragon."
17. **State three ways India and Bhutan are connected.**
Answer:
(i) The countries have strong economic links.
(ii) They share Buddhist cultural and spiritual ties.
(iii) They cooperate in hydroelectric power generation.

18. **Name three Buddhist sites in India visited by Bhutanese pilgrims.**
    Answer:
    (i) Bhutanese pilgrims visit Bodh Gaya.
    (ii) They also visit Rajgir and Nalanda.
    (iii) Udayagiri and Sikkim are also among their destinations.
19. **Give three facts about India's border with Myanmar.**
    Answer:
    (i) Myanmar shares a land border with India.
    (ii) The two countries also share a maritime boundary in the Bay of Bengal.
    (iii) Arunachal Pradesh, Nagaland, Manipur and Mizoram border Myanmar.
20. **State three ways the India–Myanmar Land Border Crossing Agreement of 2018 helped border communities.**
    Answer:
    (i) It eased cross-border movement for people living near the border.
    (ii) It helped boost trade.
    (iii) It supported connectivity and people-to-people ties.
21. **Give three facts about Afghanistan's historical connection with India.**
    Answer:
    (i) Afghanistan once shared a direct land border with India.
    (ii) The Uttarāpatha linked the Ganga plains with Central Asia through Afghanistan.
    (iii) The route carried goods, religious ideas and art between regions.
22. **Name three areas in which India has supported development in Afghanistan.**
    Answer:
    (i) India has supported education in Afghanistan.
    (ii) India has supported healthcare.
    (iii) India has helped with infrastructure, including the Afghan Parliament building and the Zaranj–Delaram highway.
23. **State three facts about Buddhism in Sri Lanka from the chapter.**
    Answer:
    (i) Buddhism was introduced to Sri Lanka in the 3rd century BCE.
    (ii) Mahendra and Sanghamitrā brought Buddhist teachings there.
    (iii) They were the son and daughter of Emperor Aśhoka.
24. **Give three facts about the Maldives and its connection with India.**
    Answer:
    (i) The Maldives consists of more than 1,100 islets.
    (ii) It is about 130 km from the Indian island of Minicoy.
    (iii) India and the Maldives share cultural links shaped by maritime trade.
25. **Name three examples of Indian cultural influence in the Maldives.**
    Answer:
    (i) South Indian influences are found in Maldivian cuisine.
    (ii) They are also reflected in language and boat-building techniques.
    (iii) The Boduberu dance echoes Tamil folk rhythms.
26. **State three facts about India–Thailand connections.**
    Answer:
    (i) Indian traders and scholars sailed to Thailand as early as the 3rd century BCE.
    (ii) They exchanged goods such as spices and textiles.
    (iii) They also carried religious and cultural ideas.
27. **Give three examples of Indian cultural influence in Thailand.**
    Answer:
    (i) The name Dvāravatī refers to an Indian cultural influence.

(ii) The Ayutthayā Kingdom was named after Ayodhyā.
(iii) Hindu stories and deities appear in Thai ceremonies, dance and literature.

28. **State three areas of cooperation between India and Malaysia.**
Answer:
(i) The countries cooperate in palm oil and energy.
(ii) They work together in infrastructure and information technology.
(iii) They are strategic partners in regional security and maritime stability.
29. **Give three facts about Singapore's connections with India.**
Answer:
(i) Tamil is one of Singapore's official languages.
(ii) About 9 per cent of Singapore's residents are of Indian origin.
(iii) Many people of Indian origin live in an area called Little India.
30. **State three facts about India–Indonesia connections.**
Answer:
(i) India and Indonesia have a long history of maritime trade and cultural exchange.
(ii) They cooperate on maritime security and disaster relief.
(iii) Both countries work to protect sea lanes and address shared concerns.
31. **Name three technologies or systems used in the Indian Ocean tsunami warning network.**
Answer:
(i) The network uses sensors.
(ii) It uses satellites.
(iii) It uses communication links to help issue warnings.
32. **State three areas of cooperation between India and Iran.**
Answer:
(i) India and Iran cooperate in trade and energy.
(ii) They cooperate in transport.
(iii) India is helping develop Iran's Chabahar Port.
33. **Give three facts about India's historical relationship with Oman.**
Answer:
(i) Contact between the regions dates back over 5,000 years.
(ii) The relationship includes maritime trade.
(iii) Harappan traders are thought to have brought copper ingots from Oman.
34. **State three modern areas of cooperation between India and Oman.**
Answer:
(i) Oman is an important partner in India's engagement with the Gulf region.
(ii) The countries conduct joint military exercises.
(iii) They work together on Indian Ocean maritime security.
35. **Name three ancient routes that connected India with other regions.**
Answer:
(i) The Uttarāpatha connected India with Central Asia.
(ii) The Dakṣiṇāpatha was another important route.
(iii) The Silk Route and spice routes also carried goods and ideas.

2.10. Three-mark questions with Answers of HOTS Type: (35 Questions)

Three-Mark Descriptive Questions: HOTS Type:

1. **How does India's location make it a link between different regions?**
Answer:
(i) India's peninsula extends into the Indian Ocean.

(ii) Its sea routes connect Southeast Asia, West Asia and Africa.
(iii) Its ports support trade and regional cooperation.

2. **Why should India's neighbourhood include countries across the sea as well as those sharing land borders?**
   Answer:
   (i) The sea connects India to countries without a shared land boundary.
   (ii) Maritime routes have supported trade and cultural exchange for centuries.
   (iii) These links also support cooperation on security and disasters.
3. **How did Buddhism contribute to India's historical relationship with China?**
   Answer:
   (i) Buddhist teachings travelled from India to China.
   (ii) Chinese monks travelled to Indian centres of learning.
   (iii) Indian monks helped carry Buddhist ideas to China.
4. **How can dialogue and trade help India and China manage a relationship that includes both cooperation and tension?**
   Answer:
   (i) Trade gives the countries shared economic interests.
   (ii) Dialogue gives them a way to discuss disagreements.
   (iii) Border mechanisms can help them work towards resolving disputes.
5. **How does the Kartarpur Corridor help maintain connections across the India–Pakistan border?**
   Answer:
   (i) It allows Indian pilgrims to visit Gurdwara Darbar Sahib in Pakistan.
   (ii) Pilgrims can use a permit instead of a visa.
   (iii) It supports religious ties rooted in a shared past.
6. **Why is India–Pakistan history not limited to conflict?**
   Answer:
   (i) The countries have experienced wars and continuing tensions.
   (ii) They also share languages, food, music and festivals.
   (iii) Pilgrimage routes connect people with important religious sites.
7. **How do shared rivers make cooperation important for India and Bangladesh?**
   Answer:
   (i) The rivers support agriculture and fisheries in both countries.
   (ii) They are also used for transportation.
   (iii) The livelihoods of millions depend on these river systems.
8. **Why does protecting the Sundarbans require cooperation between India and Bangladesh?**
   Answer:
   (i) The forest lies in both countries.
   (ii) It supports Bengal tigers and many other species.
   (iii) Its mangroves also help protect the region from cyclones.
9. **How does the India–Nepal open border shape daily life in border communities?**
   Answer:
   (i) People can cross without passports or visas.
   (ii) They can travel for work, education, healthcare and family visits.
   (iii) Cross-border markets and trade support local communities.
10. **What features make India–Nepal relations a strong example of neighbourhood cooperation?**
    Answer:
    (i) The countries share cultural and spiritual traditions.

(ii) Their citizens interact through an open border.
(iii) They maintain close trade and diplomatic relations.

11. **How does hydropower cooperation benefit both India and Bhutan?**
Answer:
(i) Hydroelectric power projects support Bhutan's economic growth.
(ii) They provide renewable energy to India.
(iii) The projects strengthen economic cooperation between the neighbours.
12. **How do pilgrimage and shared Buddhist heritage connect India and Bhutan?**
Answer:
(i) Bhutanese pilgrims visit Buddhist sites in India.
(ii) The countries share a Buddhist heritage.
(iii) These links strengthen their spiritual and cultural relationship.
13. **Why is Myanmar important to India's regional connectivity?**
Answer:
(i) Myanmar shares a land border with India.
(ii) The two countries also share a maritime boundary in the Bay of Bengal.
(iii) Routes through Myanmar can connect India with Southeast Asia.
14. **How could the India–Myanmar–Thailand Trilateral Highway strengthen regional ties?**
Answer:
(i) It connects India's Manipur through Myanmar to Thailand.
(ii) It can make overland travel easier.
(iii) Better connectivity can support trade and cooperation.
15. **What does India's help in restoring the Ananda temple in Myanmar show?**
Answer:
(i) Neighbouring countries can work together to protect heritage.
(ii) Shared religious history can encourage cultural cooperation.
(iii) Such cooperation can strengthen people-to-people connections.
16. **How did the Uttarāpatha connect India with regions beyond its borders?**
Answer:
(i) It linked the Ganga plains with Central Asia through Afghanistan.
(ii) It carried goods and people between regions.
(iii) It also helped ideas and religious traditions travel.
17. **Why are the Buddhas of Bamiyan important to the history of India–Afghanistan connections?**
Answer:
(i) They were symbols of Mahāyāna Buddhism in Afghanistan.
(ii) They reflected the reach of Buddhist traditions from India.
(iii) Their history shows the cultural links between the regions.
18. **How can India's development support in Afghanistan strengthen relations between the countries?**
Answer:
(i) Support for education and healthcare addresses people's needs.
(ii) Infrastructure projects can improve transport and connectivity.
(iii) These efforts build on the countries' long-standing ties.
19. **How do cultural links and modern cooperation both shape India–Sri Lanka relations?**
Answer:
(i) Buddhism and Hindu traditions connect the countries historically.

(ii) People-to-people exchanges continue those cultural ties.
(iii) Economic cooperation and regional partnerships support present-day relations.

20. **What does the movement of Tamil families from Sri Lanka to India during the civil war illustrate?**
Answer:
(i) Conflict can force people to leave their homes.
(ii) People may seek safety in a neighbouring country.
(iii) Shared cultural ties can shape cross-border connections.
21. **How does India's emergency assistance to the Maldives show the value of regional cooperation?**
Answer:
(i) India provided help during events such as the tsunami and the Malé water crisis.
(ii) Quick assistance can help a neighbouring country respond to emergencies.
(iii) Such support can build trust between countries.
22. **Why is climate change a serious concern for the Maldives, and how can cooperation help?**
Answer:
(i) Rising sea levels threaten the Maldives' low-lying islands.
(ii) The Maldives and India can cooperate on sustainable development.
(iii) The International Solar Alliance supports collaboration on solar energy.
23. **How do cultural influences from South India appear in the Maldives?**
Answer:
(i) South Indian influences can be seen in Maldivian cuisine.
(ii) They are reflected in language and boat-building traditions.
(iii) The Boduberu dance echoes Tamil folk rhythms.
24. **What do the names Dvāravatī and Ayutthayā reveal about India–Thailand cultural connections?**
Answer:
(i) Dvāravatī was linked to the Sanskrit word for "that which has gates."
(ii) Ayutthayā was named after the Indian city of Ayodhyā.
(iii) These names show Indian cultural influence in Thailand.
25. **How did ancient maritime trade connect India and Thailand?**
Answer:
(i) Indian traders and scholars travelled to Thailand by sea.
(ii) They exchanged goods such as spices and textiles.
(iii) They also carried religious and cultural ideas.
26. **How did migration contribute to India–Malaysia connections?**
Answer:
(i) Many Indian workers, mainly from South India, migrated to Malaysia.
(ii) They helped form a Malaysian Indian community.
(iii) The community contributes to continuing cultural and people-to-people links.
27. **What does Tamil's status as an official language in Singapore suggest about its connections with India?**
Answer:
(i) It reflects connections with South India.
(ii) It shows the continuing presence of Indian cultural influences.
(iii) It is one sign of Singapore's diverse population.
28. **Why is maritime cooperation important to India and Indonesia?**
Answer:
(i) Both countries have long coastlines and depend on sea routes.

(ii) They share concerns about piracy and maritime security.
(iii) Cooperation can also address climate change and disaster relief.

29. **What did the 2004 tsunami show about the need for regional warning systems?**
Answer:
(i) A tsunami can affect the coasts of many countries.
(ii) Sensors, satellites and communication links can help detect danger.
(iii) Early warnings can help protect lives across the region.
30. **How can Chabahar Port support India's links with countries beyond Iran?**
Answer:
(i) The port provides India with a transport connection through Iran.
(ii) It gives India better access to Afghanistan.
(iii) It also improves access to Central Asia.
31. **What do the historical links between India and Oman tell us about ancient trade?**
Answer:
(i) Contact between the regions goes back thousands of years.
(ii) Harappan traders are thought to have brought copper ingots from Oman.
(iii) Sea routes helped people and goods move between them.
32. **How do India and Oman combine defence cooperation with maritime partnership?**
Answer:
(i) They conduct joint military exercises.
(ii) Oman is an important defence partner for India in the Gulf.
(iii) The countries also work together on Indian Ocean maritime security.
33. **How can present-day connectivity projects build on ancient routes?**
Answer:
(i) Ancient routes connected India with regions such as Central and Southeast Asia.
(ii) Modern projects can revive some of these connections.
(iii) Improved routes can support trade and regional cooperation.
34. **Why does the chapter describe India's neighbourhood as more than a matter of borders?**
Answer:
(i) Countries are connected through shared seas and rivers.
(ii) Cultural, spiritual and historical ties cross borders.
(iii) Trade and cooperation link people across the region.
35. **How can countries turn shared challenges into opportunities for cooperation?**
Answer:
(i) They can coordinate responses to disasters and climate-related risks.
(ii) They can share warning systems and regional infrastructure.
(iii) Working together can support stability and shared progress.

2.11 Five-mark questions with Answers of LOTS Type: (20 Questions)

Five-Mark Descriptive Questions: LOTS Type:

1. **Describe India's land and maritime neighbourhood.**
Answer:
(i) India shares land borders with countries such as Pakistan, China, Nepal, Bhutan, Bangladesh and Myanmar.
(ii) Sri Lanka and the Maldives are nearby maritime neighbours.
(iii) Iran and Oman are part of India's wider maritime neighbourhood.

(iv) Thailand, Malaysia, Singapore and Indonesia are also connected to India by sea.
(v) Land and sea routes have linked India with neighbouring regions for centuries.

2. **Describe the importance of the Indian Ocean to India.**
   Answer:
   (i) The Indian Ocean is the world's third-largest ocean.
   (ii) It is an important route for container ships, bulk cargo and oil.
   (iii) It connects countries across South Asia, Southeast Asia, West Asia and Africa.
   (iv) India's peninsular shape extends into the ocean.
   (v) India's ports support trade, and its central position helps with regional relief efforts.
3. **Describe the historical and present-day relationship between India and China.**
   Answer:
   (i) India and China share a long border across the Himalayan region.
   (ii) Buddhism travelled from India to China around the 1st century CE.
   (iii) Chinese monks such as Faxian and Xuanzang visited Indian centres of learning.
   (iv) The two countries continue to trade in goods and industrial products.
   (v) They also work through dialogue and border mechanisms to address tensions.
4. **Describe the relationship between India and Pakistan.**
   Answer:
   (i) Pakistan was formed after the Partition of India in 1947.
   (ii) The countries have experienced wars and conflicts, including the Kargil War in 1999.
   (iii) The border passes through Gujarat, Rajasthan, Punjab, Jammu and Kashmir, and Ladakh.
   (iv) Languages, cuisines, music and festivals reflect cultural connections.
   (v) The Kartarpur Corridor allows Indian pilgrims to visit Gurdwara Darbar Sahib in Pakistan.
5. **Describe India's relationship with Bangladesh.**
   Answer:
   (i) Bangladesh became an independent country in 1971.
   (ii) Bangla is shared by Bangladesh and the Indian state of West Bengal.
   (iii) India and Bangladesh share rivers originating from the Ganga and the Brahmaputra.
   (iv) Their rivers support agriculture, fisheries, transport and livelihoods.
   (v) The two countries coordinate the protection of the Sundarbans.
6. **Describe the importance of the Sundarbans to India and Bangladesh.**
   Answer:
   (i) The Sundarbans are a UNESCO World Heritage Site.
   (ii) About two-thirds of the forest lies in Bangladesh and the rest in India.
   (iii) The forest is home to the Bengal tiger and many other species.
   (iv) Its mangroves support biodiversity.
   (v) The forest also acts as a barrier against cyclones.
7. **Describe India–Nepal relations.**
   Answer:
   (i) India and Nepal share a long and open border.
   (ii) The 1950 Treaty of Peace and Friendship supports free movement between them.
   (iii) People cross the border for work, education, healthcare and family visits.
   (iv) Citizens of both countries celebrate festivals such as Daśhain, Tihar and Holi.
   (v) India is Nepal's largest trading partner.

8. **Describe the main features of trade between India and Nepal.**
   Answer:
   (i) India supplies petroleum to Nepal.
   (ii) India also supplies medicines and food items.
   (iii) India exports manufactured products to Nepal.
   (iv) Nepal exports agricultural produce to India.
   (v) Nepal also exports handicrafts and garments.
9. **Describe India's relationship with Bhutan.**
   Answer:
   (i) Bhutan is a landlocked Himalayan kingdom between India and China.
   (ii) Bhutan is also called Drukyul, or the "Land of the Thunder Dragon."
   (iii) India and Bhutan have strong economic and cultural links.
   (iv) They share a Buddhist heritage and spiritual connections.
   (v) Hydroelectric power is an important area of their cooperation.
10. **Describe the importance of Buddhism in India's links with neighbouring countries.**
    Answer:
    (i) Buddhism travelled from India to China.
    (ii) Buddhist traditions connect India with Bhutan.
    (iii) Buddhism was introduced to Sri Lanka by Mahendra and Sanghamitrā.
    (iv) Theravāda Buddhism is followed in Sri Lanka, Thailand and Myanmar.
    (v) Buddhist sites and monuments in several countries reflect these historical links.
11. **Describe India's relationship with Myanmar.**
    Answer:
    (i) Myanmar was earlier known as Burma.
    (ii) India and Myanmar share a land border and a maritime boundary in the Bay of Bengal.
    (iii) Arunachal Pradesh, Nagaland, Manipur and Mizoram border Myanmar.
    (iv) The 2018 Land Border Crossing Agreement eased movement for border communities.
    (v) India has helped restore the Ananda temple in Bagan.
12. **Describe the importance of Afghanistan in India's historical connections.**
    Answer:
    (i) Afghanistan once shared a direct land border with India.
    (ii) The Uttarāpatha connected the Ganga plains with Central Asia through Afghanistan.
    (iii) The route carried goods, people and ideas.
    (iv) Afghanistan was once a centre of Buddhist and Hindu culture.
    (v) The Buddhas of Bamiyan reflected the reach of Mahāyāna Buddhism in the region.
13. **Describe India's assistance to Afghanistan mentioned in the chapter.**
    Answer:
    (i) India has supported education in Afghanistan.
    (ii) India has supported healthcare.
    (iii) India helped with infrastructure development.
    (iv) India contributed to the construction of the Afghan Parliament building.
    (v) India helped build the Zaranj–Delaram highway.
14. **Describe the relationship between India and Sri Lanka.**
    Answer:
    (i) India and Sri Lanka share maritime connections across nearby waters.

(ii) Buddhism was introduced to Sri Lanka in the 3rd century BCE.
(iii) Hindu traditions and the Indian epics also travelled there.
(iv) Tamil communities in Sri Lanka have cultural links with India.
(v) The countries cooperate in economic, strategic and regional areas.

15. **Describe India's relationship with the Maldives.**
Answer:
(i) The Maldives consists of more than 1,100 islets.
(ii) It is about 130 km from Minicoy in Lakshadweep.
(iii) The countries share cultural links shaped by maritime trade.
(iv) India has helped the Maldives during emergencies, including the 2004 tsunami and the 2014 water crisis.
(v) Both countries cooperate on areas such as defence, trade and disaster relief.
16. **Describe India's cultural connections with Thailand.**
Answer:
(i) Indian traders and scholars travelled to Thailand from ancient times.
(ii) They exchanged goods such as spices and textiles.
(iii) The name Dvāravatī is linked to a Sanskrit word.
(iv) The Ayutthayā Kingdom was named after Ayodhyā.
(v) Indian religious stories appear in Thai ceremonies, dance and literature.
17. **Describe India's relationship with Malaysia.**
Answer:
(i) India and Malaysia have historical links dating back over two millennia.
(ii) Sea routes across the Bay of Bengal connected the Malay Peninsula with India.
(iii) Indian workers, mainly from South India, migrated to Malaysia in the 19th and 20th centuries.
(iv) Around 9 per cent of Malaysia's population is of Indian origin.
(v) The countries cooperate in trade, infrastructure, technology and regional security.
18. **Describe India's connections with Singapore.**
Answer:
(i) Singapore became a separate nation in 1965.
(ii) Tamil is one of its four official languages.
(iii) About 9 per cent of Singapore's residents are of Indian origin.
(iv) Many people of Indian origin live in an area called Little India.
(v) Singapore is an important investor in India, especially in infrastructure and technology.
19. **Describe India's relationship with Indonesia.**
Answer:
(i) India and Indonesia are maritime neighbours across the Bay of Bengal and the Andaman Sea.
(ii) Their trade and cultural exchange date back more than 2,000 years.
(iii) Indian traditions influenced Indonesian art, religion and architecture.
(iv) The countries cooperate on maritime security, defence and disaster relief.
(v) Both countries share concerns about piracy, climate change and protecting sea lanes.
20. **Describe India's relationships with Iran and Oman.**
Answer:
(i) India and Iran have exchanged goods and ideas since ancient times.
(ii) India is helping develop Iran's Chabahar Port.
(iii) India and Oman have had contact for over 5,000 years.

(iv) Harappan traders are thought to have brought copper ingots from Oman.
(v) India and Oman cooperate in defence and Indian Ocean maritime security.

2.12 Five-mark questions with Answers of HOTS Type: (20 Questions)

Five-Mark Descriptive Questions: HOTS Type:

1. **How does India's geography help it build relationships with countries across the region?**
   Answer:
   (i) India's long land borders connect it directly with several neighbouring countries.
   (ii) Its peninsular shape extends into the Indian Ocean.
   (iii) Sea routes connect India with Southeast Asia, West Asia and Africa.
   (iv) India's ports support trade with these regions.
   (v) Its central location also helps India provide humanitarian aid and disaster relief.
2. **Explain why India's neighbourhood includes more than countries sharing a land border.**
   Answer:
   (i) India is surrounded by water on three sides.
   (ii) Countries such as Sri Lanka and the Maldives are connected to India across the sea.
   (iii) Maritime routes have supported trade and cultural exchange for centuries.
   (iv) Countries farther across the Indian Ocean are also connected to India by sea.
   (v) These links make the neighbourhood important for regional cooperation.
3. **How can a shared cultural past support relations between countries that also have political tensions?**
   Answer:
   (i) Shared languages, food, music and festivals help people recognise common traditions.
   (ii) Religious sites can bring people together through pilgrimage.
   (iii) The Kartarpur Corridor enables Indian pilgrims to visit a Sikh shrine in Pakistan.
   (iv) Such connections can continue even when political relations are difficult.
   (v) Cultural links provide opportunities for dialogue and people-to-people contact.
4. **India and China have both deep cultural links and border tensions. Explain this complex relationship.**
   Answer:
   (i) Buddhism travelled from India to China and created a long cultural connection.
   (ii) Chinese monks travelled to Indian centres of learning.
   (iii) Trade between the countries continues today.
   (iv) Disagreements have also arisen over their shared border.
   (v) Trade, dialogue and border mechanisms are among the ways they address their relationship.
5. **Why is cooperation important in managing shared rivers and ecosystems? Use India and Bangladesh as an example.**
   Answer:
   (i) India and Bangladesh share river systems originating from the Ganga and Brahmaputra.
   (ii) These rivers support farming, fishing, transportation and livelihoods.
   (iii) The Sundarbans extend across both countries.
   (iv) Their shared forest provides habitat for the Bengal tiger and other species.

(v) Coordinated protection can help conserve the forest and its role in reducing cyclone impacts.

6. **How does the India–Nepal open border affect social and economic life?**
   Answer:
   (i) Citizens can cross without passports or visas.
   (ii) People can travel for work, education and healthcare.
   (iii) Families on both sides can maintain close connections.
   (iv) Cross-border markets support trade and local livelihoods.
   (v) The arrangement reflects a relationship shaped by shared history, faith and geography.
7. **Explain how India and Bhutan's cooperation benefits both countries.**
   Answer:
   (i) The countries share economic and cultural links.
   (ii) Rivers originating in Bhutan flow into India.
   (iii) These rivers support agriculture and hydroelectric power.
   (iv) Hydroelectric projects contribute to Bhutan's economic growth.
   (v) The projects also supply renewable energy to India.
8. **How can transport links strengthen India's relations with Myanmar and Thailand?**
   Answer:
   (i) India shares a land border with Myanmar.
   (ii) Myanmar provides a route between India and Southeast Asia.
   (iii) The Trilateral Highway runs from Manipur through Myanmar to Thailand.
   (iv) The highway can improve overland connectivity.
   (v) Better connectivity can support trade and regional cooperation.
9. **How do ancient routes and modern development projects both connect India with Afghanistan?**
   Answer:
   (i) The Uttarāpatha once linked the Ganga plains with Central Asia through Afghanistan.
   (ii) The route carried goods, people and ideas.
   (iii) Afghanistan was historically a centre of Buddhist and Hindu culture.
   (iv) India has supported infrastructure projects such as the Zaranj–Delaram highway.
   (v) Historical and modern links both contribute to regional connectivity.
10. **How can shared heritage and present-day cooperation shape India–Sri Lanka relations?**
    Answer:
    (i) Buddhism travelled to Sri Lanka from India in the 3rd century BCE.
    (ii) Hindu traditions and stories from Indian epics also travelled there.
    (iii) People-to-people exchanges continue these cultural connections.
    (iv) The countries cooperate economically and strategically.
    (v) Their shared goals include peace and development in South Asia.
11. **Why does climate change make cooperation important for India and the Maldives?**
    Answer:
    (i) The Maldives consists of many low-lying islands.
    (ii) Rising sea levels threaten some of these islands.
    (iii) The Maldives is vulnerable to climate-related changes.
    (iv) India and the Maldives cooperate in areas such as sustainability and solar energy.
    (v) Working together can support long-term resilience.

12. **What does India's help to the Maldives during emergencies show about regional relationships?**
Answer:
(i) Neighbouring countries can provide immediate support during a crisis.
(ii) India helped the Maldives during the 2004 tsunami.
(iii) India also assisted during the 2014 water crisis in Malé.
(iv) Such help can strengthen trust between countries.
(v) Disaster relief is an important part of regional cooperation.
13. **How did cultural exchange shape India–Thailand relations over time?**
Answer:
(i) Indian traders and scholars sailed to Thailand from ancient times.
(ii) They carried goods such as spices and textiles.
(iii) They also brought religious and cultural ideas.
(iv) Thai kingdom names such as Dvāravatī and Ayutthayā reflect Indian influences.
(v) Indian stories and deities remain present in Thai ceremonies, dance and literature.
14. **Explain how migration has contributed to India–Malaysia relations.**
Answer:
(i) Many workers from India migrated to Malaysia in the 19th and 20th centuries.
(ii) Many of these workers came from South India.
(iii) They contributed to work on rubber plantations.
(iv) A Malaysian Indian community remains prominent today.
(v) This community supports continuing cultural and people-to-people connections.
15. **What can Singapore's Indian community and official languages tell us about its links with India?**
Answer:
(i) Tamil is one of Singapore's four official languages.
(ii) About 9 per cent of Singapore's residents are of Indian origin.
(iii) Many live in an area known as Little India.
(iv) These details reflect historical and cultural connections with India.
(v) Present-day links also include investment, education and tourism.
16. **Why is India–Indonesia cooperation important for the Indian Ocean region?**
Answer:
(i) India and Indonesia are maritime neighbours.
(ii) Both countries depend on safe sea routes.
(iii) They share concerns such as piracy and climate change.
(iv) They cooperate on maritime security, defence and disaster relief.
(v) Their partnership can support stability and sustainable development in the region.
17. **How did the 2004 tsunami encourage regional cooperation?**
Answer:
(i) The tsunami affected many countries around the Indian Ocean.
(ii) It showed the need for better early warning systems.
(iii) India joined Indonesia, Sri Lanka, Thailand and other countries in setting up a warning network.
(iv) The network uses sensors, satellites and communication links.
(v) Timely warnings can help protect lives across the region.
18. **How can Chabahar Port strengthen India's regional connectivity?**
Answer:
(i) Chabahar Port is located in Iran.
(ii) India is helping to develop the port.
(iii) The port offers India a transport connection through Iran.

(iv) It provides better access to Afghanistan.
(v) It also improves access to Central Asia.

19. **How do India's historical and present-day ties with Oman complement each other?**
Answer:
(i) Contact between India and Oman dates back over 5,000 years.
(ii) Harappan traders are thought to have brought copper from Oman.
(iii) Indian communities have lived in Oman for generations.
(iv) The countries cooperate through trade and defence partnerships.
(v) They also work together on Indian Ocean maritime security.
20. **How does the chapter show that shared challenges can become opportunities for cooperation?**
Answer:
(i) India and Bangladesh coordinate efforts to protect the Sundarbans.
(ii) India and Indian Ocean countries developed a tsunami warning network.
(iii) India and Indonesia cooperate on disaster relief and maritime security.
(iv) India and Bhutan cooperate on rivers and hydroelectric power.
(v) These examples show how working together can support shared safety and progress.

2.13 Five-mark questions with Answers of Applied Type: (20 Questions)

Five-Mark Descriptive Questions: Applied Type:

1. **A cyclone is approaching the Sundarbans, which are shared by India and Bangladesh. Suggest five actions the two countries could take to protect people and wildlife.**
Answer:
(i) Share cyclone warnings with communities on both sides of the border.
(ii) Coordinate evacuation plans for people in at-risk areas.
(iii) Protect and restore mangrove forests that help reduce cyclone impacts.
(iv) Share information about damage to wildlife habitats.
(v) Coordinate recovery work because the forest and its ecosystems cross the border.
2. **A student is preparing a map showing India's neighbours. How should the student distinguish land neighbours from maritime neighbours?**
Answer:
(i) Mark countries sharing a land boundary with India as land neighbours.
(ii) Label countries connected to India across the sea as maritime neighbours.
(iii) Show the Arabian Sea and Bay of Bengal on the map.
(iv) Include Sri Lanka and the Maldives as nearby maritime neighbours.
(v) Add other maritime neighbours, such as Oman, Thailand, Malaysia, Singapore and Indonesia.
3. **An Indian pilgrim wants to visit Gurdwara Darbar Sahib in Kartarpur. What should the pilgrim know about the corridor?**
Answer:
(i) The Kartarpur Corridor connects India with the pilgrimage site in Pakistan.
(ii) The pilgrim needs a permit to use the corridor.
(iii) A visa is not required for the corridor visit.
(iv) The gurdwara is associated with Guru Nānak Dev.
(v) The corridor supports a religious connection across the border.

4. **Families live on both sides of the India–Nepal border and need to travel regularly. Explain how the open-border arrangement can help them.**
   Answer:
   (i) They can cross without passports or visas.
   (ii) They can maintain family connections across the border.
   (iii) They can travel for work and education.
   (iv) They can access healthcare and trade in local markets.
   (v) The countries work together to keep the open border safe.
5. **A village depends on a river that flows from Bhutan into India. Give five reasons why the two countries should cooperate in managing the river.**
   Answer:
   (i) The river supports agriculture in communities along its course.
   (ii) Its water can be used for hydroelectric power.
   (iii) Hydropower cooperation can support Bhutan's economy.
   (iv) The projects can provide renewable energy to India.
   (v) Cooperation helps both countries make use of shared water resources.
6. **A school is preparing an exhibition about India and Myanmar. Suggest five points to include about their connections.**
   Answer:
   (i) India and Myanmar share a land border.
   (ii) They also share a maritime boundary in the Bay of Bengal.
   (iii) Four northeastern Indian states border Myanmar.
   (iv) The 2018 Land Border Crossing Agreement eased movement for people in border areas.
   (v) The India–Myanmar–Thailand Highway supports regional connectivity.
7. **A business group wants to improve trade between India, Myanmar and Thailand. Which transport project from the chapter could it study, and how could it help?**
   Answer:
   (i) The group could study the India–Myanmar–Thailand Trilateral Highway.
   (ii) It runs from Manipur through Myanmar and into Thailand.
   (iii) It can improve overland travel between the countries.
   (iv) Better connectivity can help goods move between markets.
   (v) The route can support regional cooperation as well as trade.
8. **A community in Afghanistan needs support for education, healthcare and transport. Name three kinds of Indian support from the chapter and two ways these can help.**
   Answer:
   (i) India has supported education in Afghanistan.
   (ii) India has supported healthcare.
   (iii) India has contributed to infrastructure, including the Zaranj–Delaram highway.
   (iv) These projects can help meet community needs.
   (v) Transport links can improve connectivity.
9. **A group of students is creating a display about the Uttarāpatha. Suggest five details that explain why this route was important.**
   Answer:
   (i) The route connected the Ganga plains with Central Asia.
   (ii) It passed through Afghanistan.
   (iii) It linked places such as Gandhāra and Takṣhaśhilā with other Indian centres.

(iv) Goods and people travelled along it.
(v) Religious ideas, art and philosophy also moved along the route.

10. **A coastal community in the Maldives is worried about rising sea levels. Using examples from the chapter, suggest five ways regional links could help.**
Answer:
(i) The Maldives can work with neighbours on sustainability.
(ii) It can share knowledge through initiatives such as the International Solar Alliance.
(iii) India can support the Maldives during emergencies.
(iv) The two countries can continue cooperation in disaster relief.
(v) Regional cooperation can help address challenges affecting island communities.
11. **A tsunami warning is needed for several countries around the Indian Ocean. Describe five features of the regional warning effort from the chapter.**
Answer:
(i) The 2004 tsunami showed the need for better warning systems.
(ii) India joined Indonesia, Sri Lanka, Thailand and other countries in the effort.
(iii) The network uses sensors to detect events.
(iv) Satellites and communication links help share warning information.
(v) India's Tsunami Early Warning Centre is in Hyderabad.
12. **A museum is preparing a display about India's cultural influence in Thailand. Suggest five examples from the chapter.**
Answer:
(i) Indian traders and scholars travelled to Thailand from ancient times.
(ii) The name Dvāravatī is linked to a Sanskrit word.
(iii) The Ayutthayā Kingdom was named after Ayodhyā.
(iv) Thai royal ceremonies include Hindu deities and stories.
(v) Indian epics have influenced Thai dance and literature.
13. **A teacher asks students to explain how migration can shape relationships between countries. Use India and Malaysia as an example.**
Answer:
(i) Many workers from India migrated to Malaysia in the 19th and 20th centuries.
(ii) Many of them came from South India.
(iii) Some worked on rubber plantations.
(iv) Their descendants form a prominent Malaysian Indian community.
(v) This community helps maintain cultural and people-to-people links.
14. **A visitor to Singapore wants to learn about the city's connections with India. Suggest five details from the chapter.**
Answer:
(i) Tamil is one of Singapore's official languages.
(ii) About 9 per cent of Singapore's residents are of Indian origin.
(iii) Many live in an area called Little India.
(iv) Singapore is a preferred destination for many Indian students.
(v) Singaporean investment in India includes infrastructure and technology.
15. **India and Indonesia are planning a joint activity to protect sea routes. Suggest five topics for their cooperation based on the chapter.**
Answer:
(i) They can work together on maritime security.
(ii) They can address piracy.
(iii) They can cooperate on protecting sea lanes.
(iv) They can share responses to climate-related concerns.
(v) They can coordinate disaster relief.

16. **A student is comparing ancient and modern connections between India and Iran. Give five points for the comparison.**
    Answer:
    (i) Ancient trade and cultural exchanges connected India with the Iranian plateau.
    (ii) The Uttarāpatha linked regions through present-day Pakistan and Afghanistan.
    (iii) Persian was used as a court language by Mughal and other rulers in India.
    (iv) Today, India and Iran cooperate in trade, energy and transport.
    (v) India is helping develop Chabahar Port to improve access to Afghanistan and Central Asia.
17. **A travel group wants to organise a cultural heritage tour about India and Oman. Suggest five chapter-based connections to include.**
    Answer:
    (i) India and Oman have had contact for over 5,000 years.
    (ii) Their early links included maritime trade.
    (iii) Harappan traders are thought to have brought copper ingots from Oman.
    (iv) A Hindu temple was built in Muscat in the early 20th century.
    (v) The two countries continue to cooperate in maritime security.
18. **A student is asked to explain why good neighbourly relations involve more than trade. Use three examples from the chapter and add two points about their importance.**
    Answer:
    (i) India and Nepal share an open border and cultural traditions.
    (ii) India and Bangladesh coordinate protection of the Sundarbans.
    (iii) India and the Maldives cooperate in disaster relief.
    (iv) These examples show that neighbours also work together on people's needs and shared environments.
    (v) Such cooperation can support regional trust and stability.
19. **A class is designing a map to show how ideas and goods travelled between India and its neighbours. Suggest five kinds of routes or connections to include.**
    Answer:
    (i) Show the Uttarāpatha linking the Ganga plains with Central Asia.
    (ii) Show the Silk Route connecting India with regions to the northwest.
    (iii) Mark maritime routes across the Indian Ocean.
    (iv) Include spice routes linking India with other regions.
    (v) Use arrows to show the movement of trade goods, religious ideas and cultural traditions.
20. **A regional meeting is planned to discuss shared challenges among Indian Ocean countries. Suggest five topics from the chapter that the meeting could address.**
    Answer:
    (i) The countries could discuss tsunami early warning systems.
    (ii) They could plan cooperation on disaster relief.
    (iii) They could address climate change and rising sea levels.
    (iv) They could discuss maritime security and piracy.
    (v) They could work together to protect sea routes and support regional trade.

2.14 Multiple Choice Questions with answers for Olympiad type Competitive Exams:

Olympiad-Type Multiple-Choice Questions:

1. **Which statement best explains why Sri Lanka is considered a neighbour of India?**

A. It shares a land border with India.
B. It is connected to India across the sea.
C. It lies north of the Himalayas.
D. It is part of the Indian mainland.
Answer: B. It is connected to India across the sea.

2. **Which group contains only countries identified in the chapter as India's maritime neighbours?**
A. Nepal, Bhutan and Bangladesh
B. Pakistan, China and Afghanistan
C. Oman, Thailand and Indonesia
D. Nepal, Myanmar and Sri Lanka
Answer: C. Oman, Thailand and Indonesia

3. **What makes India's position in the Indian Ocean strategically important?**
A. It separates all Asian countries from Africa.
B. It provides access to sea routes linking several regions.
C. It prevents ships from reaching Southeast Asia.
D. It makes India a landlocked country.
Answer: B. It provides access to sea routes linking several regions.

4. **Which combination correctly identifies the water bodies on either side of India's peninsula?**
A. Arabian Sea to the west and Bay of Bengal to the east
B. Bay of Bengal to the west and Arabian Sea to the east
C. Red Sea to the west and Pacific Ocean to the east
D. Mediterranean Sea to the west and Bay of Bengal to the east
Answer: A. Arabian Sea to the west and Bay of Bengal to the east

5. **Which group of Chinese monks travelled to Indian centres of learning?**
A. Bodhidharma and Dharmakṣhema
B. Faxian and Xuanzang
C. Mahendra and Sanghamitrā
D. Guru Padmasambhava and Faxian
Answer: B. Faxian and Xuanzang

6. **Which religion provided a major historical link between India and China?**
A. Zoroastrianism
B. Buddhism
C. Jainism
D. Sikhism
Answer: B. Buddhism

7. **Which pair lists goods exported by India to China in 2024–2025, according to the chapter?**
A. Iron ore and cotton yarn
B. Mobile phones and computer hardware
C. Petroleum and medicines
D. Palm oil and garments
Answer: A. Iron ore and cotton yarn

8. **Which statement about India–China trade is given in the chapter?**
A. India's exports to China were worth about eight times China's exports to India.
B. China's exports to India were worth about eight times India's exports to China.
C. The two countries had no trade relationship.
D. India exported only agricultural goods to China.

Answer: B. China's exports to India were worth about eight times India's exports to China.

9. **The Kartarpur Corridor is especially important for people visiting which site?**
   A. The Ananda Temple
   B. Gurdwara Darbar Sahib
   C. The Paśhupatinātha Temple
   D. Borobudur Stūpa
   Answer: B. Gurdwara Darbar Sahib
10. **What does the Kartarpur Corridor allow Indian pilgrims to use instead of a visa?**
   A. A permit
   B. A trade pass
   C. A passport from Pakistan
   D. A student card
   Answer: A. A permit
11. **Which Indian state shares the Bangla language with Bangladesh?**
   A. Gujarat
   B. West Bengal
   C. Punjab
   D. Sikkim
   Answer: B. West Bengal
12. **Which river systems connect India and Bangladesh?**
   A. Indus and Narmada
   B. Ganga and Brahmaputra
   C. Godavari and Krishna
   D. Tapi and Mahi
   Answer: B. Ganga and Brahmaputra
13. **Why do India and Bangladesh coordinate the protection of the Sundarbans?**
   A. The forest lies entirely within India.
   B. The forest is shared by the two countries and supports wildlife.
   C. The forest is a major desert region.
   D. The forest contains the Chabahar Port.
   Answer: B. The forest is shared by the two countries and supports wildlife.
14. **Which animal is specifically identified as living in the Sundarbans?**
   A. Bengal tiger
   B. Snow leopard
   C. Asiatic lion
   D. One-horned rhinoceros
   Answer: A. Bengal tiger
15. **What does the India–Nepal open-border policy allow?**
   A. Citizens to cross without a passport or visa
   B. Only tourists to cross by sea
   C. Goods to cross, but not people
   D. Citizens to cross only during festivals
   Answer: A. Citizens to cross without a passport or visa
16. **Which treaty is associated with India–Nepal relations and the open border?**
   A. Treaty of Sugauli
   B. 1950 Treaty of Peace and Friendship
   C. Treaty of Amritsar

D. Treaty of Gandamak
Answer: B. 1950 Treaty of Peace and Friendship

17. **Which group contains festivals celebrated in both India and Nepal?**
A. Daśhain, Tihar and Holi
B. Songkran, Tihar and Eid
C. Onam, Holi and Songkran
D. Diwali, Songkran and Vesak
Answer: A. Daśhain, Tihar and Holi

18. **Which goods does India supply to Nepal?**
A. Petroleum, medicines and food items
B. Copper ingots, palm oil and textiles
C. Mobile phones, oil and spices only
D. Rubber, garments and tea only
Answer: A. Petroleum, medicines and food items

19. **What does the name "Drukyul" refer to?**
A. Land of the Golden Temple
B. Land of the Thunder Dragon
C. Land of the Rising Sun
D. Land of a Thousand Islands
Answer: B. Land of the Thunder Dragon

20. **Which form of power is a major area of India–Bhutan cooperation?**
A. Hydroelectric power
B. Nuclear power
C. Tidal power only
D. Coal-fired power
Answer: A. Hydroelectric power

21. **Which Buddhist school was introduced to Bhutan by Guru Padmasambhava in the 8th century CE?**
A. Theravāda
B. Vajrayāna
C. Zen
D. Mahāyāna
Answer: B. Vajrayāna

22. **Which statement about the India–Myanmar border is correct?**
A. Only Gujarat borders Myanmar.
B. Arunachal Pradesh, Nagaland, Manipur and Mizoram border Myanmar.
C. Myanmar borders only the Indian islands.
D. Myanmar and India have no maritime boundary.
Answer: B. Arunachal Pradesh, Nagaland, Manipur and Mizoram border Myanmar.

23. **Myanmar is described as India's gateway to which region?**
A. Central Europe
B. Southeast Asia
C. South America
D. North Africa
Answer: B. Southeast Asia

24. **Which countries are connected by the Trilateral Highway mentioned in the chapter?**
A. India, Myanmar and Thailand
B. India, Nepal and Bhutan

C. India, Iran and Oman
D. India, Bangladesh and Sri Lanka
Answer: A. India, Myanmar and Thailand

25. **Which ancient route linked the Ganga plains with Central Asia through Afghanistan?**
A. Dakṣiṇāpatha
B. Uttarāpatha
C. Spice Route of Malacca
D. Grand Trunk Road
Answer: B. Uttarāpatha

26. **Where were the Buddhas of Bamiyan located?**
A. Nepal
B. Afghanistan
C. Bhutan
D. Myanmar
Answer: B. Afghanistan

27. **Which highway did India help develop in Afghanistan?**
A. Zaranj–Delaram highway
B. India–Myanmar–Thailand Highway
C. Karakoram Highway
D. Chabahar–Muscat highway
Answer: A. Zaranj–Delaram highway

28. **Who introduced Buddhism to Sri Lanka in the 3rd century BCE, according to the chapter?**
A. Faxian and Xuanzang
B. Mahendra and Sanghamitrā
C. Bodhidharma and Dharmakṣhema
D. Ashoka and Guru Padmasambhava
Answer: B. Mahendra and Sanghamitrā

29. **Which Indian island is about 130 km from the Maldives?**
A. Minicoy
B. Diu
C. Majuli
D. Elephanta
Answer: A. Minicoy

30. **What is the official language of the Maldives?**
A. Tamil
B. Dhivehi
C. Sinhala
D. Malay
Answer: B. Dhivehi

31. **Which example shows India's assistance to the Maldives during a crisis?**
A. Help during the 2014 water crisis in Malé
B. Construction of the Petronas Towers
C. Restoration of the Ananda Temple
D. Development of Chabahar Port
Answer: A. Help during the 2014 water crisis in Malé

32. **The kingdom of Ayutthayā was named after which Indian city?**
A. Varanasi
B. Ayodhyā

C. Pāṭaliputra
D. Takṣhaśhilā
Answer: B. Ayodhyā

33. **Which Indian script influenced a script adopted in the Malay Peninsula around the 4th century CE?**
A. Brāhmī
B. Devanāgarī
C. Grantha
D. Gurmukhi
Answer: A. Brāhmī

34. **Which Singapore neighbourhood is associated with many residents of Indian origin?**
A. Little India
B. Little Tibet
C. Chinatown
D. Kampong Glam
Answer: A. Little India

35. **Indonesia is best described as a/an:**
A. landlocked plateau
B. archipelago
C. desert peninsula
D. single large island
Answer: B. archipelago

36. **Which Buddhist monument in Indonesia is described as the world's largest?**
A. Borobudur Stūpa
B. Sanchi Stūpa
C. Ananda Temple
D. Shwedagon Pagoda
Answer: A. Borobudur Stūpa

37. **What prompted countries around the Indian Ocean to improve tsunami warning systems?**
A. The 2004 tsunami
B. A cyclone in the Sundarbans
C. A drought in Bhutan
D. The opening of Chabahar Port
Answer: A. The 2004 tsunami

38. **Where is India's Tsunami Early Warning Centre located?**
A. New Delhi
B. Hyderabad
C. Mumbai
D. Chennai
Answer: B. Hyderabad

39. **Which Iranian port is India helping to develop?**
A. Muscat Port
B. Chabahar Port
C. Port Klang
D. Port of Colombo
Answer: B. Chabahar Port

40. **How can Chabahar Port help India?**
A. It gives India better access to Afghanistan and Central Asia.

B. It connects India directly to Bhutan by river.
C. It provides a land border with Sri Lanka.
D. It links India to Singapore by highway.
Answer: A. It gives India better access to Afghanistan and Central Asia.

41. **Which ancient text is associated with Zoroastrianism and has parallels with the Ṛigveda?**
A. Avesta
B. Tripiṭaka
C. Torah
D. Zend-Agama
Answer: A. Avesta

42. **What metal did Harappan traders likely bring from Oman?**
A. Copper
B. Gold
C. Tin
D. Silver
Answer: A. Copper

43. **Which statement about India–Oman cooperation is correct?**
A. They cooperate on maritime security and conduct joint military exercises.
B. They share an open land border.
C. They jointly manage the Sundarbans.
D. They are connected by the Trilateral Highway.
Answer: A. They cooperate on maritime security and conduct joint military exercises.

44. **Which set contains only ancient routes mentioned in the chapter?**
A. Uttarāpatha, Dakṣiṇāpatha, Silk Route and spice routes
B. Trilateral Highway, Uttarāpatha, Silk Route and Grand Trunk Road
C. Chabahar route, Dakṣiṇāpatha, Silk Route and Pan-American Highway
D. Spice routes, Trilateral Highway, Silk Route and Route 66
Answer: A. Uttarāpatha, Dakṣiṇāpatha, Silk Route and spice routes

45. **What is the main idea of regionalism as presented in the chapter?**
A. Countries should avoid all contact across borders.
B. Neighbouring countries can work together for peace, stability and shared progress.
C. Only land borders matter in international relations.
D. Trade should replace all cultural exchanges.
Answer: B. Neighbouring countries can work together for peace, stability and shared progress.

2.15 Best Practices Opportunity List from the Chapter: (10 Ideas)

Best Practices for Teaching "India and Her Neighbours":

(1) Begin with a map activity. Ask students to locate India's land neighbours and nearby maritime neighbours before discussing their relationships.

(2) Teach land and maritime neighbourhood together. Have students compare a shared land border with a connection across the sea, using Nepal and Sri Lanka as examples.

(3) Use a map key and colour coding. Mark land borders, sea routes, rivers and regional projects in different colours so students can read the map clearly.

(4) Connect geography with daily life. Discuss how shared rivers support farming, fishing and transport, and how an open border affects people living near India and Nepal.

(5) **Use timelines for historical connections.** Place examples such as the spread of Buddhism, the 1947 Partition and the 2004 tsunami on a classroom timeline.
(6) **Teach through case studies.** Explore one relationship at a time, such as India–Bangladesh and the Sundarbans or India–Maldives and disaster relief.
(7) **Use "cause and effect" questions.** Ask students to explain how a shared river, a sea route or a highway can lead to trade, cooperation or shared challenges.
(8) **Include paired map work.** Have students label neighbouring countries, trace the India–Myanmar–Thailand Highway and mark routes such as the Uttarāpatha.
(9) **Use short role-play activities.** Students can act as representatives discussing a shared concern, such as protecting the Sundarbans or improving tsunami warnings.
(10) **Compare different kinds of connections.** Ask students to sort examples into cultural, economic, historical, environmental or strategic links.
(11) **Practise evidence-based answers.** Encourage students to support explanations with a specific example from the chapter, such as the Kartarpur Corridor or Chabahar Port.
(12) **End with a reflection question.** Ask students to write one-way neighbouring countries can cooperate for shared progress.

These teaching ideas draw on the chapter's maps and examples of India's land and maritime connections.

2.16 Innovations Opportunity List from the Chapter: (10 Ideas)

Innovations in Teaching–Learning: "India and Her Neighbours":

(1) **Interactive neighbourhood map:** Students add clickable labels for land neighbours, maritime neighbours, shared rivers and major sea routes.
(2) **"Plan a regional journey" activity:** Give groups a destination such as Nepal, Bhutan or Singapore. They trace a route and explain whether it uses land or sea connections.
(3) **Digital story map:** Students create a map-based story showing how one route—such as the Uttarāpatha or the India–Myanmar–Thailand Highway—connects places and people.
(4) **Neighbourhood news bulletin:** Groups present a short news segment about a chapter topic, such as Sundarbans conservation, the Kartarpur Corridor or tsunami warnings.
(5) **Mini regional summit:** Assign students different neighbouring countries and ask them to discuss one shared issue, such as disaster response or protecting the Indian Ocean.
(6) **Tsunami warning simulation:** Students role-play how sensors, satellites and communication links could help share a warning across Indian Ocean countries.
(7) **"Culture travels" exhibition:** Students create displays showing how religion, language, stories, food or art link India with countries such as Thailand, Indonesia or Malaysia.
(8) **Trade-route card game:** Students match goods, places and routes from the chapter, then explain how trade also carried people and ideas.
(9) **Shared-river planning challenge:** Teams propose ways India and Bangladesh could protect rivers and support farming, fishing and transport.
(10) **Border and connection mural:** Create a class mural that shows borders alongside the cultural, religious, trade and environmental links that cross them.
(11) **QR-code learning trail:** Place QR codes around the classroom linking to student-made summaries, maps, audio explanations or quizzes about different neighbours.
(12) **"One neighbour, one minute" audio guide:** Each student records a short guide explaining one country's connection with India, supported by a chapter example.

These activities use the chapter's maps and examples of cultural exchange, trade, regional connectivity and shared challenges.

2.17: Practicing Questions/Question Bank:

Question Bank: "India and Her Neighbours":

A. Fill in the Blanks:

1. A country connected to another by a shared sea or ocean is called a _____ **neighbour**.
   Answer: maritime
2. The India–Nepal open-border arrangement is supported by the 1950 Treaty of Peace and _____.
   Answer: Friendship
3. The Sundarbans are shared by India and _____.
   Answer: Bangladesh
4. The ancient route that linked the Ganga plains with Central Asia through Afghanistan was the _____.
   Answer: Uttarāpatha
5. India's Tsunami Early Warning Centre is located in _____.
   Answer: Hyderabad
6. India is helping to develop the _____ **Port** in Iran.
   Answer: Chabahar

B. One-Mark Descriptive Questions:

1. **What is a maritime neighbour?**
   Answer: A maritime neighbour is a country connected to another by a shared sea or ocean.
2. **Name one country that shares a land border with India.**
   Answer: Nepal shares a land border with India.
3. **Which Indian state shares the Bangla language with Bangladesh?**
   Answer: West Bengal shares the Bangla language with Bangladesh.
4. **What is the capital of Nepal?**
   Answer: Kathmandu is the capital of Nepal.
5. **What is Bhutan also called?**
   Answer: Bhutan is also called the Land of the Thunder Dragon.

C. Two-Mark Descriptive Questions:

1. **Name two countries that are India's neighbours across the water.**
   Answer:
   (i) Sri Lanka is a maritime neighbour of India.
   (ii) The Maldives is also a maritime neighbour of India.
2. **How does the India–Nepal open border help people?**
   Answer:
   (i) People can cross without a passport or visa.
   (ii) They can travel for work, education, healthcare and family visits.
3. **Name two goods India supplies to Nepal.**
   Answer:

(i) India supplies petroleum to Nepal.
(ii) India also supplies medicines.

4. **Name two ways the Sundarbans are important.**
   Answer:
   (i) The forest is home to the Bengal tiger and many other species.
   (ii) Its mangroves act as a barrier against cyclones.

D. Three-Mark Descriptive Questions:

1. **Describe three ways India and Bangladesh are connected.**
   Answer:
   (i) They share a common history and cultural links.
   (ii) They share river systems originating from the Ganga and Brahmaputra.
   (iii) They coordinate the protection of the Sundarbans.

2. **Name three ways India and Bhutan cooperate.**
   Answer:
   (i) The countries have economic links.
   (ii) They share Buddhist cultural and spiritual ties.
   (iii) They cooperate in hydroelectric power generation.

3. **How did the 2004 tsunami encourage cooperation among Indian Ocean countries?**
   Answer:
   (i) The tsunami showed the need for better early warning systems.
   (ii) India worked with Indonesia, Sri Lanka, Thailand and other countries on a warning network.
   (iii) The network uses sensors, satellites and communication links to help issue alerts.

E. Five-Mark Descriptive Questions:

1. **Describe the relationship between India and Nepal.**
   Answer:
   (i) India and Nepal share a long and open border.
   (ii) The 1950 Treaty of Peace and Friendship supports free movement between them.
   (iii) People cross the border for work, education, healthcare and family visits.
   (iv) Festivals such as Daśhain, Tihar and Holi are celebrated in both countries.
   (v) India is Nepal's largest trading partner.

2. **Explain how India's maritime position supports its connections with other countries.**
   Answer:
   (i) India's peninsula extends into the Indian Ocean.
   (ii) Sea routes connect India with Southeast Asia, West Asia and Africa.
   (iii) India's ports support imports and exports.
   (iv) Maritime routes have supported trade and cultural exchange for centuries.
   (v) India's central position helps it provide humanitarian aid and disaster relief.

****

7th Standard Social Science Book (Part 2) Chapter 3

Chapter 3: Empires and Kingdoms: 6th to 10th Centuries

3.1 Summary of the Chapter:

Summary: "Empires and Kingdoms: 6th to 10th Centuries":

(1) After the Gupta Empire declined, many regional kingdoms rose across India. No single ruler controlled the whole subcontinent for long.

(2) Harṣhavardhana became a powerful ruler in north India, ruling from Kannauj from 606 CE. He supported scholars and welcomed the Chinese traveller Xuanzang.

(3) After Harṣha's death, the Pālas, Gurjara-Pratīhāras and Rāṣhṭrakūṭas competed for control of Kannauj. This rivalry is known as the Tripartite Struggle.

(4) In the Deccan, the Chālukyas and Rāṣhṭrakūṭas built strong kingdoms. The Pallavas, Pāṇḍyas, Cheras and later the Cholas were important powers in the south.

(5) Kings ruled their core lands directly and often governed distant areas through subordinate rulers called *sāmantas*. These local rulers could grow powerful and sometimes challenge their overlords.

(6) Trade connected villages, towns and distant regions. Merchant guilds became influential, cities grew, and Indian traders exchanged goods and ideas with other countries.

(7) Society became more complex as many *jātis* developed. Despite this, social arrangements could change over time, and different groups took on new roles.

(8) Hinduism, Buddhism and Jainism received support from rulers and communities. The Bhakti tradition, based on personal devotion, began to spread from south India.

(9) The period saw advances in literature, philosophy, mathematics and astronomy. Monastic centres and universities, including those supported by the Pālas, attracted scholars.

(10) Kings and communities built temples, monasteries and sculptures. Pallava rock-cut architecture and the temples of Māmallapuram are notable examples.

(11) Arab forces conquered Sindh in 712 CE, but their political control elsewhere in India remained limited. Trade and scholarship also connected India with the Arab world; Indian mathematics, including the decimal system and zero, travelled through Arabic into Europe.

3.2 Important Formulas:

Important Rules for Answering Qualitative Questions:

Use these guidelines when answering questions about the chapter on kingdoms and empires from the 6th to 10th centuries.

(1) **Keep the time period clear.** The chapter mainly covers the centuries after the Gupta Empire declined, from about 600 CE onward.

(2) **Explain the rise of regional kingdoms.** Describe how the decline of Gupta power was followed by the growth of several strong regional states.

(3) **Avoid saying that one kingdom ruled all of India.** Explain that no single power held lasting control over the whole subcontinent during this period.

(4) **Name the kingdoms and their regions accurately.** For example, the Pālas were based in the east, the Gurjara-Pratīhāras in the west, and the Rāṣhṭrakūṭas in the Deccan.

(5) **Connect rulers with important cities.** Remember Kannauj's importance to Harṣhavardhana and the Tripartite Struggle, as well as Kānchī's association with the Pallavas.

(6) **Explain the Tripartite Struggle clearly.** State that the Pālas, Gurjara-Pratīhāras and Rāṣhṭrakūṭas competed for control of Kannauj.
(7) **Describe how kingdoms were governed.** Mention that rulers directly controlled their core regions and governed some other areas through subordinate rulers called *sāmantas*.
(8) **Support explanations with examples.** Use examples such as Harṣhavardhana's rule, Xuanzang's travels, Pallava temples, or Pāla support for learning centres.
(9) **Show how religion and culture developed.** Include the patronage of Hinduism, Buddhism and Jainism, and the spread of the Bhakti tradition.
(10) **Include social and economic changes.** Explain the growth of *jātis*, trade, merchant guilds, towns and links with overseas markets.
(11) **Describe foreign contact with care.** Note that the Arab conquest of Sindh brought political change, while trade and scholarly exchange also connected India with the Arab world.
(12) **End with the larger historical picture.** Link political rivalry with regional growth, cultural exchange and advances in literature, art, architecture, mathematics and astronomy.

3.3 Fill-Up the Blank LOTS type questions with Answers: (45 Questions)

Fill in the Blanks — LOTS Type:

1. The chapter describes the period from the _____ to the _____ centuries.
Answer: 6th; 10th
2. The decline of the _____ led to the rise of regional kingdoms.
Answer: Gupta Empire
3. Harṣhavardhana became king in _____ CE.
Answer: 606
4. Harṣhavardhana ruled from the city of _____.
Answer: Kannauj
5. The Chinese traveller who visited India during Harṣha's reign was _____.
Answer: Xuanzang
6. Harṣhavardhana welcomed Xuanzang to his _____.
Answer: court
7. The scholar and writer at Harṣha's court was _____.
Answer: Bāṇabhaṭṭa
8. Bāṇabhaṭṭa wrote an account of Harṣha titled _____.
Answer: Harṣhacharita
9. Harṣhavardhana died in _____ CE.
Answer: 647
10. After Harṣha's death, _____ became the centre of a major political struggle.
Answer: Kannauj
11. The struggle for Kannauj involving three powerful dynasties is called the _____.
Answer: Tripartite Struggle
12. The three powers in the Tripartite Struggle were the Pālas, Gurjara-Pratīhāras and _____.
Answer: Rāṣhṭrakūṭas
13. The Pālas were based in _____ India.
Answer: eastern
14. The Gurjara-Pratīhāras were based in the _____.
Answer: west
15. The Rāṣhṭrakūṭas were a major power in the _____.
Answer: Deccan

16. The people chose _____ to restore stability in Bengal in 750 CE.
Answer: Gopāla
17. Gopāla was the first king of the _____ dynasty.
Answer: Pāla
18. _____ expanded the Pāla Empire.
Answer: Dharmapāla
19. Dharmapāla founded the important learning centre of _____.
Answer: Vikramaśhilā
20. The Pālas also supported the learning centre at _____.
Answer: Nālandā
21. The Gurjara-Pratīhāra dynasty was founded by _____.
Answer: Nāgabhaṭa I
22. An early capital of the Gurjara-Pratīhāras was _____.
Answer: Bhillamāla
23. _____ was a celebrated Gurjara-Pratīhāra ruler.
Answer: King Bhoja
24. _____ became the first independent Rāṣhṭrakūṭa ruler.
Answer: Dantidurga
25. The Rāṣhṭrakūṭa capital was _____.
Answer: Mānyakheṭa
26. The _____ ruled from Kānchī.
Answer: Pallavas
27. The Pallavas built magnificent temples at _____.
Answer: Māmallapuram
28. The Shore Temple at Māmallapuram was built during the reign of _____.
Answer: Narasimhavarman II
29. The Chālukyas and Pallavas struggled for power from the _____ to the _____ centuries.
Answer: 6th; 8th
30. The _____ emerged as a dominant power in the 9th century.
Answer: Cholas
31. The Cheras and Pāṇḍyas were important kingdoms in the _____ of India.
Answer: south
32. Some subordinate rulers who served powerful kings were called _____.
Answer: sāmantas
33. Rulers directly governed the _____ regions of their kingdoms.
Answer: core
34. The Bhakti tradition emphasised personal _____ to a deity.
Answer: devotion
35. The early spread of the Bhakti tradition began in the _____.
Answer: south
36. The Ālvārs were devotees of _____.
Answer: Viṣhṇu
37. The Nāyanārs were devotees of _____.
Answer: Śhiva
38. The Ālvārs and Nāyanārs composed devotional literature in _____.
Answer: Tamil
39. The monolithic statue of Bāhubalī is at _____.
Answer: Shravanabelagola
40. The mathematician _____ was born in 598 CE.

Answer: Brahmagupta

41. Brahmagupta wrote the mathematical work _____.

Answer: Brahmasphutasiddhānta

42. Brahmagupta described arithmetic rules involving zero, negative numbers and _____.

Answer: fractions

43. Arab forces conquered _____ in 712 CE.

Answer: Sindh

44. In the 9th century, Sanskrit works on mathematics, astronomy and medicine were translated into _____.

Answer: Arabic

45. The decimal numeral system that travelled from India to the Arab world included the number _____.

Answer: zero

3.4 Fill-Up the Blank HOTS type questions with Answers: (40 Questions)

Fill in the Blanks — HOTS Type:

Complete each sentence using the chapter's information. A blank line is left before each answer.

1. Since no single ruler held lasting supremacy across India, this period was marked by the rise of many _____.

Answer: regional kingdoms

2. When rulers governed distant territories through *sāmantas*, they depended on _____ to manage those areas.

Answer: subordinate rulers

3. A *sāmanta* who became powerful could eventually _____ the ruler he once served.

Answer: challenge

4. The Pālas, Gurjara-Pratīhāras and Rāṣhṭrakūṭas kept fighting over Kannauj, so the conflict is called the _____.

Answer: Tripartite Struggle

5. Since the Tripartite Struggle had no lasting victor, it shows that the three dynasties had _____ power.

Answer: comparable

6. Kannauj's importance to several dynasties suggests that controlling a strategically placed city could increase a ruler's _____.

Answer: influence

7. Harṣhavardhana's support for poets and scholars shows that a royal court could also be a centre of _____.

Answer: learning and culture

8. Xuanzang's travels and writings help historians learn about India through the observations of a _____.

Answer: foreign visitor

9. Bāṇabhaṭṭa's *Harṣhacharita* is useful for learning about Harṣha, because it is a written _____ of his life.

Answer: account

10. The Pālas' support for monasteries such as Vikramaśhilā helped make eastern India an important centre of _____.

Answer: learning

11. Since students travelled from far away to study at major monasteries, these institutions had a reputation beyond their _____.

Answer: local region

12. The Pāla Empire gained wealth through internal trade and maritime trade, showing that prosperity depended on _____.

Answer: trade connections

13. Pāla seaports connected eastern India with Southeast Asia, encouraging the exchange of goods and _____.

Answer: ideas

14. The Pratīhāras' resistance to Arab advances shows that regional kingdoms could defend their _____.

Answer: territories

15. The changing capitals and centres of power show that a dynasty's political influence could _____ over time.

Answer: shift

16. Dantidurga's overthrow of the Chālukyas shows how a subordinate or rising power could become _____.

Answer: independent

17. The Pallava-Chālukya conflicts lasted for centuries, showing that control of the Deccan and south was often _____.

Answer: contested

18. Pallava temples at Māmallapuram show that rulers expressed power and devotion through _____.

Answer: architecture

19. The Shore Temple's construction under Narasimhavarman II links an important monument to the _____ of a ruler.

Answer: reign

20. The emergence of the Cholas as a dominant power in the 9th century shows that political power could _____ from one dynasty to another.

Answer: shift

21. When rulers patronised Hindu, Buddhist and Jain institutions, they helped create a climate of _____.

Answer: religious pluralism

22. The support given to different religious traditions suggests that rulers could patronise beliefs beyond their own _____.

Answer: personal inclination

23. The Bhakti tradition spread among different layers of society because it emphasised a direct personal relationship with the _____.

Answer: divine

24. The use of Tamil for devotional poems helped make religious ideas available in a _____ language.

Answer: regional

25. The Ālvārs and Nāyanārs came from devotional traditions focused on Viṣhṇu and Śhiva, showing that Bhakti included _____ forms of worship.

Answer: different

26. The participation of women among the Bhakti saints shows that women also contributed to India's _____ life.

Answer: religious and literary

27. The growth of many *jātis* made society more complex, while the changing roles of groups show that social arrangements could be _____.

Answer: flexible

28. The development of merchant guilds suggests that traders could become an important force in _____.

Answer: economic life

29. Growing trade encouraged towns to expand, linking economic activity with _____ growth.

Answer: urban

30. India's trade with distant regions helped connect local economies to _____ markets.

Answer: wider

31. The translation of Sanskrit works into Arabic shows how knowledge could travel through _____ between cultures.

Answer: contact and exchange

32. The spread of Indian numerals through the Arab world shows that ideas could be adopted and passed on by _____.

Answer: other cultures

33. Brahmagupta's work on zero, negative numbers and fractions shows that this period contributed to advances in _____.

Answer: mathematics

34. The work of astronomers on planetary positions shows that scientific knowledge also served _____ purposes.

Answer: practical

35. Temples, monasteries and sculptures from this period provide evidence of both religious devotion and _____ skill.

Answer: artistic

36. The survival of literature, monuments and learning centres shows that this period was culturally _____.

Answer: productive

37. The Arab conquest of Sindh had a limited impact in much of India because Arab advances were _____ by regional powers.

Answer: resisted

38. Allowing local communities in Sindh to continue worship suggests that the Arab rulers sometimes adjusted their _____.

Answer: policies

39. The mixture of rivalry, trade, religious developments and scholarship shows that the period was one of _____.

Answer: transformation

40. The many regional kingdoms shared a broader cultural world through trade, religion and the movement of _____.

Answer: ideas

3.5 One-mark questions with Answers of LOTS Type: (40 Questions)

One-Mark Descriptive Questions — LOTS Type:

1. **Which period does this chapter cover?**
   Answer: The chapter covers the 6th to 10th centuries.
2. **What happened after the Gupta Empire declined?**
   Answer: Several regional kingdoms rose across India.
3. **In which year did Harṣhavardhana's rule begin?**
   Answer: Harṣhavardhana's rule began in 606 CE.
4. **Which city was Harṣhavardhana's capital?**
   Answer: Harṣhavardhana ruled from Kannauj.

5. **Who was the Chinese traveller welcomed by Harṣhavardhana?**
   Answer: Harṣhavardhana welcomed the Chinese traveller Xuanzang.
6. **Which scholar wrote *Harṣhacharita*?**
   Answer: Bāṇabhaṭṭa wrote *Harṣhacharita*.
7. **When did Harṣhavardhana die?**
   Answer: Harṣhavardhana died in 647 CE.
8. **Which city became the centre of the Tripartite Struggle?**
   Answer: Kannauj became the centre of the Tripartite Struggle.
9. **Which three dynasties fought in the Tripartite Struggle?**
   Answer: The Pālas, Gurjara-Pratīhāras and Rāṣhṭrakūṭas fought in the Tripartite Struggle.
10. **In which region were the Pālas based?**
    Answer: The Pālas were based in eastern India.
11. **Who was the first king of the Pāla dynasty?**
    Answer: Gopāla was the first king of the Pāla dynasty.
12. **In which year was Gopāla chosen to restore stability in Bengal?**
    Answer: Gopāla was chosen in 750 CE.
13. **Which Pāla ruler expanded the empire?**
    Answer: Dharmapāla expanded the Pāla Empire.
14. **Which learning centre was founded by Dharmapāla?**
    Answer: Dharmapāla founded Vikramaśhilā.
15. **Which famous learning centre did the Pālas continue to support?**
    Answer: The Pālas continued to support Nālandā.
16. **Who founded the Gurjara-Pratīhāra dynasty?**
    Answer: Nāgabhaṭa I founded the Gurjara-Pratīhāra dynasty.
17. **What was an early capital of the Gurjara-Pratīhāras?**
    Answer: Bhillamāla was an early capital of the Gurjara-Pratīhāras.
18. **Which Gurjara-Pratīhāra ruler was known as Mihira?**
    Answer: King Bhoja was also known as Mihira.
19. **Who became the first independent Rāṣhṭrakūṭa ruler?**
    Answer: Dantidurga became the first independent Rāṣhṭrakūṭa ruler.
20. **What was the Rāṣhṭrakūṭa capital?**
    Answer: Mānyakheṭa was the Rāṣhṭrakūṭa capital.
21. **Which dynasty ruled from Kānchī?**
    Answer: The Pallavas ruled from Kānchī.
22. **Where did the Pallavas build impressive temples?**
    Answer: The Pallavas built impressive temples at Māmallapuram.
23. **During whose reign was the Shore Temple at Māmallapuram built?**
    Answer: The Shore Temple was built during the reign of Narasimhavarman II.
24. **Which two dynasties struggled for power from the 6th to the 8th centuries?**
    Answer: The Chālukyas and Pallavas struggled for power.
25. **Which dynasty emerged as a dominant power in the 9th century?**
    Answer: The Cholas emerged as a dominant power in the 9th century.
26. **Which southern kingdoms are mentioned alongside the Cholas?**
    Answer: The Cheras and Pāṇḍyas are mentioned as important southern kingdoms.
27. **What were subordinate rulers called?**
    Answer: Subordinate rulers were called *sāmantas*.
28. **What did rulers directly control in their kingdoms?**
    Answer: Rulers directly controlled their core regions.

29. **What does *bhakti* mean?**
    Answer: *Bhakti* means devotion to a deity.
30. **Where did the Bhakti tradition first gain momentum?**
    Answer: The Bhakti tradition first gained momentum in the south.
31. **Which deity did the Ālvārs worship?**
    Answer: The Ālvārs worshipped Viṣhṇu.
32. **Which deity did the Nāyanārs worship?**
    Answer: The Nāyanārs worshipped Śhiva.
33. **In which language did the Ālvārs and Nāyanārs compose devotional literature?**
    Answer: They composed devotional literature in Tamil.
34. **Where is the monolithic statue of Bāhubalī located?**
    Answer: The statue of Bāhubalī is located at Shravanabelagola.
35. **Who wrote *Brahmasphutasiddhānta*?**
    Answer: Brahmagupta wrote *Brahmasphutasiddhānta*.
36. **Which mathematical ideas did Brahmagupta explain?**
    Answer: Brahmagupta explained arithmetic rules involving zero, negative numbers and fractions.
37. **Which territory did Arab forces conquer in 712 CE?**
    Answer: Arab forces conquered Sindh in 712 CE.
38. **Which Indian numeral system did the Arabs adopt?**
    Answer: The Arabs adopted India's decimal numeral system.
39. **Which Indian number was included in the numeral system transmitted to the Arab world?**
    Answer: The numeral system included zero.
40. **Which subjects were covered by Sanskrit texts translated into Arabic?**
    Answer: The texts covered mathematics, astronomy and medicine.

3.6 One-mark questions with Answers of HOTS Type: (35 Questions)

One-Mark Descriptive Questions — HOTS Type:

1. **What does the rise of many regional kingdoms after the Gupta decline show about political power in this period?**
   Answer: Political power became divided among several regional rulers.
2. **Why did Kannauj become a source of repeated conflict among powerful dynasties?**
   Answer: Its strategic location made control of Kannauj valuable to rival dynasties.
3. **What does the lack of a lasting victor in the Tripartite Struggle suggest?**
   Answer: The three dynasties had enough strength to prevent any one of them from holding Kannauj permanently.
4. **What risk did a king face when governing distant regions through *sāmantas*?**
   Answer: A powerful *sāmanta* could challenge the king's authority.
5. **What does Dantidurga's rise to independent rule show about the *sāmanta* system?**
   Answer: A subordinate ruler could grow strong enough to establish independence.
6. **How did Xuanzang's travels help people learn about Harṣhavardhana's period?**
   Answer: His observations provide an account of India from a visitor's point of view.
7. **What does Bāṇabhaṭṭa's work at Harṣha's court suggest about royal courts?**
   Answer: Royal courts could support literature and scholarship.
8. **Why were monasteries such as Vikramaśhilā important beyond their religious role?**
   Answer: They also served as major centres of learning.

9. **What does the presence of students from distant places at learning centres suggest?**
   Answer: These centres had a reputation that reached beyond their local regions.
10. **How did maritime trade help the Pāla Empire connect with other regions?**
    Answer: Its seaports linked eastern India with Southeast Asia.
11. **What does the Pāla Empire's trade with Southeast Asia tell us about India's economy?**
    Answer: India's economy was connected to wider trade networks.
12. **What does the repeated Pallava-Chālukya conflict tell us about political life in the south?**
    Answer: Regional powers competed for control over a long period.
13. **What can the Shore Temple at Māmallapuram tell us about the Pallava period?**
    Answer: The Pallavas invested in impressive temple architecture.
14. **What does the emergence of the Cholas as a dominant power show?**
    Answer: Political dominance could shift from one dynasty to another.
15. **Why might rulers patronise more than one religious tradition?**
    Answer: Supporting different traditions helped them encourage a plural society.
16. **What does the support given to Hindu, Buddhist and Jain institutions reveal about the period?**
    Answer: Several religious traditions coexisted and received patronage.
17. **Why could Bhakti poetry reach people beyond royal courts?**
    Answer: It was often composed in regional languages that people could understand.
18. **What does the diversity of the Ālvārs and Nāyanārs suggest about devotional traditions?**
    Answer: People from varied backgrounds contributed to Bhakti.
19. **How did Bhakti devotion differ from a focus on elaborate sacrifices?**
    Answer: Bhakti emphasised a personal relationship with a deity.
20. **What does the growth of many *jātis* indicate about society in this period?**
    Answer: Society was becoming more complex.
21. **What does the changing status of some social groups suggest about social organisation?**
    Answer: Social arrangements could develop and change over time.
22. **How could merchant guilds influence towns?**
    Answer: Their trade activity could support urban growth.
23. **What does trade between local and distant markets suggest about economic life?**
    Answer: Regional economies were becoming more closely connected.
24. **What does the translation of Sanskrit works into Arabic show about cultural interaction?**
    Answer: Knowledge moved between India and the Arab world.
25. **How did the transmission of Indian numerals affect the spread of mathematical knowledge?**
    Answer: It helped Indian mathematical ideas reach other parts of the world.
26. **Why is Brahmagupta's work on zero and negative numbers significant?**
    Answer: It contributed important ideas to the development of mathematics.
27. **What does the use of astronomy for calendars and predictions show about scientific study?**
    Answer: Scientific knowledge served practical needs as well as intellectual interests.
28. **What does the survival of temples, monasteries and sculptures help historians understand?**
    Answer: These remains provide evidence about the period's art and religious life.

29. **What does Arab control remaining limited in much of India suggest about regional kingdoms?**
    Answer: Regional powers were able to resist further Arab expansion.
30. **What does the Arab policy of allowing local worship in Sindh suggest?**
    Answer: The rulers sometimes adapted their policies to local conditions.
31. **How did trade contribute to cultural exchange across the Arabian Sea?**
    Answer: Traders carried ideas, languages and stories along with goods.
32. **What does Harṣha's support for scholars and Xuanzang reveal about his court?**
    Answer: His court was connected to learning and cultural exchange.
33. **What does the combination of political rivalry and cultural achievement show about the period?**
    Answer: Political competition existed alongside cultural growth.
34. **Why should this period be seen as one of transformation?**
    Answer: New kingdoms, social developments and cultural traditions reshaped India.
35. **What does the spread of Bhakti across regions show about its appeal?**
    Answer: Its devotional message resonated with people in many parts of India.

3.7 Two-mark questions with Answers of LOTS Type: (35 Questions)

Two-Mark Descriptive Questions — LOTS Type:

1. **Which centuries does the chapter cover, and what happened after the Gupta Empire declined?**
   Answer:
   (i) The chapter covers the 6th to 10th centuries.
   (ii) Several regional kingdoms rose after the Gupta Empire declined.
2. **When did Harṣhavardhana begin his rule, and which city did he rule from?**
   Answer:
   (i) Harṣhavardhana's rule began in 606 CE.
   (ii) He ruled from Kannauj.
3. **Who was Xuanzang, and which Indian ruler welcomed him?**
   Answer:
   (i) Xuanzang was a Chinese traveller who visited India.
   (ii) Harṣhavardhana welcomed him.
4. **Who was Bāṇabhaṭṭa, and what work did he write?**
   Answer:
   (i) Bāṇabhaṭṭa was a scholar at Harṣha's court.
   (ii) He wrote *Harṣhacharita*.
5. **When did Harṣhavardhana die, and what city became the centre of a struggle after his death?**
   Answer:
   (i) Harṣhavardhana died in 647 CE.
   (ii) Kannauj became the centre of the Tripartite Struggle.
6. **Name the three dynasties that fought in the Tripartite Struggle.**
   Answer:
   (i) The Pālas and Gurjara-Pratīhāras took part in the struggle.
   (ii) The Rāṣhṭrakūṭas were the third power.
7. **Where were the Pālas based, and who was their first king?**
   Answer:
   (i) The Pālas were based in eastern India.
   (ii) Gopāla was their first king.

8. **When was Gopāla chosen to restore stability in Bengal, and what dynasty did he establish?**
   Answer:
   (i) Gopāla was chosen in 750 CE.
   (ii) He became the first king of the Pāla dynasty.
9. **Who was Dharmapāla, and which learning centre did he found?**
   Answer:
   (i) Dharmapāla was a Pāla ruler who expanded the empire.
   (ii) He founded Vikramaśhilā.
10. **Name two learning centres supported by the Pālas.**
    Answer:
    (i) The Pālas supported Vikramaśhilā.
    (ii) They also patronised Nālandā.
11. **Who founded the Gurjara-Pratīhāra dynasty, and what was one of its early capitals?**
    Answer:
    (i) Nāgabhaṭa I founded the dynasty.
    (ii) Bhillamāla was one of its early capitals.
12. **Name one celebrated Gurjara-Pratīhāra ruler and another name by which he was known.**
    Answer:
    (i) King Bhoja was a celebrated Gurjara-Pratīhāra ruler.
    (ii) He was also known as Mihira.
13. **Who became the first independent Rāṣhṭrakūṭa ruler, and what was the dynasty's capital?**
    Answer:
    (i) Dantidurga became the first independent Rāṣhṭrakūṭa ruler.
    (ii) Mānyakheṭa was the Rāṣhṭrakūṭa capital.
14. **Which city was associated with the Pallavas, and where did they build famous temples?**
    Answer:
    (i) Kānchī was associated with the Pallavas.
    (ii) They built famous temples at Māmallapuram.
15. **Who built the Shore Temple at Māmallapuram, and which dynasty did he belong to?**
    Answer:
    (i) Narasimhavarman II built the Shore Temple.
    (ii) He belonged to the Pallava dynasty.
16. **Which two dynasties struggled for power from the 6th to the 8th centuries?**
    Answer:
    (i) The Chālukyas were one of the dynasties.
    (ii) The Pallavas were the other.
17. **Which dynasty became a dominant power in the 9th century, and name two other southern kingdoms.**
    Answer:
    (i) The Cholas became a dominant power in the 9th century.
    (ii) The Cheras and Pāṇḍyas were also important southern kingdoms.
18. **What were *sāmantas*, and how did rulers use them?**
    Answer:

(i) *Sāmantas* were subordinate rulers.
(ii) Powerful kings used them to govern distant territories.

19. **Which areas did rulers govern directly, and how were other territories often governed?**
Answer:
(i) Rulers directly governed their core regions.
(ii) They often governed other territories through subordinate rulers.
20. **Name three religious traditions that received patronage during this period.**
Answer:
(i) Hinduism and Buddhism received patronage.
(ii) Jainism also received patronage.
21. **What does *bhakti* mean, and when did the Bhakti tradition spread widely?**
Answer:
(i) *Bhakti* means devotion to a deity.
(ii) The Bhakti tradition spread widely from the 6th century onward.
22. **Who were the Ālvārs, and which deity did they worship?**
Answer:
(i) The Ālvārs were devotional poets and saints.
(ii) They were devotees of Viṣhṇu.
23. **Who were the Nāyanārs, and which deity did they worship?**
Answer:
(i) The Nāyanārs were devotional poets and saints.
(ii) They were devotees of Śhiva.
24. **In which language did the Ālvārs and Nāyanārs compose devotional works, and what did their poetry express?**
Answer:
(i) They composed devotional works in Tamil.
(ii) Their poetry expressed devotion to Viṣhṇu or Śhiva.
25. **What made Bhakti poetry accessible to many people, and which social groups did it reach?**
Answer:
(i) Much Bhakti poetry was composed in regional languages.
(ii) It reached people across gender and social divisions.
26. **How did society change during this period, and what system remained flexible?**
Answer:
(i) The multiplication of *jātis* made society more complex.
(ii) The *varṇa-jāti* system remained flexible.
27. **Name two activities in which women participated, according to accounts from this period.**
Answer:
(i) Women worked in agriculture and crafts.
(ii) They also took part in social and economic activities at courts.
28. **What supported the growth of trade, and what effect did trade have on towns?**
Answer:
(i) Merchant guilds and trade networks supported economic activity.
(ii) Trade helped towns and cities grow.
29. **Who was Brahmagupta, and what was his major work?**
Answer:
(i) Brahmagupta was a mathematician and astronomer.
(ii) His major work was *Brahmasphutasiddhānta*.

30. **Name two mathematical topics discussed by Brahmagupta, and identify one more area of study developed during the period.**
    Answer:
    (i) Brahmagupta explained arithmetic involving zero and negative numbers.
    (ii) Scholars also advanced astronomy and calculations of planetary positions.
31. **When did Arab forces conquer Sindh, and what was an earlier Arab attack mentioned in the chapter?**
    Answer:
    (i) Arab forces conquered Sindh in 712 CE.
    (ii) An earlier Arab naval attack was repulsed at Thāṇā in 637 CE.
32. **Which Indian knowledge was transmitted to the Arab world, and into which language were Sanskrit works translated?**
    Answer:
    (i) India's decimal numeral system, including zero, was transmitted to the Arab world.
    (ii) Sanskrit works on mathematics, astronomy and medicine were translated into Arabic.
33. **What goods did ships carry between India and Arabia, and what else travelled with them?**
    Answer:
    (i) Ships carried goods such as spices and textiles.
    (ii) They also carried ideas, languages and stories.
34. **What kinds of achievements marked this period, and name one example from architecture.**
    Answer:
    (i) The period saw achievements in literature, science, art and technology.
    (ii) The Shore Temple at Māmallapuram is an example of its architecture.
35. **What broad changes took place during this period besides political rivalry?**
    Answer:
    (i) Regional kingdoms and social groups developed.
    (ii) Literature, temple architecture and religious practices flourished.

3.8. Two-mark questions with Answers of HOTS Type: (35 Questions)

Two-Mark Descriptive Questions — HOTS Type:

1. **What does the rise of many regional kingdoms after the Gupta Empire show about political power during this period?**
   Answer:
   (i) Political power was divided among several regional rulers.
   (ii) No single kingdom maintained lasting control over the whole subcontinent.
2. **Why could a ruler's dependence on *sāmantas* create challenges to central authority?**
   Answer:
   (i) *Sāmantas* governed territories on behalf of powerful kings.
   (ii) A powerful *sāmanta* could later challenge or replace the ruler.
3. **What does the Tripartite Struggle reveal about the Pālas, Gurjara-Pratīhāras and Rāṣhṭrakūṭas?**
   Answer:
   (i) All three dynasties wanted control over Kannauj.
   (ii) Their strength prevented any one of them from holding it permanently.

4. **How did Harṣhavardhana's court contribute to cultural life?**
   Answer:
   (i) Harṣha welcomed scholars and poets to his court.
   (ii) Writers such as Bāṇabhaṭṭa created works connected with his reign.
5. **Why are accounts by travellers such as Xuanzang useful to historians?**
   Answer:
   (i) They record observations made by visitors to India.
   (ii) Their accounts offer additional evidence about people and rulers of the period.
6. **How did the Pālas strengthen learning in eastern India?**
   Answer:
   (i) They supported major monasteries and learning centres.
   (ii) These centres attracted students and scholars from distant places.
7. **What does Vikramaśhilā's role as a centre of learning suggest about monasteries?**
   Answer:
   (i) Monasteries could provide education as well as religious instruction.
   (ii) They helped preserve and develop knowledge traditions.
8. **How did maritime trade benefit the Pāla Empire?**
   Answer:
   (i) Seaports connected eastern India with Southeast Asia.
   (ii) These links supported trade and brought wider contacts.
9. **What does the rise of Dantidurga tell us about the relationship between subordinate rulers and powerful dynasties?**
   Answer:
   (i) A subordinate ruler could gain enough strength to become independent.
   (ii) This could change the balance of power between dynasties.
10. **What can the Pallava temples at Māmallapuram tell us about the rulers who built them?**
    Answer:
    (i) The rulers had the resources and skill to support major building projects.
    (ii) Temple construction expressed religious devotion and artistic achievement.
11. **What does the long rivalry between the Chālukyas and Pallavas indicate?**
    Answer:
    (i) Both dynasties sought influence in the Deccan and southern India.
    (ii) Regional power struggles could continue for many generations.
12. **What does the later rise of the Cholas show about the history of kingdoms in this period?**
    Answer:
    (i) Political power could shift from one dynasty to another.
    (ii) Regional kingdoms could grow into dominant powers.
13. **How did support for Hinduism, Buddhism and Jainism shape the cultural environment?**
    Answer:
    (i) Several religious traditions received patronage.
    (ii) This contributed to a diverse religious and cultural life.
14. **Why could Bhakti poetry reach people beyond royal courts and monasteries?**
    Answer:
    (i) Devotional poetry was often composed in regional languages.
    (ii) Its message of personal devotion appealed to people from varied backgrounds.

15. **What does the participation of women among the Bhakti saints show?**
Answer:
(i) Women contributed to religious and literary traditions.
(ii) Devotional communities included voices from different social groups.
16. **How did the Bhakti tradition affect the relationship between people and religion?**
Answer:
(i) It emphasised personal devotion to a deity.
(ii) It offered a way of religious expression through poetry and worship.
17. **What does the growth of many *jātis* tell us about society during this period?**
Answer:
(i) Social life was becoming more complex.
(ii) The chapter also describes the *varṇa-jāti* system as flexible.
18. **What do accounts of women working in agriculture, crafts and courts reveal?**
Answer:
(i) Women took part in a range of economic activities.
(ii) Their roles could differ across regions and social groups.
19. **How could merchant guilds contribute to the growth of towns?**
Answer:
(i) Guilds organised and supported trading activity.
(ii) Trade encouraged the growth of towns and urban life.
20. **What does the connection between local and distant markets tell us about India's economy?**
Answer:
(i) Local economies were linked to wider trade networks.
(ii) Goods and ideas could move between distant regions.
21. **Why was the translation of Sanskrit works into Arabic an important cultural development?**
Answer:
(i) It carried Indian knowledge to readers in other regions.
(ii) It supported the exchange of ideas across cultures.
22. **What does the spread of Indian numerals through the Arab world demonstrate?**
Answer:
(i) Indian mathematical ideas travelled beyond India.
(ii) Knowledge could be transmitted and adopted by other cultures.
23. **How did Brahmagupta's work contribute to the development of mathematics?**
Answer:
(i) He explained arithmetic involving zero, negative numbers and fractions.
(ii) His work helped extend mathematical knowledge in later regions.
24. **What does the study of astronomy for calendars and predictions reveal about science in this period?**
Answer:
(i) Scholars developed techniques for studying the sky.
(ii) Their knowledge also served practical purposes.
25. **How did temples and monasteries help preserve evidence of the past?**
Answer:
(i) Their buildings, sculptures and inscriptions provide historical evidence.
(ii) They reveal information about religious life, art and patronage.
26. **What can be inferred from the limited political impact of the Arab conquest of Sindh in much of India?**
Answer:

(i) Arab control did not spread across most of the subcontinent.
(ii) Regional rulers resisted further advances.

27. **What does the Arab policy of allowing local worship in Sindh suggest?**
Answer:
(i) Arab rulers permitted some local religious practices to continue.
(ii) Their policies in Sindh differed from those used in some other conquered regions.
28. **How did trade between India and Arabia support cultural exchange?**
Answer:
(i) Ships carried spices and textiles between the regions.
(ii) They also carried languages, stories and ideas.
29. **Why should this period be described as one of cultural growth as well as political rivalry?**
Answer:
(i) Rival dynasties fought for control of important regions and cities.
(ii) Literature, architecture, science and religious traditions also flourished.
30. **How did regional kingdoms contribute to the diversity of Indian culture?**
Answer:
(i) Different regions developed their own centres of power and culture.
(ii) Literature, temples and religious practices reflected this regional variety.
31. **What does the support given to both religious institutions and scholars tell us about royal patronage?**
Answer:
(i) Rulers supported learning and religious activity.
(ii) Patronage helped cultural traditions continue and develop.
32. **How did the Bhakti tradition connect different parts of India?**
Answer:
(i) Devotional traditions spread from the south to other regions.
(ii) Bhakti poets used regional languages to share their ideas.
33. **What does the combination of internal trade and overseas trade suggest about the Pāla economy?**
Answer:
(i) Economic activity took place within the empire and beyond it.
(ii) Seaports helped connect the empire to distant markets.
34. **How did political change and cultural continuity exist together in this period?**
Answer:
(i) Dynasties rose, fought and declined over time.
(ii) Learning, religious traditions and artistic practices continued to develop.
35. **What does the chapter's account of trade, religion and scholarship suggest about India's connections with other regions?**
Answer:
(i) India was connected to other regions through trade and travel.
(ii) These connections carried goods, knowledge and cultural ideas.

3.9. Three-mark questions with Answers of LOTS Type: (30 Questions)

Three-Mark Descriptive Questions — LOTS Type:

1. **What changes followed the decline of the Gupta Empire?**
Answer:
(i) The Gupta Empire lost its dominance.

(ii) Several regional kingdoms rose in different parts of India.
(iii) No single power maintained lasting control over the whole subcontinent.

2. **Write three facts about Harṣhavardhana.**
   Answer:
   (i) Harṣhavardhana's rule began in 606 CE.
   (ii) He ruled from Kannauj.
   (iii) He patronised scholars and welcomed the Chinese traveller Xuanzang.
3. **Who was Xuanzang? Give three details about his visit to India.**
   Answer:
   (i) Xuanzang was a Chinese Buddhist traveller.
   (ii) He travelled in India during the 7th century.
   (iii) Harṣhavardhana welcomed him.
4. **Write three details about Bāṇabhaṭṭa.**
   Answer:
   (i) Bāṇabhaṭṭa was a scholar at Harṣhavardhana's court.
   (ii) He was a poet and writer.
   (iii) He wrote *Harṣhacharita*, an account of Harṣha.
5. **What was the Tripartite Struggle?**
   Answer:
   (i) It was a prolonged struggle for control of Kannauj.
   (ii) The Pālas and Gurjara-Pratīhāras were involved in it.
   (iii) The Rāṣhṭrakūṭas were the third power in the struggle.
6. **Write three facts about the Pāla dynasty.**
   Answer:
   (i) The Pāla dynasty rose in eastern India.
   (ii) Gopāla became its first king in 750 CE.
   (iii) Dharmapāla later expanded the Pāla Empire.
7. **How did the Pālas support education and learning?**
   Answer:
   (i) They supported Nālandā.
   (ii) Dharmapāla founded Vikramaśhilā.
   (iii) These monasteries attracted students and scholars from distant places.
8. **Write three details about Vikramaśhilā.**
   Answer:
   (i) Vikramaśhilā was founded by Dharmapāla.
   (ii) It was an important centre of learning.
   (iii) It had colleges, monasteries, lecture halls and a library.
9. **How did trade help the Pāla Empire?**
   Answer:
   (i) Internal trade supported the Pāla economy.
   (ii) Seaports enabled maritime trade.
   (iii) These ports provided links with Southeast Asia.
10. **Write three facts about the Gurjara-Pratīhāras.**
    Answer:
    (i) Nāgabhaṭa I founded the dynasty in the mid-8th century.
    (ii) Bhillamāla was one of its early capitals.
    (iii) The dynasty became known for resisting Arab advances into northwest India.
11. **Write three facts about King Bhoja.**
    Answer:
    (i) King Bhoja was a celebrated Gurjara-Pratīhāra ruler.

(ii) He was also known as Mihira.
(iii) His empire extended across much of northern India.

12. **Write three facts about the Rāṣhṭrakūṭas.**
Answer:
(i) Dantidurga became the first independent Rāṣhṭrakūṭa ruler.
(ii) Their capital was Mānyakheṭa.
(iii) They were a powerful dynasty in the Deccan.
13. **What role did the Pallavas play in the history of southern India?**
Answer:
(i) The Pallavas ruled from Kānchī.
(ii) They built important temples and monuments at Māmallapuram.
(iii) They competed with the Chālukyas for power.
14. **Write three facts about the Shore Temple at Māmallapuram.**
Answer:
(i) The Shore Temple is at Māmallapuram.
(ii) It was built during the reign of Narasimhavarman II.
(iii) It is an important example of Pallava architecture.
15. **Name the kingdoms that were important in southern India during this period.**
Answer:
(i) The Pallavas were an important southern power.
(ii) The Pāṇḍyas and Cheras also ruled in the south.
(iii) The Cholas became a dominant power in the 9th century.
16. **How were kingdoms governed during this period?**
Answer:
(i) Rulers directly governed their core regions.
(ii) They divided directly controlled territories into administrative units.
(iii) They governed some distant regions through subordinate rulers called *sāmantas*.
17. **What were *sāmantas*?**
Answer:
(i) *Sāmantas* were subordinate rulers.
(ii) They governed territories under the authority of a more powerful king.
(iii) Some *sāmantas* later became powerful enough to establish independent kingdoms.
18. **Name three religious traditions that received support during this period.**
Answer:
(i) Hindu traditions received support.
(ii) Buddhist institutions received patronage.
(iii) Jainism also remained popular in several regions.
19. **What was the Bhakti tradition?**
Answer:
(i) Bhakti means devotion to a deity.
(ii) It spread widely from the 6th century onward.
(iii) It emphasised personal devotion and worship.
20. **Who were the Ālvārs?**
Answer:
(i) The Ālvārs were devotional poets and saints from the south.
(ii) They were devotees of Viṣhṇu.
(iii) They composed devotional literature in Tamil.
21. **Who were the Nāyanārs?**
Answer:

(i) The Nāyanārs were devotional poets and saints from the south.
(ii) They were devotees of Śhiva.
(iii) They composed devotional literature in Tamil.

22. **How did Bhakti poetry reach people across society?**
Answer:
(i) Many Bhakti poems were composed in regional languages.
(ii) The poems expressed personal devotion to a deity.
(iii) Bhakti saints came from diverse social backgrounds.
23. **What changes took place in society during this period?**
Answer:
(i) Many new *jātis* developed.
(ii) Their growth made society more complex.
(iii) The *varṇa-jāti* system remained flexible.
24. **What roles did women have during this period, according to the chapter?**
Answer:
(i) Women worked in agriculture and crafts.
(ii) Some served at courts as musicians, storytellers and attendants.
(iii) Inscriptions record women making temple offerings and building water structures.
25. **What was the role of merchant guilds and trade?**
Answer:
(i) Merchant guilds organised trading activity.
(ii) Trade connected local economies with distant markets.
(iii) Growing trade supported urban growth.
26. **Who was Brahmagupta, and what were his contributions?**
Answer:
(i) Brahmagupta was a mathematician and astronomer born in 598 CE.
(ii) He wrote *Brahmasphutasiddhānta*.
(iii) His work described arithmetic involving zero, negative numbers and fractions.
27. **Name three scholars associated with mathematics or astronomy during this period.**
Answer:
(i) Brahmagupta made important contributions to mathematics and astronomy.
(ii) Bhāskara I worked on trigonometry.
(iii) Virahānka worked on the sequence now known as the Virahānka-Fibonacci sequence.
28. **What did Arab forces do in Sindh, and when?**
Answer:
(i) Arab forces conquered Sindh in 712 CE.
(ii) They had made several earlier attempts to enter the subcontinent.
(iii) Their political control in India remained limited compared with their conquests elsewhere.
29. **How did India and the Arab world exchange knowledge?**
Answer:
(i) Sanskrit works on mathematics, astronomy and medicine were translated into Arabic.
(ii) These translations were made notably in Baghdad.
(iii) India’s decimal numeral system, including zero, was transmitted through the Arab world.

30. **What were the main cultural achievements of this period?**
Answer:
(i) Sanskrit and regional-language literature flourished.
(ii) Temple architecture and sculpture developed.
(iii) Mathematics, astronomy and other fields of learning advanced.

3.10. Three-mark questions with Answers of HOTS Type: (35 Questions)

Three-Mark Descriptive Questions — HOTS Type:

1. **Why did the decline of the Gupta Empire lead to the rise of many regional kingdoms?**
Answer:
(i) The Guptas no longer controlled large parts of India.
(ii) Regional rulers gained opportunities to strengthen their own territories.
(iii) Several kingdoms emerged instead of one lasting empire.
2. **What does the Tripartite Struggle show about political power in north India?**
Answer:
(i) The Pālas, Gurjara-Pratīhāras and Rāṣḥṭrakūṭas all sought control of Kannauj.
(ii) Their military strength was sufficiently balanced to prevent a lasting victory.
(iii) Political power remained contested among regional kingdoms.
3. **Why might Kannauj have attracted several powerful dynasties?**
Answer:
(i) Kannauj was an important city in north India.
(ii) Its location made control of it valuable to rival rulers.
(iii) Holding it could strengthen a dynasty's political influence.
4. **What were the advantages and risks of governing distant territories through *sāmantas*?**
Answer:
(i) *Sāmantas* helped rulers govern regions far from their capitals.
(ii) This arrangement allowed kings to extend their influence.
(iii) A powerful *sāmanta* could later challenge the king.
5. **How did Harṣhavardhana's court support cultural life?**
Answer:
(i) Harṣha welcomed scholars and poets to his court.
(ii) Bāṇabhaṭṭa wrote *Harṣhacharita* about the king.
(iii) Xuanzang's visit connected the court with a foreign traveller.
6. **Why are Xuanzang's travels and Bāṇabhaṭṭa's writing useful to historians?**
Answer:
(i) Xuanzang recorded observations from a visitor's perspective.
(ii) Bāṇabhaṭṭa wrote an account connected with Harṣha's life.
(iii) Together, such sources provide information about the period.
7. **How did the Pālas make eastern India an important centre of learning?**
Answer:
(i) They supported Nālandā and other monasteries.
(ii) Dharmapāla founded Vikramaśhilā.
(iii) These institutions attracted students and scholars from distant places.
8. **What does Vikramaśhilā's organisation suggest about education in the period?**
Answer:
(i) The centre had colleges, lecture halls and a large library.

(ii) Students were tested before being admitted.
(iii) Learning was organised within a larger monastic institution.

9. **How did maritime trade contribute to the Pāla Empire's prosperity and connections?**
Answer:
(i) Internal trade supported the empire's economy.
(ii) Seaports on the east coast enabled maritime trade.
(iii) These routes connected the region with Southeast Asia.
10. **What can Dantidurga's rise tell us about political change in the Deccan?**
Answer:
(i) Dantidurga overthrew the Chālukyas.
(ii) He became an independent Rāṣhṭrakūṭa ruler.
(iii) Political power in the region could shift from one dynasty to another.
11. **What does the long struggle between the Chālukyas and Pallavas tell us about their kingdoms?**
Answer:
(i) Both dynasties were powerful regional rivals.
(ii) Their competition continued across several centuries.
(iii) Control of important regions remained contested.
12. **How do the Shore Temple and the monuments at Māmallapuram help us understand the Pallavas?**
Answer:
(i) They show the Pallavas' support for temple building.
(ii) They reflect the artistic and architectural skills of the period.
(iii) The Shore Temple is linked to Narasimhavarman II's reign.
13. **What does the rise of the Cholas as a dominant power show about kingdoms in this period?**
Answer:
(i) Dynasties could gain power over time.
(ii) One kingdom's influence could decline while another grew.
(iii) Regional political leadership changed across the centuries.
14. **How did the support of Hindu, Buddhist and Jain institutions shape cultural life?**
Answer:
(i) More than one religious tradition received patronage.
(ii) Religious institutions and ideas developed in different regions.
(iii) The result was a culturally diverse society.
15. **Why could Bhakti poetry communicate religious ideas to many people?**
Answer:
(i) Many poems were composed in regional languages.
(ii) They focused on personal devotion to a deity.
(iii) Their message reached people from varied backgrounds.
16. **What does the participation of women among the Bhakti saints tell us?**
Answer:
(i) Women contributed to devotional literature and religious life.
(ii) Some women saints were part of the Ālvār and Nāyanār traditions.
(iii) Bhakti traditions included voices from different social groups.
17. **How did the spread of Bhakti affect religious practice?**
Answer:
(i) It gave importance to personal devotion.

(ii) It encouraged devotional poetry and worship in regional languages.
(iii) It helped religious ideas reach people across regions.

18. **What does the growth of *jātis* alongside a flexible *varṇa-jāti* system suggest?**
Answer:
(i) Social groupings became more numerous.
(ii) Society became more complex.
(iii) Social arrangements could still change over time.
19. **What do the chapter's examples of women's work suggest about their lives?**
Answer:
(i) Women worked in agriculture and crafts.
(ii) Some took roles at courts as musicians or storytellers.
(iii) Their experiences varied by region and social position.
20. **How could merchant guilds and trade help towns grow?**
Answer:
(i) Guilds supported organised trading activity.
(ii) Trade connected towns with local and distant markets.
(iii) Increased economic activity encouraged urban growth.
21. **What do trade links with distant markets reveal about India's economy?**
Answer:
(i) Local economies were connected to wider networks.
(ii) Merchants carried goods between different regions.
(iii) Trade also enabled cultural contact.
22. **Why was the translation of Sanskrit works into Arabic significant?**
Answer:
(i) It made Indian works available to readers beyond India.
(ii) The translations included subjects such as mathematics and medicine.
(iii) They helped knowledge travel between cultures.
23. **How did Indian numerals become known beyond India?**
Answer:
(i) The Arabs adopted India's decimal numeral system, including zero.
(ii) The system travelled west through Arabic transmission.
(iii) It later became widely known as Arabic numerals.
24. **Why are Brahmagupta's mathematical contributions important?**
Answer:
(i) He explained arithmetic rules involving zero and negative numbers.
(ii) He also wrote about fractions and methods for solving equations.
(iii) His work contributed to the development of mathematics.
25. **What does the study of astronomy during this period reveal about scholarly work?**
Answer:
(i) Scholars developed methods for astronomical calculations.
(ii) They studied the positions of planets.
(iii) Their work could support practical needs such as calendars.
26. **What can be inferred from the limited political impact of the Arab conquest of Sindh?**
Answer:
(i) Arab political control did not spread across most of India.
(ii) Indian rulers resisted further advances.
(iii) The conquest had a more limited impact than Arab conquests in some other regions.

27. **What does the Arab treatment of local worship in Sindh suggest about their rule there?**
Answer:
(i) Hindus and Buddhists were allowed to continue their worship.
(ii) Temples could be rebuilt, and priests could retain their share of revenue.
(iii) Arab policies in Sindh included accommodation of local religious practices.
28. **How did trade between India and Arabia encourage cultural exchange?**
Answer:
(i) Ships carried goods such as spices and textiles.
(ii) Traders also carried ideas, languages and stories.
(iii) Regular contact helped connect the two regions.
29. **Why should this period be seen as one of both political rivalry and cultural growth?**
Answer:
(i) Many dynasties competed for territory and influence.
(ii) Literature, architecture and sculpture developed.
(iii) Learning and religious traditions also flourished.
30. **How did regional kingdoms contribute to the variety of Indian culture?**
Answer:
(i) Different regions had their own ruling dynasties.
(ii) Each region developed distinctive artistic and literary traditions.
(iii) Trade and religious links connected these regional cultures.
31. **What role did royal patronage play in the development of knowledge?**
Answer:
(i) Rulers supported scholars and learning centres.
(ii) This helped institutions preserve and develop knowledge.
(iii) Scholars made advances in subjects such as mathematics and astronomy.
32. **How did regional languages contribute to the spread of devotional literature?**
Answer:
(i) Poets composed devotional works in languages used in their regions.
(ii) This made the works accessible to local audiences.
(iii) Bhakti ideas spread across social groups and regions.
33. **What do the Pālas' monasteries and seaports together tell us about their empire?**
Answer:
(i) Monasteries made the empire a centre of learning.
(ii) Seaports supported trade with distant regions.
(iii) The empire had important educational and economic connections.
34. **How did political change and cultural continuity exist together during this period?**
Answer:
(i) Dynasties rose, fought one another and declined.
(ii) Religious traditions and learning continued across generations.
(iii) New regional forms of literature, art and architecture also developed.
35. **What does the movement of traders, pilgrims and scholars reveal about connections between regions?**
Answer:
(i) People travelled between different parts of India and beyond.
(ii) They carried goods, religious ideas and knowledge.
(iii) Their movement helped link regional societies.

3.11 Five-mark questions with Answers of LOTS Type: (20 Questions)

Five-Mark Descriptive Questions — LOTS Type:

1. Describe the political situation in India after the decline of the Gupta Empire.

Answer:

(i) The Gupta Empire lost its dominance.
(ii) Many regional kingdoms rose in different parts of India.
(iii) Harṣhavardhana ruled from Kannauj in the 7th century.
(iv) The Pālas, Gurjara-Pratīhāras and Rāṣhṭrakūṭas became powerful dynasties.
(v) No single kingdom maintained lasting control over the whole subcontinent.

2. Write five facts about Harṣhavardhana.

Answer:

(i) Harṣhavardhana's rule began in 606 CE.
(ii) He ruled from Kannauj.
(iii) He welcomed the Chinese traveller Xuanzang.
(iv) He patronised scholars such as Bāṇabhaṭṭa.
(v) He died in 647 CE.

3. Write five facts about Xuanzang's visit to India.

Answer:

(i) Xuanzang was a Chinese Buddhist traveller.
(ii) He travelled in India during the 7th century.
(iii) His travels in India took place between 630 and 644 CE.
(iv) Harṣhavardhana welcomed him.
(v) His observations provide information about India during that period.

4. Explain the Tripartite Struggle for Kannauj.

Answer:

(i) The Tripartite Struggle was a prolonged conflict for control of Kannauj.
(ii) It took place mainly during the 8th and 9th centuries.
(iii) The Pālas were one of the three powers.
(iv) The Gurjara-Pratīhāras and Rāṣhṭrakūṭas were the other two powers.
(v) The struggle had no lasting victor.

5. Write five facts about the Pāla dynasty.

Answer:

(i) The Pāla dynasty rose in eastern India.
(ii) The people chose Gopāla as their king in 750 CE.
(iii) Gopāla was the first king of the dynasty.
(iv) Dharmapāla expanded the Pāla Empire.
(v) The Pālas supported learning and trade.

6. Describe the Pālas' contribution to learning.

Answer:

(i) The Pālas supported the monastery at Nālandā.
(ii) Dharmapāla founded Vikramaśhilā.
(iii) The Pālas also supported Somapura.
(iv) These monasteries served as important centres of learning.
(v) They attracted students and scholars from distant places.

7. Write five facts about Vikramaśhilā.

Answer:

(i) Vikramaśhilā was founded by Dharmapāla in the late 8th century.
(ii) It was situated on the banks of the Ganga.
(iii) It had colleges, monasteries, temples and lecture halls.

(iv) Its library was extensive.
(v) Students were tested by scholar gatekeepers before admission.

8. Write five facts about the Gurjara-Pratīhāras.

Answer:

(i) Nāgabhaṭa I founded the dynasty in the mid-8th century.
(ii) The dynasty probably originated in western India.
(iii) Bhillamāla was an early capital.
(iv) The capital later seems to have shifted to Ujjayinī.
(v) The Gurjara-Pratīhāras became known for resisting Arab advances into northwest India.

9. Write five facts about King Bhoja of the Gurjara-Pratīhāras.

Answer:

(i) King Bhoja was a celebrated Gurjara-Pratīhāra ruler.
(ii) He ruled in the 9th century.
(iii) He was also known as Mihira.
(iv) He was a devotee of Viṣhṇu.
(v) His empire stretched across much of northern India.

10. Write five facts about the Rāṣhṭrakūṭas.

Answer:

(i) Dantidurga became the first independent Rāṣhṭrakūṭa ruler in the mid-8th century.
(ii) He overthrew the Chālukyas in the Deccan.
(iii) The Rāṣhṭrakūṭas shifted their power centre to present-day Karnataka.
(iv) Their capital was Mānyakheṭa.
(v) They were one of the dominant powers for nearly two centuries.

11. Describe the Pallavas' contribution to architecture.

Answer:

(i) The Pallavas ruled from Kānchī.
(ii) They built many temples and other structures.
(iii) They created monuments at Māmallapuram.
(iv) Their works included temples carved from rock.
(v) The Shore Temple was built during Narasimhavarman II's reign.

12. Write five facts about the kingdoms of southern India during this period.

Answer:

(i) The Pallavas were an important power in the south.
(ii) The Chālukyas competed with the Pallavas.
(iii) The Pāṇḍyas ruled in the far south.
(iv) The Cheras were another important southern kingdom.
(v) The Cholas became a dominant power in the 9th century.

13. Explain how kingdoms were governed during this period.

Answer:

(i) Rulers directly governed their core regions.
(ii) Directly controlled territories were divided into provinces.
(iii) Officials helped administer the provinces.
(iv) Distant regions were often governed through subordinate rulers.
(v) These subordinate rulers were called *sāmantas*.

14. Describe social life during this period.

Answer:

(i) Society included many different social groups.
(ii) The number of *jātis* increased.
(iii) This made society more complex.

(iv) The *varṇa-jāti* system remained flexible.
(v) Social roles and arrangements could vary between regions.

15. Write five details about women's lives during this period.

Answer:

(i) Women's roles differed across regions and social groups.
(ii) Some women worked in agriculture.
(iii) Women also worked in crafts.
(iv) At courts, some women served as musicians, storytellers or attendants.
(v) Inscriptions record women making temple offerings and building water structures.

16. Describe the religious life of this period.

Answer:

(i) Rulers patronised Hindu, Buddhist and Jain traditions.
(ii) These traditions shared some ideas and artistic forms.
(iii) Buddhism thrived in eastern India, especially under the Pālas.
(iv) Jainism remained popular in western India and Karnataka.
(v) Temple-based Hindu traditions and Bhakti practices spread in many regions.

17. Explain the spread of the Bhakti tradition.

Answer:

(i) Bhakti means devotion to a deity.
(ii) The tradition spread widely from the 6th century onward.
(iii) Its early development was especially strong in the south.
(iv) Devotional poets composed works in regional languages.
(v) Bhakti reached people across social and gender divisions.

18. Write five facts about the Ālvārs and Nāyanārs.

Answer:

(i) The Ālvārs were devotees of Viṣhṇu.
(ii) There were 12 Ālvārs.
(iii) The Nāyanārs were devotees of Śhiva.
(iv) There were 63 Nāyanārs.
(v) Both groups composed devotional literature in Tamil.

19. Describe the advances in mathematics and astronomy during this period.

Answer:

(i) Brahmagupta was a leading mathematician and astronomer.
(ii) He wrote *Brahmasphutasiddhānta*.
(iii) His work explained arithmetic involving zero, negative numbers and fractions.
(iv) Bhāskara I made important contributions to trigonometry.
(v) Scholars improved methods for calculating planetary positions.

20. Describe the Arab invasions and cultural exchanges with India.

Answer:

(i) Arab forces made several attempts to advance into the Indian subcontinent.
(ii) An Arab naval attack at Thāṇā was repulsed in 637 CE.
(iii) Arab forces conquered Sindh in 712 CE.
(iv) Trade between India and Arabia carried goods, ideas, languages and stories.
(v) Sanskrit works were translated into Arabic, and Indian numerals travelled to the Arab world.

3.12 Five-mark questions with Answers of HOTS Type: (20 Questions)

Five-Mark Descriptive Questions — HOTS Type:

1. **How did the rise of regional kingdoms reshape India after the Gupta Empire declined?**
   Answer:
   (i) The decline of Gupta power allowed regional rulers to strengthen their own kingdoms.
   (ii) Several dynasties developed distinct centres of political power.
   (iii) Rival kingdoms competed for important cities and territories.
   (iv) Local rulers and *sāmantas* became important to administration.
   (v) Political rivalry existed alongside regional cultural growth.
2. **What does the Tripartite Struggle reveal about the political importance of Kannauj and the balance of power?**
   Answer:
   (i) The Pālas, Gurjara-Pratīhāras and Rāṣhṭrakūṭas all sought control of Kannauj.
   (ii) Kannauj's location made it an important prize for these powers.
   (iii) The dynasties repeatedly fought during the 8th and 9th centuries.
   (iv) The conflict had no lasting victor.
   (v) The struggle shows that power was divided among strong regional kingdoms.
3. **Assess the strengths and challenges of governing distant territories through *sāmantas*.**
   Answer:
   (i) *Sāmantas* helped rulers govern territories far from their capitals.
   (ii) This system allowed kings to extend their influence over wider regions.
   (iii) Subordinate rulers could administer local areas.
   (iv) A *sāmanta* who gained strength could challenge the ruler.
   (v) The system could therefore support a kingdom and create political instability.
4. **How did Pāla rule connect education, religion and economic activity?**
   Answer:
   (i) Pāla rulers supported Buddhist monasteries and learning centres.
   (ii) Dharmapāla founded Vikramaśhilā.
   (iii) Nālandā and other monasteries attracted students and scholars.
   (iv) Pāla seaports supported trade with Southeast Asia.
   (v) The empire developed as a centre of both learning and trade.
5. **Why can Vikramaśhilā be considered more than a religious institution?**
   Answer:
   (i) It included colleges, lecture halls and a large library.
   (ii) Scholars taught subjects such as grammar, logic and philosophy.
   (iii) Students had to pass an admission test.
   (iv) Scholars from distant places came to study there.
   (v) It helped preserve and develop knowledge traditions.
6. **How did trade help connect India with other regions during this period?**
   Answer:
   (i) Indian traders carried goods such as spices and textiles.
   (ii) Pāla seaports connected eastern India with Southeast Asia.
   (iii) Ships travelled between India and Arabia.
   (iv) Traders carried ideas, languages and stories along with goods.
   (v) Trade linked local economies with distant markets and cultures.
7. **What can monuments such as the Shore Temple tell us about the Pallava period?**
   Answer:
   (i) Pallava rulers supported the construction of temples and other structures.
   (ii) The Shore Temple was built during Narasimhavarman II's reign.

(iii) Māmallapuram became an important site for Pallava architecture.
(iv) The monuments show the artistic skills of the period.
(v) They provide evidence of religious patronage by rulers.

8. **How did changes in dynastic power affect the political history of the Deccan and south India?**
Answer:
(i) The Chālukyas and Pallavas competed for power over several centuries.
(ii) Dantidurga overthrew the Chālukyas and established independent Rāṣhṭrakūṭa rule.
(iii) The Rāṣhṭrakūṭas became a dominant power in the Deccan.
(iv) The Cholas emerged as a dominant power in the 9th century.
(v) These events show that regional political leadership changed over time.
9. **How did support for different religious traditions shape the cultural landscape?**
Answer:
(i) Rulers patronised Hindu, Buddhist and Jain institutions.
(ii) Religious communities shared some ideas, spaces and artistic forms.
(iii) Buddhism flourished in eastern India under the Pālas.
(iv) Jainism remained popular in western India and Karnataka.
(v) The period's religious life was diverse and regionally varied.
10. **How did the Bhakti tradition make devotional ideas accessible to wider groups of people?**
Answer:
(i) Bhakti emphasised personal devotion to a deity.
(ii) Ālvār and Nāyanār poets composed works in Tamil.
(iii) Later Bhakti poets used regional languages in other parts of India.
(iv) Devotional poetry came from people of diverse social backgrounds.
(v) The tradition reached people across gender and social divisions.
11. **What does the growth of *jātis* and the changing social roles in this period tell us about society?**
Answer:
(i) The growth of many *jātis* made society more complex.
(ii) Some groups developed from professional communities.
(iii) Social arrangements could change over time.
(iv) The chapter describes the *varṇa-jāti* system as flexible.
(v) Social life varied across regions and communities.
12. **How do the chapter's examples help us understand women's roles during this period?**
Answer:
(i) Women worked in agriculture and crafts.
(ii) Some women served at courts as musicians, storytellers or attendants.
(iii) Inscriptions record women making offerings to temples.
(iv) Some women arranged for water structures to be built.
(v) Their roles varied by region and social position.
13. **How did scholars' work in mathematics and astronomy serve both knowledge and practical needs?**
Answer:
(i) Brahmagupta explained arithmetic involving zero, negative numbers and fractions.
(ii) His work also described techniques for solving certain equations.
(iii) Bhāskara I contributed to trigonometry.

(iv) Astronomers improved calculations of planetary positions.
(v) Such knowledge supported practical tasks such as preparing calendars.

14. **What does the translation of Sanskrit works into Arabic reveal about cultural exchange?**
Answer:
(i) Sanskrit texts on mathematics, astronomy and medicine were translated.
(ii) Some translations took place in Baghdad.
(iii) Indian knowledge reached readers beyond the subcontinent.
(iv) The Arab world adopted India's decimal numeral system, including zero.
(v) Knowledge moved between cultures through contact and translation.
15. **How did Arab contact with India involve both conflict and exchange?**
Answer:
(i) Arab forces conquered Sindh in 712 CE.
(ii) Earlier Arab attempts to advance into India had faced resistance.
(iii) Arab political control remained limited in much of the subcontinent.
(iv) Trade between India and Arabia had existed for a long time.
(v) Trade and scholarship carried goods and ideas between the regions.
16. **How did Puranic traditions help connect regional cultures with wider religious traditions?**
Answer:
(i) The Purāṇas contained mythology and sacred geography.
(ii) They incorporated local deities and regional myths.
(iii) These stories linked regional beliefs with broader traditions.
(iv) They helped strengthen devotion to deities such as Śhiva and Viṣhṇu.
(v) Religious and cultural connections developed across regions.
17. **What do the period's learning centres and artistic achievements suggest about royal patronage?**
Answer:
(i) Rulers supported monasteries and centres of learning.
(ii) They also patronised temples and other structures.
(iii) Scholars developed mathematics, astronomy and literature.
(iv) Artists created temples, sculptures and other works.
(v) Royal support helped cultural and intellectual life flourish.
18. **Why is it useful to study inscriptions, buildings, coins and written accounts together?**
Answer:
(i) Inscriptions can record rulers, grants and public activities.
(ii) Buildings and sculptures provide evidence of architecture and religious life.
(iii) Coins can show royal titles and symbols.
(iv) Written accounts describe people, places and events.
(v) Together, these sources provide a broader picture of the past.
19. **How did local developments and overseas connections both contribute to the growth of kingdoms?**
Answer:
(i) Strong regional rulers built power within their core territories.
(ii) Subordinate rulers helped them govern wider areas.
(iii) Internal trade supported local economies.
(iv) Maritime routes connected kingdoms with distant markets.
(v) Political strength and trade links helped shape regional growth.

20. **Why should the 6th to 10th centuries be viewed as a period of transformation?**
Answer:
(i) Many regional dynasties rose and competed for power.
(ii) New political and administrative relationships developed.
(iii) Trade connected local economies with distant regions.
(iv) Bhakti and other religious practices reshaped cultural life.
(v) Literature, art, architecture and scientific knowledge advanced.

3.13 Five-mark questions with Answers of Applied Type: (20 Questions)

Five-Mark Descriptive Questions — Applied Type:

1. **Imagine you live in Kannauj during the Tripartite Struggle. What changes might you notice in everyday life?**
Answer:
(i) Rival armies might pass through or camp near the city.
(ii) Trade and travel could be disturbed during conflicts.
(iii) Residents might have to follow the orders of changing rulers.
(iv) People could feel uncertain about safety and taxes.
(v) The city's importance might bring both opportunity and hardship.
2. **You are advising a king who governs distant territories through *sāmantas*. What steps would you recommend to manage this system?**
Answer:
(i) Choose dependable *sāmantas* to govern local areas.
(ii) Keep communication open between the king and subordinate rulers.
(iii) Review how each territory is being governed.
(iv) Build alliances with local leaders and communities.
(v) Watch for signs that a *sāmanta* may be challenging the king's authority.
3. **You are a ruler planning how to govern a large kingdom with faraway regions. How could you use the system described in the chapter?**
Answer:
(i) Govern the core region directly.
(ii) Divide directly controlled territories into administrative units.
(iii) Appoint subordinate rulers to govern distant areas.
(iv) Maintain regular contact with those rulers.
(v) Work to prevent subordinate rulers from becoming rivals.
4. **You are a merchant in the Pāla Empire planning a trading journey. What connections from the chapter could help your business?**
Answer:
(i) Use internal trade routes to reach markets within the empire.
(ii) Travel to east-coast seaports for maritime trade.
(iii) Connect with trading routes to Southeast Asia.
(iv) Carry goods such as textiles or spices for exchange.
(v) Share information and ideas with people met along the way.
5. **You are a ruler deciding whether to support a centre of learning. Give five reasons, using the example of Vikramaśhilā.**
Answer:
(i) A learning centre can attract students from distant regions.
(ii) It can support the study of subjects such as grammar and logic.
(iii) Its library can preserve valuable works.

(iv) Scholars can teach and develop knowledge there.
(v) The centre can strengthen the region's reputation for learning.

6. **You are an architect asked to plan a temple inspired by Pallava buildings. What features from the chapter could guide your design?**
   Answer:
   (i) Study the temples and monuments at Māmallapuram.
   (ii) Include carefully carved stone features.
   (iii) Make the building suitable for worship.
   (iv) Draw inspiration from the Shore Temple.
   (v) Use the design to reflect both artistic skill and religious devotion.
7. **You are creating a museum display about the Tripartite Struggle. What information would you include?**
   Answer:
   (i) Identify Kannauj as the city at the centre of the struggle.
   (ii) Name the Pālas, Gurjara-Pratīhāras and Rāṣhṭrakūṭas.
   (iii) Show their broad regions on a map.
   (iv) Explain that the conflict continued during the 8th and 9th centuries.
   (v) Note that no dynasty achieved a lasting victory.
8. **You are a Bhakti poet who wants to share devotional ideas with local people. What choices could help your poems reach them?**
   Answer:
   (i) Compose the poems in a regional language.
   (ii) Use clear words and familiar examples.
   (iii) Focus on devotion to a deity.
   (iv) Share the poems through singing or recitation.
   (v) Welcome listeners from different social backgrounds.
9. **You are a teacher explaining religious life during this period. How would you show that several traditions received support?**
   Answer:
   (i) Explain that rulers patronised Hindu traditions.
   (ii) Describe the Pālas' support for Buddhist institutions.
   (iii) Mention the continued popularity of Jainism in some regions.
   (iv) Give examples of monasteries, temples or Jain monuments.
   (v) Explain that these traditions contributed to a diverse cultural life.
10. **You are preparing a project on social change during this period. What evidence from the chapter would you use?**
    Answer:
    (i) Explain that many *jātis* developed.
    (ii) Describe how this made society more complex.
    (iii) Note that the *varṇa-jāti* system remained flexible.
    (iv) Include examples of different occupations and social roles.
    (v) Compare how social life could vary across regions.
11. **You are designing an exhibit about women's lives in this period. Which details would you include?**
    Answer:
    (i) Show that some women worked in agriculture.
    (ii) Include women's roles in crafts.
    (iii) Describe court roles such as musician or storyteller.
    (iv) Include inscriptions about women making temple offerings.
    (v) Explain that women's experiences differed across regions and social groups.

12. **You are preparing a mathematics lesson about Brahmagupta. How would you connect his work with students' learning today?**
Answer:
(i) Introduce Brahmagupta as a mathematician and astronomer.
(ii) Name his work, *Brahmasphutasiddhānta*.
(iii) Demonstrate arithmetic involving zero.
(iv) Discuss negative numbers and fractions.
(v) Explain that mathematical knowledge develops across generations.
13. **You are a scholar translating a Sanskrit mathematics text into Arabic. What impact could this work have?**
Answer:
(i) The translation could make the ideas available to Arabic readers.
(ii) It could help carry Indian mathematical knowledge to new regions.
(iii) Readers could study ideas such as the decimal numeral system.
(iv) Scholars could discuss and build on the translated work.
(v) The translation could support exchange between cultures.
14. **You are advising a ruler whose territory faces attacks from outside. What lessons about defence can you draw from the chapter?**
Answer:
(i) Build cooperation among neighbouring kingdoms when possible.
(ii) Protect important routes and strategic locations.
(iii) Maintain a capable army.
(iv) Observe the movements of invading forces.
(v) Strengthen local alliances and administration.
15. **You are a town planner in a region where trade is expanding. What developments could support the town's growth?**
Answer:
(i) Provide spaces where merchants can exchange goods.
(ii) Improve connections with nearby markets.
(iii) Support merchant guilds and trading activity.
(iv) Create routes to ports or other towns.
(v) Encourage safe movement of people and goods.
16. **You are a historian studying Harṣhavardhana's reign. How would you use the chapter's sources?**
Answer:
(i) Read Bāṇabhaṭṭa's *Harṣhacharita* for an account of Harṣha.
(ii) Study Xuanzang's observations as a visitor to India.
(iii) Compare what each source says.
(iv) Check the sources against inscriptions and other evidence.
(v) Use several sources to build a fuller picture of the period.
17. **You are a ruler who wants to encourage learning and religious life. What kinds of patronage from this period could you follow?**
Answer:
(i) Support centres of learning such as monasteries.
(ii) Provide resources for teachers and scholars.
(iii) Encourage the building and care of temples.
(iv) Respect different religious traditions in the kingdom.
(v) Support the preservation of books, art and knowledge.
18. **You are organising a lesson on India-Arab connections. What examples from the chapter would you present?**

Answer:
(i) Explain that ships travelled between India and Arabia.
(ii) Mention the trade in spices and textiles.
(iii) Describe how ideas, languages and stories also travelled.
(iv) Explain that Sanskrit works were translated into Arabic.
(v) Show how Indian numerals reached the Arab world.

19. **A classmate says that this period was only a time of political conflict. How would you use chapter examples to give a fuller picture?**
Answer:
(i) Mention the growth of regional kingdoms and their rivalries.
(ii) Give examples of temples and sculpture from the period.
(iii) Describe the spread of Bhakti traditions.
(iv) Include advances in mathematics and astronomy.
(v) Explain that trade and learning also flourished.
20. **You are planning a history tour to show important developments from this period. Which places would you include, and what would each represent?**
Answer:
(i) Visit Kannauj to discuss Harṣhavardhana and the Tripartite Struggle.
(ii) Visit Nālandā to discuss learning supported by rulers.
(iii) Visit Vikramaśhilā to explore the Pāla contribution to education.
(iv) Visit Māmallapuram to see Pallava architecture.
(v) Visit Shravanabelagola to learn about Jain heritage.

3.14 Multiple Choice Questions with answers for Olympiad type Competitive Exams:

Olympiad-Type Multiple-Choice Questions:
Choose the correct answer for each question.

1. **What political development followed the decline of the Gupta Empire?**
A. A single empire ruled all of India
B. Several regional kingdoms rose
C. India came under Arab rule
D. The Cholas disappeared
Answer: B. Several regional kingdoms rose
2. **Harṣhavardhana's rule began in:**
A. 550 CE
B. 606 CE
C. 647 CE
D. 750 CE
Answer: B. 606 CE
3. **Which city was Harṣhavardhana's capital?**
A. Mānyakheṭa
B. Kānchī
C. Kannauj
D. Bhillamāla
Answer: C. Kannauj
4. **Which Chinese traveller visited India during Harṣhavardhana's reign?**
A. Faxian
B. Xuanzang
C. Marco Polo

D. Megasthenes
Answer: B. Xuanzang

5. **Who wrote *Harṣhacharita*?**
   A. Brahmagupta
   B. Bāṇabhaṭṭa
   C. Dharmapāla
   D. Virahānka
   Answer: B. Bāṇabhaṭṭa
6. **Which ruler died in 647 CE?**
   A. Harṣhavardhana
   B. Gopāla
   C. Dantidurga
   D. Nāgabhaṭa I
   Answer: A. Harṣhavardhana
7. **Which three dynasties fought in the Tripartite Struggle for Kannauj?**
   A. Pālas, Cholas and Pallavas
   B. Chālukyas, Cheras and Pāṇḍyas
   C. Pālas, Gurjara-Pratīhāras and Rāṣhṭrakūṭas
   D. Pallavas, Gurjara-Pratīhāras and Cholas
   Answer: C. Pālas, Gurjara-Pratīhāras and Rāṣhṭrakūṭas
8. **The Tripartite Struggle was mainly a contest for control of:**
   A. Nālandā
   B. Kannauj
   C. Kānchī
   D. Mānyakheṭa
   Answer: B. Kannauj
9. **Who was chosen to restore stability in Bengal in 750 CE?**
   A. Gopāla
   B. Dharmapāla
   C. Bhoja
   D. Dantidurga
   Answer: A. Gopāla
10. **Which dynasty was founded by Gopāla?**
    A. Rāṣhṭrakūṭa
    B. Pāla
    C. Pallava
    D. Gurjara-Pratīhāra
    Answer: B. Pāla
11. **Which Pāla ruler expanded the empire and founded Vikramaśhilā?**
    A. Gopāla
    B. Dharmapāla
    C. King Bhoja
    D. Amoghavarṣha
    Answer: B. Dharmapāla
12. **Which pair consists of learning centres supported by the Pālas?**
    A. Nālandā and Vikramaśhilā
    B. Kānchī and Mānyakheṭa
    C. Ujjayinī and Bhillamāla
    D. Thāṇā and Sindh
    Answer: A. Nālandā and Vikramaśhilā

13. **What was a special feature of admission to Vikramaśhilā?**
    A. Students were selected by merchant guilds
    B. Scholar gatekeepers tested applicants
    C. Only royal family members could study there
    D. Students had to serve in the army first
    Answer: B. Scholar gatekeepers tested applicants
14. **Which dynasty was founded by Nāgabhaṭa I?**
    A. Pāla
    B. Gurjara-Pratīhāra
    C. Rāṣhṭrakūṭa
    D. Chola
    Answer: B. Gurjara-Pratīhāra
15. **Bhillamāla was an early capital of the:**
    A. Gurjara-Pratīhāras
    B. Pallavas
    C. Pāṇḍyas
    D. Cholas
    Answer: A. Gurjara-Pratīhāras
16. **King Bhoja was also known as:**
    A. Gopāla
    B. Mihira
    C. Xuanzang
    D. Dantidurga
    Answer: B. Mihira
17. **Who became the first independent Rāṣhṭrakūṭa ruler?**
    A. Nāgabhaṭa I
    B. Dantidurga
    C. Dharmapāla
    D. Narasimhavarman II
    Answer: B. Dantidurga
18. **What was the capital of the Rāṣhṭrakūṭas?**
    A. Kannauj
    B. Mānyakheṭa
    C. Kānchī
    D. Prayāga
    Answer: B. Mānyakheṭa
19. **Which dynasty ruled from Kānchī?**
    A. Pallavas
    B. Pālas
    C. Rāṣhṭrakūṭas
    D. Gurjara-Pratīhāras
    Answer: A. Pallavas
20. **The Shore Temple at Māmallapuram was built during the reign of:**
    A. Harṣhavardhana
    B. Narasimhavarman II
    C. Dharmapāla
    D. Dantidurga
    Answer: B. Narasimhavarman II
21. **Which two dynasties struggled from the 6th to the 8th centuries?**
    A. Pālas and Cholas

B. Pallavas and Chālukyas
C. Cheras and Rāṣhṭrakūṭas
D. Gurjara-Pratīhāras and Pāṇḍyas
Answer: B. Pallavas and Chālukyas

22. **Which dynasty emerged as a dominant power in the 9th century?**
A. Cholas
B. Guptas
C. Mauryas
D. Hūṇas
Answer: A. Cholas

23. **In the chapter, *sāmantas* were:**
A. Foreign traders
B. Subordinate rulers
C. Buddhist monks
D. Temple architects
Answer: B. Subordinate rulers

24. **What does the term *bhakti* mean?**
A. Trade
B. Devotion
C. Taxation
D. Astronomy
Answer: B. Devotion

25. **The Ālvārs were devotees of:**
A. Śhiva
B. Viṣhṇu
C. the Buddha
D. Bāhubalī
Answer: B. Viṣhṇu

26. **The Nāyanārs were devotees of:**
A. Śhiva
B. Viṣhṇu
C. Brahmā
D. Mahāvīra
Answer: A. Śhiva

27. **In which language did the Ālvārs and Nāyanārs compose devotional literature?**
A. Arabic
B. Persian
C. Tamil
D. Latin
Answer: C. Tamil

28. **Where is the monolithic statue of Bāhubalī located?**
A. Māmallapuram
B. Shravanabelagola
C. Nālandā
D. Kannauj
Answer: B. Shravanabelagola

29. **Who wrote *Brahmasphutasiddhānta*?**
A. Bāṇabhaṭṭa
B. Brahmagupta
C. Bhāskara I

D. Virahānka
Answer: B. Brahmagupta

30. **Which mathematical topics were included in Brahmagupta's work?**
A. Zero, negative numbers and fractions
B. Only geometry and measurement
C. Only calendars and maps
D. Music and sculpture
Answer: A. Zero, negative numbers and fractions

31. **Which scholar is associated with pioneering work in trigonometry?**
A. Bhāskara I
B. Xuanzang
C. Gopāla
D. King Bhoja
Answer: A. Bhāskara I

32. **An Arab naval attack mentioned in the chapter was repulsed at:**
A. Thāṇā
B. Kannauj
C. Kānchī
D. Mānyakheṭa
Answer: A. Thāṇā

33. **Arab forces conquered Sindh in:**
A. 637 CE
B. 650 CE
C. 712 CE
D. 750 CE
Answer: C. 712 CE

34. **Which knowledge system travelled from India to the Arab world?**
A. The decimal numeral system, including zero
B. The Tripartite Struggle
C. The *sāmanta* system
D. Pallava rock-cut architecture
Answer: A. The decimal numeral system, including zero

35. **Sanskrit works translated into Arabic included texts on:**
A. Mathematics, astronomy and medicine
B. Painting, dance and music only
C. Farming, weaving and pottery only
D. Law, drama and sculpture only
Answer: A. Mathematics, astronomy and medicine

36. **Which activity helped connect Pāla seaports with Southeast Asia?**
A. Maritime trade
B. The Tripartite Struggle
C. Temple construction
D. Land grants
Answer: A. Maritime trade

37. **Which statement about rulers during this period is accurate?**
A. They directly controlled every part of India
B. They governed core regions directly and some distant areas through subordinate rulers
C. They ruled only through merchant guilds
D. They had no administrative divisions

Answer: B. They governed core regions directly and some distant areas through subordinate rulers

38. **Which set of religious traditions received patronage during this period?**
    A. Hinduism, Buddhism and Jainism
    B. Only Buddhism
    C. Only Hinduism and Islam
    D. Only Jainism and Christianity
    Answer: A. Hinduism, Buddhism and Jainism
39. **Which development helped connect local economies with distant markets?**
    A. Trade
    B. Court poetry
    C. Temple sculpture
    D. Astronomy
    Answer: A. Trade
40. **Which statement best describes the period covered in the chapter?**
    A. It was a time of political change and cultural development.
    B. It had no important kingdoms or cultural achievements.
    C. One empire ruled all of India continuously.
    D. Trade and learning disappeared.
    Answer: A. It was a time of political change and cultural development.

3.15 Best Practices Opportunity List from the Chapter: (12 Ideas)

Best Practices for Teaching "Empires and Kingdoms: 6th to 10th Centuries":

(1) Begin with a timeline: Have students place Harṣhavardhana's reign, the rise of the Pālas and the Arab conquest of Sindh in chronological order.

(2) Use a labelled map: Ask students to locate Kannauj, Mānyakheṭa, Kānchī, Māmallapuram, Nālandā and Vikramaśhilā.

(3) Make a dynasty comparison chart: Compare the Pālas, Gurjara-Pratīhāras, Rāṣhṭrakūṭas, Pallavas and Cholas by region, capital, notable rulers and contributions.

(4) Teach the Tripartite Struggle visually: Let students mark the approximate regions of the three dynasties and trace their competition for Kannauj.

(5) Use short source excerpts: Read brief passages about Xuanzang or *Harṣhacharita* and discuss what each source can tell us about the period.

(6) Explain unfamiliar terms before the lesson: Introduce words such as *sāmanta*, *jāti*, *Bhakti* and "Tripartite" using simple definitions and examples.

(7) Connect monuments to rulers and places: Use images of the Shore Temple and Māmallapuram monuments, then have students identify their location, dynasty and historical importance.

(8) Organise a structured group task: Assign groups different themes—politics, trade, society, religion, architecture or science—and have each share three key facts.

(9) Link history with other subjects: Connect Brahmagupta's work on zero and negative numbers to mathematics, and the numeral system's transmission to geography and cultural exchange.

(10) Use a classroom role-play: Ask students to take the roles of a ruler, *sāmanta*, merchant, scholar or traveller and describe one aspect of life in the period.

(11) Include regional-language and devotional connections: Discuss why Ālvār and Nāyanār poetry composed in Tamil could reach people beyond royal courts.

(12) **Check understanding throughout the lesson:** Use short map questions, timeline ordering, exit tickets or a quick quiz to identify what students have understood and what needs review.

These teaching ideas are based on the chapter's dynasties, places, sources and developments in trade, society, religion, architecture and science.

3.16 Innovations Opportunity List from the Chapter: (12 Ideas)

Innovations in Teaching and Learning:

(1) **Interactive dynasty map:** Students add kingdom labels, capitals and regions to a shared digital map as they learn.
(2) **Tripartite Struggle strategy game:** Teams represent the Pālas, Gurjara-Pratīhāras and Rāṣhṭrakūṭas, using map clues to explain why each sought Kannauj.
(3) **Choose-your-route history adventure:** Students follow a fictional traveller's journey from Kannauj to Mānyakheṭa, Kānchī and Māmallapuram, collecting facts at each stop.
(4) **Student-made timeline video:** Small groups create a short narrated video linking key dates such as Harṣhavardhana's accession, the rise of the Pālas and the Arab conquest of Sindh.
(5) **Virtual museum gallery:** Students curate a classroom or online exhibition of monuments, coins, manuscripts and learning centres from the chapter.
(6) **Historical news broadcast:** Students present a mock news report about the struggle for Kannauj, the growth of the Pālas or the Arab arrival in Sindh.
(7) **"Build a learning centre" design challenge:** Teams design a model of a centre inspired by Vikramaśhilā, including places for teaching, study and a library.
(8) **Trade-route simulation:** Students exchange cards representing goods, ideas and knowledge to model links between India, Arabia and Southeast Asia.
(9) **Bhakti poetry performance:** Students write or perform a short original devotional poem in a language they know, then connect it to the Ālvār and Nāyanār traditions.
(10) **Digital comparison cards:** Students create illustrated cards comparing dynasties by region, capital, ruler and contribution, then use them in a peer quiz.
(11) **"A day in the past" audio diary:** Students record a short diary entry from the imagined viewpoint of a merchant, student, artisan or traveller in this period.
(12) **Numeral transmission activity:** Students trace how India's decimal numeral system travelled through the Arab world, using a simple animated diagram or classroom role-play.

These ideas draw on the chapter's kingdoms, travel, trade, learning centres, Bhakti traditions, architecture and scientific achievements.

3.17: Practicing Questions/Question Bank:

Question Bank: "Empires and Kingdoms: 6th to 10th Centuries":

A. Fill in the Blanks:

1. Harṣhavardhana's rule began in _____ CE.

Answer: 606

2. Harṣhavardhana ruled from the city of _____.

Answer: Kannauj

3. The three dynasties that fought for Kannauj included the Pālas, Gurjara-Pratīhāras and _____.

Answer: Rāṣhṭrakūṭas

4. _____ was the first king of the Pāla dynasty.

Answer: Gopāla

5. Dharmapāla founded the learning centre of _____.

Answer: Vikramaśhilā

6. The Rāṣhṭrakūṭa capital was _____.

Answer: Mānyakheṭa

7. The Pallavas built important temples at _____.

Answer: Māmallapuram

8. The Ālvārs were devotees of _____.

Answer: Viṣhṇu

9. The mathematician _____ wrote *Brahmasphutasiddhānta*.

Answer: Brahmagupta

10. Arab forces conquered Sindh in _____ CE.

Answer: 712

B. One-Mark Descriptive Questions:

1. **Who was Xuanzang?**
   Answer: Xuanzang was a Chinese traveller who visited India during the 7th century.

2. **Who wrote *Harṣhacharita*?**
   Answer: Bāṇabhaṭṭa wrote *Harṣhacharita*.

3. **What were *sāmantas*?**
   Answer: *Sāmantas* were subordinate rulers who governed territories under a more powerful king.

4. **What does *bhakti* mean?**
   Answer: *Bhakti* means devotion to a deity.

5. **Where is the monolithic statue of Bāhubalī located?**
   Answer: It is located at Shravanabelagola in Karnataka.

C. Two-Mark Descriptive Questions:

1. **Name the three dynasties that fought in the Tripartite Struggle.**
   Answer:
   (i) The Pālas and Gurjara-Pratīhāras took part in the struggle.
   (ii) The Rāṣhṭrakūṭas were the third power.

2. **Name two learning centres supported by the Pālas.**
   Answer:

(i) The Pālas supported Nālandā.
(ii) They also supported Vikramaśhilā.

3. **Who were the Ālvārs and Nāyanārs?**
Answer:
(i) The Ālvārs were devotees of Viṣhṇu.
(ii) The Nāyanārs were devotees of Śhiva.

4. **State two contributions of Brahmagupta.**
Answer:
(i) He explained arithmetic involving zero, negative numbers and fractions.
(ii) He wrote *Brahmasphutasiddhānta*.

5. **How did trade connect India with other regions?**
Answer:
(i) Ships carried goods such as spices and textiles between India and other regions.
(ii) Traders also carried ideas, languages and stories.

D. Three-Mark Descriptive Questions:

1. **Write three facts about Harṣhavardhana.**
Answer:
(i) His rule began in 606 CE.
(ii) He ruled from Kannauj.
(iii) He welcomed Xuanzang and patronised scholars.

2. **Explain the Tripartite Struggle.**
Answer:
(i) It was a struggle for control of Kannauj.
(ii) It involved the Pālas, Gurjara-Pratīhāras and Rāṣhṭrakūṭas.
(iii) It continued during the 8th and 9th centuries without a lasting victor.

3. **How did the Pallavas contribute to architecture?**
Answer:
(i) They built temples and other structures.
(ii) They created important monuments at Māmallapuram.
(iii) The Shore Temple was built during Narasimhavarman II's reign.

4. **Describe three features of the Bhakti tradition.**
Answer:
(i) Bhakti focused on personal devotion to a deity.
(ii) Devotional poetry was often composed in regional languages.
(iii) The tradition reached people from diverse social backgrounds.

5. **State three developments in trade during this period.**
Answer:
(i) Merchant guilds became important.
(ii) Trade connected local economies with distant markets.
(iii) Maritime routes linked India with regions such as Southeast Asia and Arabia.

E. Five-Mark Descriptive Questions:

1. **Describe the political situation in India after the decline of the Gupta Empire.**
Answer:
(i) The Gupta Empire lost its dominance.

(ii) Several regional kingdoms rose across India.
(iii) Harṣhavardhana ruled from Kannauj in the 7th century.
(iv) The Pālas, Gurjara-Pratīhāras and Rāṣhṭrakūṭas became powerful.
(v) No single power maintained lasting control over the whole subcontinent.

2. **Explain how the Pālas supported learning and trade.**
Answer:
(i) The Pālas supported the learning centre at Nālandā.
(ii) Dharmapāla founded Vikramaśhilā.
(iii) The monasteries attracted students and scholars from distant regions.
(iv) Internal trade helped the Pāla economy.
(v) Seaports supported maritime trade with Southeast Asia.

3. **Describe the spread of the Bhakti tradition.**
Answer:
(i) Bhakti means devotion to a deity.
(ii) The tradition spread widely from the 6th century onward.
(iii) Its early development was strong in southern India.
(iv) The Ālvārs composed devotional works in Tamil and worshipped Viṣhṇu.
(v) The Nāyanārs composed devotional works in Tamil and worshipped Śhiva.

4. **Explain the contributions of scholars to mathematics and astronomy during this period.**
Answer:
(i) Brahmagupta was an important mathematician and astronomer.
(ii) He wrote *Brahmasphutasiddhānta*.
(iii) His work explained operations involving zero, negative numbers and fractions.
(iv) Bhāskara I made important contributions to trigonometry.
(v) Astronomers developed methods for calculating planetary positions.

5. **Describe the connections between India and the Arab world.**
Answer:
(i) India and Arabia were connected through trade.
(ii) Ships carried spices and textiles across the Arabian Sea.
(iii) Traders also carried ideas, languages and stories.
(iv) Sanskrit works on mathematics, astronomy and medicine were translated into Arabic.
(v) India's decimal numeral system, including zero, travelled through the Arab world.

****

7th Standard Social Science Book (Part 2) Chapter 4

Chapter 4: Turning Tides: 11th and 12th Centuries

4.1 Summary of the Chapter:

Summary: "Turning Tides: 11th and 12th Centuries":

(1) The 11th and 12th centuries were a period of transition: Turkic invasions reached deeper into north India, while many Indian kingdoms continued to rule, create and trade.

(2) The Hindu Shāhis and their allies resisted invasions near the Khyber Pass, an important route for armies, traders and Buddhist travellers.

(3) Mahmūd of Ghazni conducted 17 campaigns in India, gathering wealth and causing destruction. He did not establish permanent rule beyond Punjab.

(4) The Persian scholar al-Bīrūnī learned Sanskrit and studied Indian texts. His writings described India's religions, literature, geography and sciences.

(5) Bhāskarāchārya made important contributions to mathematics and astronomy. His works included *Līlāvatī*, which teaches mathematics through problems, and *Bījagaṇita*, on algebra.

(6) New regional powers rose across India. These included the Senas in Bengal, Eastern Gangas in Kalinga, Kākatīyas and Hoysalas in the south, and Paramāras in Malwa.

(7) The Cholas built a powerful empire and conducted naval expeditions. Rājarāja Chola built the Bṛihadīśhvara temple, while his son Rājendra Chola I led an expedition to Southeast Asia.

(8) The Paramāra ruler Bhoja was both a king and a scholar. He supported learning, wrote on several subjects and was associated with public works, including a large lake for irrigation and water management.

(9) Muhammad Ghūrī sought territorial conquest in India. After defeating Pṛithvīrāja III at the Second Battle of Tarain in 1192, his commanders expanded control over parts of north India.

(10) Bakhtiyār Khiljī conquered parts of Bihar and Bengal and destroyed major centres of learning, including Nālandā and Vikramaśhilā. Local forces in Kāmarūpa later inflicted severe losses on his army.

(11) Agriculture remained the mainstay of the economy, supported in some areas by irrigation works. Internal and overseas trade continued, with merchant guilds, seaports and shipyards linking India to China and Southeast Asia.

(12) Despite warfare and political change, temple building, literature, science and religious life flourished. Thinkers such as Rāmānuja and Basaveśhvara shared influential ideas, while trade helped Indian cultural traditions spread abroad.

4.2 Important Formulas:

Important Guidelines for Answering Qualitative Questions:

Use these points to organise answers about the chapter on the 11th and 12th centuries.

(1) **Set the time period clearly.** The chapter focuses on the 11th and 12th centuries, a time of political change and transition.

(2) **Locate events on a map.** Identify places such as Ghazni, the Khyber Pass, Punjab, Kannauj, Bengal, Malwa and the Deccan.

(3) **Name the ruler and dynasty accurately.** For example, distinguish Mahmūd of Ghazni from Muhammad Ghūrī, and Bhoja Paramāra from the earlier Gurjara-Pratīhāra ruler Bhoja.

(4) **Distinguish raids from territorial conquest.** Mahmūd of Ghazni raided India and returned to Ghazni; Muhammad Ghūrī sought to conquer territory and left commanders to consolidate control.
(5) **Use dates to keep events in order.** Useful dates include Mahmūd's campaigns in the early 11th century, the battles of Tarain in 1191 and 1192, and the events involving Bakhtiyār Khiljī around 1203–1206.
(6) **Explain resistance and alliances.** Mention how Indian rulers resisted invaders, formed alliances at times, and defended key routes or regions.
(7) **Describe both change and continuity.** Turkic invasions changed political control in parts of north India, while many Indian kingdoms, trade networks and cultural traditions continued.
(8) **Connect geography with historical events.** Explain why the Khyber Pass mattered as a route for armies, traders and Buddhist travellers.
(9) **Support points with examples.** Use examples such as Rājendra Chola's naval expedition, Bhoja's lake and public works, or the temples at Khajuraho.
(10) **Include economic and cultural life.** Remember agriculture, irrigation, merchant guilds, overseas trade, literature, science and temple building.
(11) **Refer to sources carefully.** When using travellers' accounts, chronicles, inscriptions or oral histories, identify the source and consider what it can tell us.
(12) **End with the chapter's broader message.** Link conflict and political change with continued learning, creativity, trade and cultural influence abroad.

4.3 Fill-Up the Blank LOTS type questions with Answers: (45 Questions)

Fill in the Blanks — LOTS Type:

1. The chapter focuses on the _____ and _____ centuries.
Answer: 11th; 12th
2. The Khyber Pass lies through the _____ range.
Answer: Hindu Kush
3. The Hindu Shāhis controlled the Khyber Pass and resisted invasions into the _____.
Answer: subcontinent
4. The capital of the Ghaznavids was _____.
Answer: Ghazna
5. The Ghaznavid ruler known as Mahmūd of Ghazni defeated the Hindu Shāhi ruler _____.
Answer: Jayapāla
6. Mahmūd defeated Jayapāla's son Ānandapāla in _____ CE.
Answer: 1008
7. Mahmūd of Ghazni conducted _____ campaigns in India.
Answer: 17
8. Mahmūd reached the wealthy city of Mathura in _____ CE.
Answer: 1018
9. The Somnath temple was located in present-day _____.
Answer: Gujarat
10. Mahmūd of Ghazni died in _____ CE.
Answer: 1030
11. The Persian scholar who accompanied Mahmūd on some campaigns was _____.
Answer: al-Bīrūnī
12. Al-Bīrūnī learned _____ to study Indian texts.
Answer: Sanskrit

13. Al-Bīrūnī translated Patanjali's _____ into Arabic.
Answer: *Yogasūtras*
14. Bhāskarāchārya was born in _____ CE.
Answer: 1114
15. Bhāskarāchārya's work *Līlāvatī* teaches basic mathematics through _____ and problems.
Answer: riddles
16. Bhāskarāchārya wrote *Bījagaṇita* on advanced _____.
Answer: algebra
17. Bhāskarāchārya's work on advanced astronomical calculations was called _____.
Answer: *Siddhāntaśhiromaṇi*
18. After the decline of the Pālas, the _____ dynasty became a dominant power in much of Bengal.
Answer: Sena
19. The Sena dynasty's capital was _____.
Answer: Nādīya
20. The poet Jayadeva wrote the famous work _____.
Answer: *Gītagovindam*
21. The *Gītagovindam* tells the story of Kṛiṣhṇa and _____.
Answer: Rādhā
22. The Eastern Gangas initiated the construction of the _____ temple at Puri.
Answer: Jagannātha
23. Rājarāja Chola ruled from _____ to _____ CE.
Answer: 985; 1014
24. Rājendra Chola I was the son of _____.
Answer: Rājarāja Chola I
25. Rājendra Chola I led a naval expedition to _____ in 1025 CE.
Answer: Southeast Asia
26. Rājendra Chola received the title "Gangaikoṇḍachola," meaning the Chola who conquered the _____.
Answer: Ganga
27. The Paramāras established an independent power in the region of _____.
Answer: Malwa
28. The Paramāra capital was _____.
Answer: Dhārā
29. The famous scholar-king of the Paramāras was _____.
Answer: Bhoja
30. Bhoja built a large lake for irrigation and _____ management.
Answer: water
31. Bhoja built the unfinished _____ Temple.
Answer: Bhojeshwar
32. The ruler who defeated Muhammad Ghūrī near Mount Abu in 1178 was _____.
Answer: Mūlarāja II
33. Pṛithvīrāja III defeated Muhammad Ghūrī at the First Battle of _____ in 1191.
Answer: Tarain
34. Muhammad Ghūrī defeated Pṛithvīrāja III at the Second Battle of Tarain in _____.
Answer: 1192
35. Muhammad Ghūrī left his trusted commander _____ to consolidate his gains in India.

Answer: Qutb-ud-din Aibak

36. Bakhtiyār Khiljī conquered parts of _____ and Bengal.

Answer: Bihar

37. Bakhtiyār Khiljī's campaigns destroyed important centres of learning, including Nālandā and _____.

Answer: Vikramaśhilā

38. The local ruler who defeated Bakhtiyār Khiljī's forces in Kāmarūpa was the ruler of _____.

Answer: Kāmarūpa

39. Agriculture remained the mainstay of the _____.

Answer: economy

40. Rulers supported irrigation works to reduce the effects of seasonal _____.

Answer: rains

41. The Chālukya ruler Someśhvara III wrote the 12th-century encyclopaedia _____.

Answer: *Mānasollāsa*

42. Rāmānuja developed the school of _____ Vedānta.

Answer: viśhiṣhṭādvaita

43. Basaveśhvara founded the _____ movement.

Answer: Lingāyat

44. Basaveśhvara's short poems in Kannada are known as _____.

Answer: vachanas

45. Angkor Wat was built in the 12th century by the Khmer king _____.

Answer: Sūryavarman II

4.4 Fill-Up the Blank HOTS type questions with Answers: (40 Questions)

Fill in the Blanks — HOTS Type:

1. Since the Khyber Pass connected the subcontinent with Central Asia, controlling it gave the Hindu Shāhis an important _____ advantage.

Answer: strategic

2. Because traders and Buddhist monks also travelled through the Khyber Pass, it served as both a military route and a _____ route.

Answer: trade and travel

3. When several Indian rulers supported Ānandapāla against Mahmūd, their action showed the importance of forming _____ against an invading army.

Answer: alliances

4. Mahmūd returned to Ghazni with booty after his campaigns, which indicates that his Indian campaigns were mainly _____.

Answer: raids for plunder

5. Muhammad Ghūrī left commanders to secure the lands he conquered, showing that he aimed for lasting _____.

Answer: territorial control

6. Pṛithvīrāja III defeated Muhammad Ghūrī in 1191, but Ghūrī won the next battle in 1192; this shows how a later campaign could _____ the balance of power.

Answer: change

7. The difference between Mahmūd's raids and Muhammad Ghūrī's conquests was that Ghūrī sought to establish _____ in India.

Answer: political control

8. When Bakhtiyār Khiljī destroyed Nālandā and Vikramaśhilā, the loss affected both Buddhist institutions and centres of _____.

Answer: learning

9. The destruction of major Buddhist monasteries contributed to the _____ of Buddhism in India.

Answer: decline

10. Al-Bīrūnī learned Sanskrit and studied Indian texts, showing that scholarly _____ could continue even during a period of conflict.

Answer: exchange

11. Bhāskarāchārya used riddles and problems in *Līlāvatī*, making mathematics more _____ for students.

Answer: engaging

12. Because Bhāskarāchārya's works received commentaries and translations, his ideas had a _____ influence.

Answer: long-lasting

13. Bhoja built a large lake to support irrigation and water management, showing how public works could help address _____ rainfall.

Answer: seasonal

14. Bhoja's support for scholars helped make his capital a centre of _____.

Answer: learning

15. Someshvara III's *Mānasollāsa* covered subjects from astronomy to cooking, showing that royal knowledge could be _____.

Answer: wide-ranging

16. The Cholas' naval expedition to Southeast Asia shows that Indian rulers could project their influence across the _____.

Answer: sea

17. The construction of Chola temples and the expedition of Rājendra Chola show the dynasty's strength in both land-based rule and _____ activity.

Answer: maritime

18. Coins and pottery from China and Southeast Asia found on India's west coast provide evidence of _____ trade.

Answer: overseas

19. Since trade continued during political disturbances, economic connections could prove _____.

Answer: resilient

20. Agriculture remained the mainstay of the economy, while trade provided an additional source of _____.

Answer: wealth

21. Irrigation works helped farmers manage the uncertainty of seasonal _____.

Answer: rains

22. The rise of new dynasties across eastern, central and southern India shows that political power remained _____.

Answer: regionally distributed

23. The Senas supported Hindu thought and literature after the Pālas declined, showing a change in the kind of _____ encouraged by rulers.

Answer: religious and literary patronage

24. Jayadeva's *Gītagovindam* tells the story of Kṛiṣhṇa and Rādhā, showing how literature could express _____ ideas.

Answer: religious

25. The Eastern Gangas formed matrimonial alliances with the Cholas but also fought them, showing that relations between kingdoms could involve both cooperation and _____.

Answer: conflict

26. Basaveśhvara rejected caste distinctions and ritualism, showing that religious movements could also seek _____ change.

Answer: social

27. Basaveśhvara's Anubhava Maṇḍapa welcomed people from different backgrounds, encouraging discussion and _____.

Answer: exchange of ideas

28. Rāmānuja emphasised devotion and surrender to the divine, showing how philosophical thought could support the path of _____.

Answer: bhakti

29. Angkor Wat first honoured Viṣhṇu and was later converted into a Buddhist temple, showing that religious sites could _____ over time.

Answer: change their religious use

30. Angkor Wat's similarities with south Indian temples provide evidence of India's cultural influence in _____.

Answer: Southeast Asia

31. Since large parts of north India and all of south India remained outside Turkic control, the invasions did not result in the conquest of _____.

Answer: the whole subcontinent

32. Native kingdoms sometimes formed coalitions against invaders, showing that political rivals could cooperate when they faced a _____.

Answer: common threat

33. The survival of trade, literature and temple building during warfare shows that cultural life could continue through periods of _____.

Answer: conflict

34. The chapter describes both destruction and creative achievement, so the period is best understood as one of change and _____.

Answer: continuity

35. When Indian traditions spread abroad through trade, merchants acted as carriers of both goods and _____.

Answer: culture

36. The Khyber Pass's importance to both armies and caravans shows that geography can shape military and _____ history.

Answer: economic

37. Bhoja's lake supported irrigation, while his writings supported learning; together, these achievements show attention to both public welfare and _____.

Answer: scholarship

38. The fact that rulers fought each other while also sometimes forming alliances shows that political relationships were _____.

Answer: complex

39. Bhāskarāchārya's teaching works and Someśvara III's encyclopaedia show that knowledge developed across different _____.

Answer: subjects

40. The continued growth of trade and culture despite invasions reflects the chapter's theme of India's _____.

Answer: resilience

4.5 One-mark questions with Answers of LOTS Type: (40 Questions)

One-Mark Descriptive Questions — LOTS Type:

1. **Which centuries are covered in the chapter?**
   Answer: The chapter covers the 11th and 12th centuries.

2. **Which mountain range does the Khyber Pass cross?**
   Answer: The Khyber Pass crosses the Hindu Kush range.
3. **Which dynasty controlled the Khyber Pass during the period described?**
   Answer: The Hindu Shāhi dynasty controlled the Khyber Pass.
4. **What was the capital of the Ghaznavids?**
   Answer: The Ghaznavid capital was Ghazna, in present-day Afghanistan.
5. **How many campaigns did Mahmūd of Ghazni conduct in India?**
   Answer: Mahmūd of Ghazni conducted 17 campaigns in India.
6. **Which ruler did Mahmūd defeat in the early 11th century?**
   Answer: Mahmūd defeated the Hindu Shāhi ruler Jayapāla.
7. **In which year did Mahmūd defeat Ānandapāla?**
   Answer: Mahmūd defeated Ānandapāla in 1008 CE.
8. **Which wealthy city did Mahmūd reach in 1018 CE?**
   Answer: Mahmūd reached Mathura in 1018 CE.
9. **Where was the Somnath temple located?**
   Answer: The Somnath temple was in present-day Gujarat.
10. **Who was the Persian scholar who accompanied Mahmūd on some campaigns?**
    Answer: The Persian scholar was al-Bīrūnī.
11. **Which language did al-Bīrūnī learn to study Indian texts?**
    Answer: Al-Bīrūnī learned Sanskrit.
12. **Which Sanskrit work by Patanjali did al-Bīrūnī translate into Arabic?**
    Answer: He translated Patanjali's *Yogasūtras* into Arabic.
13. **What was Bhāskarāchārya's birth year?**
    Answer: Bhāskarāchārya was born in 1114 CE.
14. **Which of Bhāskarāchārya's works teaches mathematics through riddles and problems?**
    Answer: *Līlāvatī* teaches mathematics through riddles and problems.
15. **Which work by Bhāskarāchārya deals with advanced algebra?**
    Answer: *Bījagaṇita* deals with advanced algebra.
16. **Which dynasty became dominant in much of Bengal after the Pālas declined?**
    Answer: The Sena dynasty became dominant in much of Bengal.
17. **What was the Sena dynasty's capital?**
    Answer: The Sena dynasty's capital was Nādīya.
18. **Who wrote *Gītagovindam*?**
    Answer: Jayadeva wrote *Gītagovindam*.
19. **Which temple's construction was initiated by the Eastern Gangas?**
    Answer: The Eastern Gangas initiated the construction of the Jagannātha temple at Puri.
20. **Which Chola ruler reigned from 985 to 1014 CE?**
    Answer: Rājarāja Chola ruled from 985 to 1014 CE.
21. **Who led a Chola naval expedition to Southeast Asia in 1025 CE?**
    Answer: Rājendra Chola I led the naval expedition.
22. **What was the capital of the Paramāras?**
    Answer: The Paramāra capital was Dhārā.
23. **Who was the famous scholar-king of the Paramāras?**
    Answer: Bhoja was the famous scholar-king of the Paramāras.
24. **What public work by Bhoja helped with irrigation and water management?**
    Answer: Bhoja built a large lake for irrigation and water management.
25. **Which temple built by Bhoja remains unfinished?**
    Answer: The Bhojeshwar Temple remains unfinished.

26. **Who defeated Muhammad Ghūrī near Mount Abu in 1178 CE?**
    Answer: The Chaulukya king Mūlarāja II defeated Muhammad Ghūrī.
27. **Who defeated Muhammad Ghūrī at the First Battle of Tarain in 1191 CE?**
    Answer: Pṛithvīrāja III defeated Muhammad Ghūrī at the First Battle of Tarain.
28. **Who won the Second Battle of Tarain in 1192 CE?**
    Answer: Muhammad Ghūrī won the Second Battle of Tarain.
29. **Which general did Muhammad Ghūrī leave to consolidate his gains in India?**
    Answer: Muhammad Ghūrī left Qutb-ud-din Aibak to consolidate his gains.
30. **Who led campaigns into Bihar and Bengal near the end of the 12th century?**
    Answer: Bakhtiyār Khiljī led campaigns into Bihar and Bengal.
31. **Which two learning centres were destroyed during Bakhtiyār Khiljī's campaigns?**
    Answer: Nālandā and Vikramaśhilā were destroyed during his campaigns.
32. **Which local kingdom inflicted severe losses on Bakhtiyār Khiljī's army in 1205 CE?**
    Answer: The ruler of Kāmarūpa inflicted severe losses on Bakhtiyār Khiljī's army.
33. **What was the mainstay of the economy during this period?**
    Answer: Agriculture was the mainstay of the economy.
34. **Which Chālukya ruler wrote the encyclopaedia *Mānasollāsa*?**
    Answer: Someśvara III wrote *Mānasollāsa*.
35. **Which school of Vedānta did Rāmānuja develop?**
    Answer: Rāmānuja developed viśhiṣhṭādvaita Vedānta.
36. **Which religious movement did Basaveśhvara found?**
    Answer: Basaveśhvara founded the Lingāyat movement.
37. **What are Basaveśhvara's short Kannada poems called?**
    Answer: Basaveśhvara's short Kannada poems are called *vachanas*.
38. **What was the Anubhava Maṇḍapa?**
    Answer: The Anubhava Maṇḍapa was a gathering place for people to discuss life, values and religion.
39. **Who built Angkor Wat in the 12th century?**
    Answer: The Khmer king Sūryavarman II built Angkor Wat.
40. **Which regions received Indian cultural influence through trade during this period?**
    Answer: Indian cultural influence spread to regions including Southeast Asia and China.

4.6 One-mark questions with Answers of HOTS Type: (35 Questions)

One-Mark Descriptive Questions — HOTS Type:

1. **Why was control of the Khyber Pass important to the Hindu Shāhis?**
   Answer: It was a strategic route through which armies could enter the subcontinent.
2. **What does the Khyber Pass's use by traders and Buddhist travellers show?**
   Answer: It connected regions through trade and travel as well as warfare.
3. **What did the support given to Ānandapāla by other rulers demonstrate?**
   Answer: Indian kingdoms could form alliances to resist a common invader.
4. **What does Mahmūd's return to Ghazni with booty after campaigns suggest about his aims?**
   Answer: His campaigns focused heavily on plunder rather than permanent rule across India.

5. **How did Muhammad Ghūrī's approach differ from Mahmūd of Ghazni's?**
   Answer: Ghūrī sought territorial control and left commanders to secure his conquests.
6. **What does the change in the outcome of the two Battles of Tarain show?**
   Answer: Military power and political control could shift quickly between campaigns.
7. **How could the destruction of Nālandā and Vikramaśhilā affect learning?**
   Answer: It damaged important centres where scholars taught and preserved knowledge.
8. **What does al-Bīrūnī's study of Sanskrit texts reveal about his work in India?**
   Answer: He made an effort to understand Indian knowledge through its original sources.
9. **Why is al-Bīrūnī's writing valuable to historians?**
   Answer: It records observations on Indian religion, literature, geography and science.
10. **How did *Līlāvatī* make mathematics more engaging for students?**
    Answer: It taught mathematical ideas through lively riddles and problems.
11. **What does the later translation of Bhāskarāchārya's works suggest about their importance?**
    Answer: His mathematical ideas remained influential beyond his own time and region.
12. **How could Bhoja's lake help people in his kingdom?**
    Answer: It could support irrigation and improve water management.
13. **What does Bhoja's support for scholars tell us about his capital?**
    Answer: His patronage helped make it a recognised centre of learning.
14. **What does the range of subjects in *Mānasollāsa* suggest about royal learning?**
    Answer: It covered many aspects of knowledge, governance and everyday life.
15. **What does the rise of the Senas after the Pālas show about eastern India?**
    Answer: Political leadership and royal cultural patronage changed over time.
16. **What do the Eastern Gangas' alliances and conflicts with the Cholas reveal?**
    Answer: Relations between kingdoms could involve both cooperation and rivalry.
17. **What did Rājendra Chola I's naval expedition demonstrate?**
    Answer: The Cholas could use naval power to project influence overseas.
18. **What do coins and pottery from China and Southeast Asia found in India indicate?**
    Answer: They provide evidence of trade between India and those regions.
19. **Why did irrigation remain important even when trade was active?**
    Answer: Agriculture remained the mainstay of the economy and depended partly on water.
20. **What does the continued activity of merchant guilds during political unrest suggest?**
    Answer: Trade networks could adapt and continue despite disruptions.
21. **Why might wealthy temples have attracted Mahmūd's attention?**
    Answer: They held valuable offerings and treasures that could be plundered.
22. **Why should historians consider al-Bīrūnī's position when reading his account?**
    Answer: He accompanied Mahmūd on campaigns, which shaped the context of his observations.
23. **What does the historical debate about Mahmūd's motives show?**
    Answer: Historians use evidence to examine more than one possible explanation for past events.
24. **What does Muhammad Ghūrī's defeat in Gujarat in 1178 reveal?**
    Answer: Indian rulers could successfully resist his attempts to expand into new regions.

25. **How did the people of Kāmarūpa help weaken Bakhtiyār Khiljī's army?**
Answer: They destroyed food and fodder, leaving the invading army short of supplies.
26. **What does the resistance in Kāmarūpa show about the outcome of invasions?**
Answer: Local resistance and supply difficulties could force an invading army to retreat.
27. **What does the fact that much of south India remained outside Turkic control show?**
Answer: The invasions did not bring all of India under Turkic rule.
28. **What does Angkor Wat's later conversion into a Buddhist temple show?**
Answer: Religious use of a major monument could change with political and cultural developments.
29. **What does Angkor Wat's resemblance to south Indian temples suggest?**
Answer: Indian architectural traditions influenced building in Southeast Asia.
30. **How did Basaveśhvara's teachings challenge social divisions?**
Answer: He rejected caste distinctions and taught the equal spiritual potential of all people.
31. **What was innovative about the Anubhava Maṇḍapa?**
Answer: It brought people from varied backgrounds together to discuss life, values and religion.
32. **How did Rāmānuja connect philosophy with devotional practice?**
Answer: His teaching emphasised bhakti and surrender to the divine as a path to liberation.
33. **What does the continuation of art and literature during invasions reveal about Indian society?**
Answer: Cultural creativity continued in many regions despite political conflict.
34. **Why is this period described as one of both change and continuity?**
Answer: Political power changed while trade, learning and cultural traditions continued.
35. **What broader lesson does the chapter draw from this period?**
Answer: Knowledge, learning and creativity can endure through periods of conflict.

4.7 Two-mark questions with Answers of LOTS Type: (35 Questions)

Two-Mark Descriptive Questions — LOTS Type:

1. **Which centuries does the chapter cover, and what kind of period were they?**
Answer:
(i) The chapter covers the 11th and 12th centuries.
(ii) These centuries were a period of transition in Indian history.
2. **Which route did the Hindu Shāhis control, and through which mountain range did it pass?**
Answer:
(i) The Hindu Shāhis controlled the Khyber Pass.
(ii) It passed through the Hindu Kush range.
3. **What was the capital of the Ghaznavids, and what is it called today?**
Answer:
(i) The Ghaznavid capital was Ghazna.
(ii) It is known today as Ghazni in Afghanistan.
4. **How many campaigns did Mahmūd of Ghazni conduct in India, and what did he take back after them?**

Answer:
(i) Mahmūd conducted 17 campaigns in India.
(ii) He returned to Ghazni with large amounts of booty.

5. **Who was Jayapāla, and who succeeded him as a Hindu Shāhi ruler?**
Answer:
(i) Jayapāla was a Hindu Shāhi ruler defeated by Mahmūd.
(ii) His son Ānandapāla continued the resistance.
6. **What happened at the Battle of Tarain in 1191 and 1192?**
Answer:
(i) Pṛithvīrāja III defeated Muhammad Ghūrī in 1191.
(ii) Muhammad Ghūrī defeated Pṛithvīrāja III in 1192.
7. **How did Mahmūd's aims differ from Muhammad Ghūrī's?**
Answer:
(i) Mahmūd raided India and returned to Ghazni with booty.
(ii) Muhammad Ghūrī sought territorial control and left commanders to secure his conquests.
8. **Who was al-Bīrūnī, and what language did he learn in India?**
Answer:
(i) Al-Bīrūnī was a Persian scholar who studied many fields of knowledge.
(ii) He learned Sanskrit to read Indian texts.
9. **Name two works by Bhāskarāchārya and the subjects they covered.**
Answer:
(i) *Līlāvatī* taught basic mathematics through problems and riddles.
(ii) *Bījagaṇita* discussed advanced algebra.
10. **Which dynasty became powerful in Bengal after the Pālas declined, and what was its capital?**
Answer:
(i) The Sena dynasty became powerful in much of Bengal.
(ii) Its capital was Nādīya.
11. **Who wrote *Gītagovindam*, and whose story does it tell?**
Answer:
(i) Jayadeva wrote *Gītagovindam*.
(ii) It tells the story of Kṛiṣhṇa and Rādhā.
12. **Name two important contributions of the Eastern Gangas.**
Answer:
(i) The Eastern Gangas became a stable power in eastern India.
(ii) They initiated construction of the Jagannātha temple at Puri.
13. **Who was Rājarāja Chola, and who succeeded him?**
Answer:
(i) Rājarāja Chola ruled from 985 to 1014 CE.
(ii) His son Rājendra Chola I succeeded him.
14. **What did Rājendra Chola I do in 1025, and what title did he receive?**
Answer:
(i) He led a naval expedition to Southeast Asia.
(ii) He received the title "Gangaikoṇḍachola."
15. **Which region did the Paramāras rule, and what was their capital?**
Answer:
(i) The Paramāras ruled in Malwa.
(ii) Their capital was Dhārā.

16. **Name two public works associated with Bhoja Paramāra.**
Answer:
(i) Bhoja is credited with founding the town of Bhojpur.
(ii) He built a large lake for irrigation and water management.
17. **What subjects did Bhoja write about? Give two examples.**
Answer:
(i) Bhoja wrote about architecture and town planning.
(ii) He also wrote about governance, medicine and Sanskrit literature.
18. **Who defeated Muhammad Ghūrī in Gujarat in 1178, and where did the battle take place?**
Answer:
(i) The Chaulukya king Mūlarāja II defeated Muhammad Ghūrī.
(ii) The battle took place near Mount Abu.
19. **Who was Qutb-ud-din Aibak, and what role did Muhammad Ghūrī give him?**
Answer:
(i) Qutb-ud-din Aibak was one of Muhammad Ghūrī's generals.
(ii) He was left to consolidate Ghūrī's conquests in India.
20. **Which regions did Bakhtiyār Khiljī conquer, and which learning centres did his campaigns destroy?**
Answer:
(i) Bakhtiyār Khiljī conquered parts of Bihar and Bengal.
(ii) His campaigns destroyed Nālandā and Vikramaśhilā.
21. **How did the forces of Kāmarūpa resist Bakhtiyār Khiljī's expedition?**
Answer:
(i) The local ruler's forces inflicted severe losses on his army.
(ii) Local people destroyed food and fodder, weakening the invading army.
22. **What was the mainstay of the economy, and how did rulers support it?**
Answer:
(i) Agriculture was the mainstay of the economy.
(ii) Rulers supported irrigation works to help manage seasonal rainfall.
23. **Name two types of evidence showing trade with China and Southeast Asia.**
Answer:
(i) Coins from overseas regions have been found in India.
(ii) Pottery from those regions has also been found at Indian sites.
24. **What was *Mānasollāsa*, and who wrote it?**
Answer:
(i) *Mānasollāsa* was a 12th-century encyclopaedia.
(ii) The Chālukya ruler Someśvara III wrote it.
25. **What philosophical school did Rāmānuja develop, and what did it emphasise?**
Answer:
(i) Rāmānuja developed viśhiṣhṭādvaita Vedānta.
(ii) It emphasised bhakti and surrender to the divine.
26. **Who was Basaveśhvara, and what movement did he found?**
Answer:
(i) Basaveśhvara was a royal minister who became a social and religious reformer.
(ii) He founded the Lingāyat movement.
27. **What did Basaveśhvara teach, and what were his Kannada poems called?**
Answer:
(i) He taught personal devotion and dedicated work.
(ii) His short Kannada poems were called *vachanas*.

28. **What was the Anubhava Maṇḍapa, and who could take part in it?**
Answer:
(i) It was a gathering place for discussion about life, values and religion.
(ii) People from different backgrounds could take part.
29. **Who built Angkor Wat, and what was the temple originally dedicated to?**
Answer:
(i) The Khmer king Sūryavarman II built Angkor Wat in the 12th century.
(ii) It was originally dedicated to Viṣhṇu.
30. **What happened to Angkor Wat's religious use later in the 12th century?**
Answer:
(i) The temple was gradually converted into a Buddhist one.
(ii) This followed a change in political power.
31. **Name two ways Indian culture spread to Southeast Asia and China.**
Answer:
(i) External trade carried Indian cultural traditions abroad.
(ii) Religious and architectural ideas also influenced other regions.
32. **What kinds of structures were built at Khajuraho by the Chandellas?**
Answer:
(i) The Chandellas built many large temples at Khajuraho.
(ii) The Kandāriyā Mahādeva and Lakṣhmaṇa temples are notable examples.
33. **What were the two main changes caused by Turkic invasions in parts of north India?**
Answer:
(i) The invasions changed political control in parts of north India.
(ii) They caused plunder and destruction of temples, cities and learning centres.
34. **What forms of cultural life continued during this period?**
Answer:
(i) Trade, art, literature and science continued to develop.
(ii) Monumental architecture and religious life also flourished.
35. **What broad lesson does the chapter draw about India during periods of conflict?**
Answer:
(i) Indian kingdoms and communities showed resilience in the face of conflict.
(ii) Knowledge, learning and creativity continued to endure.

4.8. Two-mark questions with Answers of HOTS Type: (35 Questions)

Two-Mark Descriptive Questions — HOTS Type:

1. **Why was the Khyber Pass important to both armies and travellers?**
Answer:
(i) It provided a route through the Hindu Kush into the subcontinent.
(ii) Traders and Buddhist travellers also used it to travel between regions.
2. **How did control of the Khyber Pass help the Hindu Shāhis resist invasions?**
Answer:
(i) The pass was a key route for armies entering the subcontinent.
(ii) Controlling it helped the Shāhis oppose invasions before they reached the Indus plains.
3. **What does the support given to Ānandapāla by other rulers show?**
Answer:
(i) Indian kingdoms could cooperate against a common threat.
(ii) Their combined support strengthened resistance to Mahmūd's campaign.

4. **How did Mahmūd of Ghazni's campaigns differ from Muhammad Ghūrī's campaigns?**
   Answer:
   (i) Mahmūd raided India and returned to Ghazni with booty.
   (ii) Muhammad Ghūrī sought territorial control and left commanders to secure his gains.
5. **What can al-Bīrūnī's study of Indian texts teach us about cultural contact?**
   Answer:
   (i) He learned Sanskrit to read Indian works.
   (ii) His studies show that knowledge could be explored across cultural boundaries.
6. **Why might historians compare accounts by al-Bīrūnī with other evidence?**
   Answer:
   (i) He accompanied Mahmūd on some campaigns, which shaped the context of his observations.
   (ii) Comparing sources helps historians build a fuller picture of events.
7. **How did Bhāskarāchārya make mathematics engaging for students?**
   Answer:
   (i) He used lively riddles and problems in *Līlāvatī*.
   (ii) His works included clear explanations and demonstrations.
8. **How could Bhoja's lake benefit people beyond providing water?**
   Answer:
   (i) It supported irrigation for agriculture.
   (ii) It helped with water management in the region.
9. **What does Bhoja's support for scholars tell us about his rule?**
   Answer:
   (i) He valued learning and the arts.
   (ii) His patronage helped Dhārā become a centre that attracted scholars and artists.
10. **How did Rājendra Chola I use naval power to extend Chola influence?**
    Answer:
    (i) He led a naval expedition to Southeast Asia.
    (ii) The expedition projected Chola power across the sea.
11. **What do overseas coins and pottery found in India tell us about trade?**
    Answer:
    (i) They provide evidence of contact with China and Southeast Asia.
    (ii) They show that overseas trade continued during this period.
12. **How could irrigation works help farmers when rains were uncertain?**
    Answer:
    (i) Irrigation supplied water to crops when seasonal rainfall varied.
    (ii) It helped reduce the effects of unreliable rains on agriculture.
13. **What does the rise of the Senas after the Pālas show about Bengal?**
    Answer:
    (i) Political power in Bengal shifted from one dynasty to another.
    (ii) The new rulers also supported different religious and literary traditions.
14. **What do the Eastern Gangas' alliances and conflicts with the Cholas reveal?**
    Answer:
    (i) Kingdoms could form alliances through marriage.
    (ii) Neighbouring rulers could also become rivals and fight.
15. **Why might a wealthy temple have attracted Mahmūd's campaigns?**
    Answer:

(i) Temples could hold valuable offerings accumulated over many years.
(ii) Their wealth made them targets for plunder.

16. **What does the outcome of the two Battles of Tarain show?**
Answer:
(i) Pṛithvīrāja III defeated Muhammad Ghūrī in 1191.
(ii) Ghūrī's return with a larger army led to his victory in 1192.
17. **How did the people of Kāmarūpa weaken Bakhtiyār Khiljī's army?**
Answer:
(i) Local forces inflicted severe losses on the invading army.
(ii) People destroyed food and fodder, leaving the army short of supplies.
18. **What does Bakhtiyār Khiljī's defeat in Kāmarūpa show about the challenges faced by invading armies?**
Answer:
(i) Local resistance could cause heavy losses.
(ii) An invading army could be weakened when it could not obtain supplies.
19. **What does the fact that much of India remained outside Turkic control tell us?**
Answer:
(i) Invasions did not bring the whole subcontinent under one foreign power.
(ii) Many Indian kingdoms continued to rule their regions.
20. **How did merchant guilds help trade continue during political disturbances?**
Answer:
(i) Guilds supported organised trading activity.
(ii) They adapted as internal and external trade continued.
21. **Why was agriculture important even though overseas trade was active?**
Answer:
(i) Agriculture remained the mainstay of the economy.
(ii) Trade supported economic activity alongside agricultural production.
22. **What does *Mānasollāsa* reveal about the knowledge valued at a royal court?**
Answer:
(i) It covered subjects such as astronomy, architecture and medicine.
(ii) It also included practical topics such as cooking, music and games.
23. **How did Rāmānuja connect philosophical ideas with religious practice?**
Answer:
(i) His philosophy viewed the world and individual souls as real.
(ii) It emphasised devotion and surrender to the divine as a path to liberation.
24. **How did Basaveśhvara challenge social divisions?**
Answer:
(i) He rejected caste distinctions and ritualism.
(ii) He taught the equal spiritual potential of men and women.
25. **What made the Anubhava Maṇḍapa a distinctive place for discussion?**
Answer:
(i) It welcomed people from varied social, economic, religious and linguistic backgrounds.
(ii) They could gather to discuss life, moral values and religion.
26. **What does Angkor Wat's architecture suggest about connections between India and Southeast Asia?**
Answer:
(i) The temple shared features with south Indian temples.
(ii) This reflects the influence of Indian religious and architectural traditions in Southeast Asia.

27. **What does Angkor Wat's later conversion into a Buddhist temple show?**
    Answer:
    (i) The temple's religious use changed over time.
    (ii) Political and cultural changes could influence how important sites were used.
28. **How could the destruction of Nālandā and Vikramaśhilā affect knowledge traditions?**
    Answer:
    (i) It damaged major institutions where scholars taught and studied.
    (ii) The loss of libraries and manuscripts threatened the preservation of knowledge.
29. **What does the continuation of trade and temple building during conflict show?**
    Answer:
    (i) Economic and cultural activities continued in many regions.
    (ii) Political conflict did not stop all forms of creativity and exchange.
30. **Why is this period described as one of both change and continuity?**
    Answer:
    (i) Invasions and new rulers changed political power in parts of north India.
    (ii) Trade, learning and cultural traditions continued in many regions.
31. **How did external trade help spread Indian culture?**
    Answer:
    (i) Traders carried Indian ideas and traditions to other regions.
    (ii) Indian cultural influence reached Southeast Asia and China.
32. **What does the variety of Bhoja's writings suggest about scholarship in this period?**
    Answer:
    (i) Scholars studied subjects ranging from architecture to medicine.
    (ii) Some rulers, such as Bhoja, also wrote works of their own.
33. **Why did some Indian scientific traditions continue outside areas affected by invasions?**
    Answer:
    (i) Scholars moved to regions that were beyond the invaders' reach.
    (ii) Knowledge continued to be produced in other parts of India.
34. **What does the mix of wars and alliances among kingdoms reveal about politics?**
    Answer:
    (i) Neighbouring kingdoms often competed with one another.
    (ii) They could also form alliances when facing a common enemy.
35. **What broad lesson about resilience can be drawn from the chapter?**
    Answer:
    (i) Conflict caused serious destruction in some regions.
    (ii) Learning, trade and creativity endured in many parts of India.

4.9. Three-mark questions with Answers of LOTS Type: (30 Questions)

Three-Mark Descriptive Questions — LOTS Type:

1. **Why are the 11th and 12th centuries described as a period of transition?**
   Answer:
   (i) Turkic invasions penetrated deeper into north India.
   (ii) New regional powers emerged in different parts of India.
   (iii) Trade, art and learning continued during the period.
2. **Write three facts about the Khyber Pass.**
   Answer:

(i) The Khyber Pass runs through the Hindu Kush range.
(ii) It was an important route into the subcontinent.
(iii) Traders and Buddhist travellers also used it.

3. **Write three facts about Mahmūd of Ghazni's campaigns in India.**
   Answer:
   (i) Mahmūd conducted 17 campaigns in India.
   (ii) He returned to Ghazni with booty after his campaigns.
   (iii) His campaigns involved plunder and destruction.
4. **What happened when Mahmūd campaigned against the Hindu Shāhis?**
   Answer:
   (i) Mahmūd defeated Jayapāla.
   (ii) In 1008, he defeated Jayapāla's son Ānandapāla.
   (iii) The victory gave Mahmūd easier access to the Indus plains.
5. **Write three facts about the attack on Somnath.**
   Answer:
   (i) Somnath was a bustling seaport in present-day Gujarat.
   (ii) Mahmūd's army faced strong local resistance there.
   (iii) Mahmūd's forces destroyed the temple and looted its treasures.
6. **Who was al-Bīrūnī? Give three details about his work.**
   Answer:
   (i) Al-Bīrūnī was a Persian scholar from Khwārizm.
   (ii) He studied many subjects, including mathematics, astronomy and geography.
   (iii) He learned Sanskrit and wrote about Indian knowledge and traditions.
7. **Name three works written by Bhāskarāchārya.**
   Answer:
   (i) *Līlāvatī* teaches basic mathematics through riddles and problems.
   (ii) *Bījagaṇita* deals with advanced algebra.
   (iii) *Siddhāntaśhiromaṇi* covers advanced astronomical calculations.
8. **Write three facts about the Sena dynasty.**
   Answer:
   (i) The Senas became a dominant power in much of Bengal after the Pālas declined.
   (ii) Their capital was Nādīya.
   (iii) They promoted Hindu thought and literature.
9. **Who was Jayadeva? Give two facts about his work.**
   Answer:
   (i) Jayadeva was a poet patronised by the Sena rulers.
   (ii) He wrote *Gītagovindam*.
   (iii) The work tells the story of Kṛiṣhṇa and Rādhā.
10. **Write three facts about the Eastern Gangas.**
    Answer:
    (i) The Eastern Gangas ruled in Kalinga, broadly present-day Odisha.
    (ii) They had both alliances and conflicts with neighbouring kingdoms.
    (iii) They initiated the construction of the Jagannātha temple at Puri.
11. **Write three facts about Rājarāja Chola I.**
    Answer:
    (i) Rājarāja Chola ruled from 985 to 1014 CE.
    (ii) He strengthened the Chola Empire.
    (iii) He built the Bṛihadīśhvara temple at Tanjāvūr.
12. **Write three facts about Rājendra Chola I.**
    Answer:

(i) Rājendra Chola I was the son of Rājarāja Chola I.
(ii) He ruled from 1014 to 1044 CE.
(iii) He led a naval expedition to Southeast Asia in 1025 CE.

13. **Write three facts about the Paramāras.**
Answer:
(i) The Paramāras emerged as an independent power in Malwa.
(ii) Their capital was Dhārā.
(iii) Bhoja was their most famous king.
14. **Describe three achievements of Bhoja Paramāra.**
Answer:
(i) Bhoja supported scholars and promoted Sanskrit literature.
(ii) He is credited with building a large lake for water management.
(iii) He built the unfinished Bhojeshwar Temple.
15. **What were the two Battles of Tarain?**
Answer:
(i) Pṛithvīrāja III defeated Muhammad Ghūrī in the First Battle of Tarain in 1191.
(ii) Muhammad Ghūrī returned with a larger army.
(iii) He defeated Pṛithvīrāja III in the Second Battle of Tarain in 1192.
16. **Write three facts about Muhammad Ghūrī's campaigns in India.**
Answer:
(i) Muhammad Ghūrī brought parts of Punjab and Sindh under his rule.
(ii) His attempt to expand into Gujarat failed in 1178.
(iii) He later captured Delhi and sought territorial control.
17. **Who was Qutb-ud-din Aibak? Give two details about his role.**
Answer:
(i) Qutb-ud-din Aibak was a trusted general of Muhammad Ghūrī.
(ii) He was left to consolidate Ghūrī's gains in India.
(iii) He later founded the Delhi Sultanate.
18. **Write three facts about Bakhtiyār Khiljī's campaigns.**
Answer:
(i) Bakhtiyār Khiljī campaigned in eastern India.
(ii) His forces conquered parts of Bihar and Bengal.
(iii) His campaigns destroyed important Buddhist centres of learning.
19. **How did the forces of Kāmarūpa resist Bakhtiyār Khiljī?**
Answer:
(i) The local ruler's forces inflicted severe losses on his army.
(ii) Local people destroyed food and fodder.
(iii) Bakhtiyār escaped with only a few men.
20. **Describe the importance of Nālandā as a centre of learning.**
Answer:
(i) Nālandā had a large library spread across several buildings.
(ii) Scholars and students from different regions studied there.
(iii) It preserved and taught important works of knowledge.
21. **What was the mainstay of the economy, and how did rulers support it?**
Answer:
(i) Agriculture was the mainstay of the economy.
(ii) Rulers supported irrigation works.
(iii) Irrigation could reduce the effects of uncertain seasonal rains.
22. **Write three facts about trade during this period.**
Answer:

(i) Internal trade connected different parts of India.
(ii) External trade linked India with China and Southeast Asia.
(iii) Merchant guilds supported trading activity.

23. **What was *Mānasollāsa*?**
Answer:
(i) *Mānasollāsa* was an encyclopaedia written in the 12th century.
(ii) It was authored by the Chālukya ruler Someśvara III.
(iii) It covered subjects such as astronomy, architecture, music and medicine.
24. **Write three facts about Rāmānuja.**
Answer:
(i) Rāmānuja was a philosopher-saint from south India.
(ii) He developed the school of viśhiṣhṭādvaita Vedānta.
(iii) His teachings emphasised bhakti and surrender to the divine.
25. **Write three facts about Basaveśhvara.**
Answer:
(i) Basaveśhvara was a royal minister who became a social and religious reformer.
(ii) He founded the Lingāyat movement.
(iii) His Kannada poems are known as *vachanas*.
26. **What was the Anubhava Maṇḍapa?**
Answer:
(i) It was established by Basaveśhvara in Kalyāṇī.
(ii) People from different backgrounds could gather there.
(iii) They discussed life, moral values and religion.
27. **Write three facts about Angkor Wat.**
Answer:
(i) Angkor Wat was built in the 12th century by the Khmer king Sūryavarman II.
(ii) It was originally dedicated to Viṣhṇu.
(iii) It was later gradually converted into a Buddhist temple.
28. **How did Indian culture spread to Southeast Asia and China?**
Answer:
(i) External trade carried cultural traditions abroad.
(ii) Indian religious and aesthetic ideas influenced other regions.
(iii) Angkor Wat is an example of India's cultural influence in Southeast Asia.
29. **What changes did Turkic invasions bring to parts of north India?**
Answer:
(i) They changed political control in parts of north India.
(ii) They caused plunder and destruction in some regions.
(iii) Islam became a new part of India's religious landscape.
30. **What forms of life and culture continued during this period?**
Answer:
(i) Internal and external trade continued.
(ii) Art, literature and science flourished.
(iii) Monumental architecture and religious life developed.

4.10. Three-mark questions with Answers of HOTS Type: (30 Questions)

Three-Mark Descriptive Questions — HOTS Type:

1. **Why was the Khyber Pass important to both the Hindu Shāhis and the invaders?**
Answer:
(i) It was a major route through the Hindu Kush into the subcontinent.

(ii) Controlling it helped the Hindu Shāhis resist invading armies.
(iii) Invaders who passed through it could reach the Indus plains.

2. **What does the support given to Ānandapāla by other rulers show about political cooperation?**
   Answer:
   (i) Rival kingdoms could cooperate when faced with a common threat.
   (ii) Their support strengthened resistance to Mahmūd's campaign.
   (iii) Alliances could influence the outcome of a battle.
3. **How did Mahmūd of Ghazni's campaigns differ from Muhammad Ghūrī's campaigns?**
   Answer:
   (i) Mahmūd conducted raids and returned to Ghazni with booty.
   (ii) Muhammad Ghūrī aimed to gain territorial control.
   (iii) Ghūrī left commanders to consolidate the lands he conquered.
4. **Why did historians study the motives behind Mahmūd's attacks on temples?**
   Answer:
   (i) Temples held wealth accumulated from offerings.
   (ii) Contemporary accounts also describe religious motives for some attacks.
   (iii) Historians compare evidence to understand these complex campaigns.
5. **What does al-Bīrūnī's work show about learning across cultures?**
   Answer:
   (i) He learned Sanskrit to study Indian texts.
   (ii) He wrote about Indian religions, literature, geography and sciences.
   (iii) His work brought knowledge of Indian traditions to readers beyond India.
6. **How did Bhāskarāchārya make mathematical learning more accessible?**
   Answer:
   (i) He used lively riddles and problems in *Līlāvatī*.
   (ii) His works included examples, explanations and proofs.
   (iii) Students continued to study his works for centuries.
7. **What can Bhoja's lake and temple tell us about his rule?**
   Answer:
   (i) The lake supported irrigation and water management.
   (ii) The Bhojeshwar Temple reflects his support for architecture.
   (iii) His public works and patronage served different needs in his kingdom.
8. **How did Rājendra Chola I's naval expedition demonstrate Chola power?**
   Answer:
   (i) The Cholas could organise a large expedition by sea.
   (ii) Their fleet reached Southeast Asia.
   (iii) The expedition projected Chola influence beyond the subcontinent.
9. **What do overseas coins and pottery found in India tell us about trade?**
   Answer:
   (i) They provide evidence of links with China and Southeast Asia.
   (ii) They show that overseas goods reached India.
   (iii) Trade continued despite political disturbances.
10. **Why did irrigation matter in an economy based mainly on agriculture?**
    Answer:
    (i) Agriculture depended partly on seasonal rainfall.
    (ii) Irrigation works helped manage changes in rainfall.
    (iii) Better water management supported farming.

11. **What does the rise of the Senas after the Pālas tell us about Bengal?**
Answer:
(i) Political leadership in Bengal changed over time.
(ii) The Senas promoted Hindu thought and literature.
(iii) Their court supported poets such as Jayadeva.
12. **What do the Eastern Gangas' relations with the Cholas show about neighbouring kingdoms?**
Answer:
(i) The two dynasties formed matrimonial alliances.
(ii) They also fought one another at times.
(iii) Relations between kingdoms could involve both cooperation and conflict.
13. **How did the two Battles of Tarain change political circumstances?**
Answer:
(i) Pṛithvīrāja III defeated Muhammad Ghūrī in 1191.
(ii) Ghūrī returned with a larger army the following year.
(iii) His victory in 1192 helped open the way to capture Delhi.
14. **What does the defeat of Muhammad Ghūrī in Gujarat in 1178 show?**
Answer:
(i) Ghūrī's attempts to expand into Gujarat did not succeed.
(ii) The Chaulukya forces resisted his campaign near Mount Abu.
(iii) Invaders could face strong opposition from regional kingdoms.
15. **How did local resistance weaken Bakhtiyār Khiljī's army in Kāmarūpa?**
Answer:
(i) The local ruler's forces inflicted severe losses.
(ii) People destroyed food and fodder needed by the invading army.
(iii) Bakhtiyār escaped with only a small number of his men.
16. **Why did the destruction of Nālandā and Vikramaśhilā have lasting effects?**
Answer:
(i) Both were major Buddhist centres of learning.
(ii) Their libraries and teaching communities suffered serious damage.
(iii) Historians of Buddhism connect this destruction with Buddhism's decline in India.
17. **What does the continuation of trade during political conflict show?**
Answer:
(i) Trading networks continued to operate in many regions.
(ii) Merchant guilds adapted to changing conditions.
(iii) Economic connections could persist despite warfare.
18. **How did Someśvara III's *Mānasollāsa* reflect the range of knowledge valued at court?**
Answer:
(i) It covered subjects such as astronomy and architecture.
(ii) It also discussed music, medicine, cooking and games.
(iii) Its topics included the duties of kings and aspects of governance.
19. **How did Rāmānuja connect philosophy and religious practice?**
Answer:
(i) He developed the school of viśhiṣhṭādvaita Vedānta.
(ii) His philosophy regarded the world and individual souls as real.
(iii) It emphasised bhakti and surrender to the divine as a path to liberation.
20. **How did Basaveśhvara's teachings challenge social divisions?**
Answer:

(i) He rejected caste distinctions and ritualism.
(ii) He taught personal devotion and dedicated work.
(iii) He promoted the equal spiritual potential of men and women.

21. **What made the Anubhava Maṇḍapa a distinctive institution?**
Answer:
(i) It welcomed people from varied social, economic, religious and linguistic backgrounds.
(ii) Participants gathered to discuss many aspects of life.
(iii) It encouraged the exchange of ideas and moral reflection.
22. **What does Angkor Wat reveal about India's cultural influence in Southeast Asia?**
Answer:
(i) Its architecture shares features with south Indian temples.
(ii) Its inscriptions include Sanskrit.
(iii) Its design and religious traditions reflect cultural connections with India.
23. **What does Angkor Wat's conversion from a Viṣhṇu temple to a Buddhist temple show?**
Answer:
(i) The temple's religious use changed over time.
(ii) The change followed a shift in political power.
(iii) Monuments can reflect changing cultural and religious influences.
24. **Why is this period described as one of both change and continuity?**
Answer:
(i) Turkic invasions changed political power in parts of north India.
(ii) Many regions, including all of south India, remained outside their control.
(iii) Trade, art, literature and learning continued.
25. **How did trade spread Indian culture beyond the subcontinent?**
Answer:
(i) Merchants travelled to regions such as Southeast Asia and China.
(ii) Trade carried cultural traditions along with goods.
(iii) Indian religious and artistic ideas influenced places such as Angkor.
26. **What does the variety of Bhoja's writings reveal about his interests?**
Answer:
(i) He wrote on architecture, town planning and temple construction.
(ii) He also wrote about governance, Sanskrit poetry and medicine.
(iii) His work linked scholarship with practical matters of royal life.
27. **How did scholars help preserve knowledge during this period?**
Answer:
(i) Scholars studied and wrote works on mathematics, astronomy and other subjects.
(ii) Teachers and students continued learning in different regions.
(iii) Some texts were translated or discussed across cultures.
28. **What does the pattern of wars and alliances reveal about relations among kingdoms?**
Answer:
(i) Neighbouring kingdoms often competed with one another.
(ii) Alliances were also formed through diplomacy or marriage.
(iii) Rulers could unite when faced with a common invader.
29. **How did the period's rulers contribute to both public welfare and cultural life?**
Answer:
(i) Some rulers supported irrigation and water-management works.

(ii) They patronised scholars, artists and religious institutions.
(iii) Their building projects included temples and other monuments.

30. **What broader lesson about resilience can be drawn from the chapter?**
Answer:
(i) Invasions caused plunder and destruction in some regions.
(ii) Trade, learning and cultural traditions continued elsewhere.
(iii) Knowledge and creativity endured through periods of conflict.

4.11 Five-mark questions with Answers of LOTS Type: (20 Questions)

Five-Mark Descriptive Questions — LOTS Type:

1. What made the 11th and 12th centuries a period of transition in Indian history?
Answer:
(i) Turkic invasions penetrated deeper into north India.
(ii) New regional powers emerged in different parts of India.
(iii) Political control changed in parts of the north.
(iv) Large parts of north India and all of south India remained outside Turkic control.
(v) Trade, art, literature and learning continued to develop.

2. Write five facts about the Hindu Shāhis and the Khyber Pass.
Answer:
(i) The Hindu Shāhis ruled parts of present-day Afghanistan, northern Pakistan and Punjab.
(ii) They resisted several invasions with help from other Indian rulers.
(iii) They controlled the Khyber Pass.
(iv) The pass crossed the Hindu Kush range.
(v) It was an important route for armies, traders and Buddhist travellers.

3. Describe Mahmūd of Ghazni's campaigns in India.
Answer:
(i) Mahmūd of Ghazni defeated the Hindu Shāhi ruler Jayapāla.
(ii) In 1008 CE, he defeated Jayapāla's son Ānandapāla.
(iii) He conducted 17 campaigns in India.
(iv) His forces attacked places such as Mathura, Kannauj and Somnath.
(v) He returned to Ghazni with booty and did not establish permanent rule beyond Punjab.

4. Who was al-Bīrūnī, and what did he contribute to knowledge about India?
Answer:
(i) Al-Bīrūnī was a Persian scholar from Khwārizm.
(ii) He studied mathematics, astronomy, geography, history and languages.
(iii) He learned Sanskrit and read Indian texts.
(iv) He wrote about Indian religion, philosophy, literature, geography and science.
(v) He translated Patanjali's *Yogasūtras* into Arabic.

5. Write five facts about Bhāskarāchārya and his works.
Answer:
(i) Bhāskarāchārya was born in 1114 CE, probably in present-day Maharashtra.
(ii) He was a noted mathematician and astronomer.
(iii) *Līlāvatī* teaches basic mathematics through riddles and problems.
(iv) *Bījagaṇita* discusses advanced algebra.
(v) *Siddhāntaśhiromaṇi* deals with advanced astronomical calculations.

6. Describe the rise and cultural contributions of the Senas in Bengal.
Answer:
(i) The Senas became the dominant power over much of Bengal after the Pālas declined.
(ii) Their capital was Nādīya.

(iii) Their relations with neighbouring kingdoms were sometimes friendly and sometimes conflictual.
(iv) They promoted Hindu thought and literature.
(v) Their court hosted poets such as Jayadeva, who wrote *Gītagovindam*.

7. Write five facts about the Eastern Gangas.

Answer:

(i) The Eastern Gangas ruled in Kalinga, broadly present-day Odisha.
(ii) They formed matrimonial alliances with the Cholas.
(iii) They also clashed with the Cholas and other neighbouring kingdoms.
(iv) By the end of the 12th century, they had become a stable power in eastern India.
(v) They initiated the construction of the Jagannātha temple at Puri.

8. Describe the achievements of the Chola rulers Rājarāja I and Rājendra I.

Answer:

(i) Rājarāja Chola I ruled from 985 to 1014 CE.
(ii) Rājendra Chola I was his son and ruled from 1014 to 1044 CE.
(iii) The Cholas built the Bṛihadīśhvara temple at Tanjāvūr.
(iv) Rājendra I led a naval expedition to Southeast Asia in 1025 CE.
(v) He built a new capital and temple at Gangaikoṇḍacholapuram.

9. Write five facts about Bhoja Paramāra.

Answer:

(i) Bhoja was the most famous ruler of the Paramāras.
(ii) He ruled from Dhārā in Malwa.
(iii) He supported scholars and promoted Sanskrit literature.
(iv) He is credited with founding Bhojpur and building a large lake for water management.
(v) He built the unfinished Bhojeshwar Temple and wrote on several subjects.

10. Describe Muhammad Ghūrī's campaigns and the Battles of Tarain.

Answer:

(i) Muhammad Ghūrī brought parts of Punjab and Sindh under his rule.
(ii) His attempt to expand into Gujarat was defeated in 1178 CE.
(iii) Pṛithvīrāja III defeated him at the First Battle of Tarain in 1191 CE.
(iv) Muhammad Ghūrī defeated Pṛithvīrāja III at the Second Battle of Tarain in 1192 CE.
(v) Ghūrī captured Delhi and left commanders to consolidate his gains.

11. Write five facts about Bakhtiyār Khiljī's campaigns.

Answer:

(i) Bakhtiyār Khiljī led campaigns in eastern India near the end of the 12th century.
(ii) His forces conquered parts of Bihar and Bengal.
(iii) His campaigns destroyed Nālandā and Vikramaśhilā.
(iv) In 1205 CE, local forces in Kāmarūpa inflicted severe losses on his army.
(v) The local population destroyed food and fodder, weakening the invading army.

12. Describe the economy and trade during the 11th and 12th centuries.

Answer:

(i) Agriculture remained the mainstay of the economy.
(ii) Rulers supported irrigation works to manage seasonal rainfall.
(iii) Internal trade connected different parts of India.
(iv) External trade with China and Southeast Asia continued.
(v) Merchant guilds, seaports and shipyards supported trade.

13. What was *Mānasollāsa*, and what subjects did it cover?

Answer:

(i) *Mānasollāsa* was an encyclopaedia written in the 12th century.
(ii) It was authored by the Chālukya ruler Someśvara III.

(iii) It covered astronomy and architecture.
(iv) It also discussed music, medicine, cooking and games.
(v) It included topics related to royal life and the duties of kings.

14. Write five facts about Rāmānuja.

Answer:

(i) Rāmānuja was a philosopher-saint from south India.
(ii) He challenged the dominant Advaita Vedānta school of his time.
(iii) He developed the school of viśhiṣhṭādvaita Vedānta.
(iv) His philosophy viewed the world and individual souls as real.
(v) He taught bhakti and surrender to the divine as a path to liberation.

15. Describe Basaveśhvara's teachings and work.

Answer:

(i) Basaveśhvara was also known as Basavaṇṇa or Basava.
(ii) He served as a royal minister at Kalyāṇī.
(iii) He founded the Lingāyat movement.
(iv) He rejected caste distinctions and ritualism.
(v) His Kannada poems, known as *vachanas*, expressed devotion and ethical ideas.

16. What was the Anubhava Maṇḍapa, and what was its purpose?

Answer:

(i) Basaveśhvara established the Anubhava Maṇḍapa at Kalyāṇī.
(ii) Its name means "pavilion of experience."
(iii) Men and women from many backgrounds could gather there.
(iv) Participants discussed different aspects of life, including moral values and religion.
(v) It encouraged people to exchange ideas.

17. Describe Angkor Wat and its connections with Indian culture.

Answer:

(i) Angkor Wat was built in Cambodia in the 12th century.
(ii) The Khmer king Sūryavarman II commissioned it.
(iii) It was originally dedicated to Viṣhṇu.
(iv) It has Sanskrit and Old Khmer inscriptions and scenes from Indian epics.
(v) Its architecture shares features with south Indian temples, and it was later converted into a Buddhist temple.

18. What were the effects of the Turkic invasions on parts of north India?

Answer:

(i) The invasions changed political control in parts of north India.
(ii) Mahmūd's campaigns involved plunder and destruction.
(iii) Temples, cities and centres of learning were damaged.
(iv) Muhammad Ghūrī and his generals conquered parts of north India.
(v) Islam became a new presence in India's religious landscape.

19. How did art, literature and learning continue during this period?

Answer:

(i) Bhāskarāchārya wrote important works on mathematics and astronomy.
(ii) Bhoja supported scholars and authored works on several subjects.
(iii) Jayadeva composed *Gītagovindam*.
(iv) Rulers built large temples across India.
(v) Indian cultural traditions continued to travel abroad through trade.

20. Describe how the period showed both change and continuity.

Answer:

(i) Turkic invasions changed political power in parts of north India.
(ii) Many regional kingdoms continued to rule elsewhere.

(iii) Internal and external trade persisted.
(iv) Art, literature, science and religious life continued to flourish.
(v) The period demonstrated resilience through knowledge, learning and creativity.

4.12 Five-mark questions with Answers of HOTS Type: (20 Questions)

Five-Mark Descriptive Questions — HOTS Type:

1. Why is the 11th and 12th centuries described as a period of both change and continuity?

Answer:

(i) Turkic invasions changed political control in parts of north India.
(ii) Many Indian kingdoms continued to rule regions beyond the invaders' control.
(iii) Trade continued within India and with overseas regions.
(iv) Literature, art, science and temple building continued to develop.
(v) The period combined political change with cultural resilience.

2. Compare the aims and methods of Mahmūd of Ghazni and Muhammad Ghūrī.

Answer:

(i) Mahmūd conducted repeated campaigns into India.
(ii) He returned to Ghazni with booty after his campaigns.
(iii) He did not establish permanent rule beyond Punjab.
(iv) Muhammad Ghūrī sought territorial conquest in India.
(v) He left commanders to consolidate the lands he had conquered.

3. How did geography make the Khyber Pass important in this period?

Answer:

(i) The pass crossed the Hindu Kush range.
(ii) It provided a route from Central Asia into the subcontinent.
(iii) Armies could use it to reach the Indus plains.
(iv) Traders and Buddhist travellers also travelled through it.
(v) Control of the pass gave the Hindu Shāhis a strategic advantage.

4. How can historians use al-Bīrūnī's writings to learn about India?

Answer:

(i) Al-Bīrūnī studied Indian texts after learning Sanskrit.
(ii) He wrote about Indian religion, philosophy, literature, geography and science.
(iii) His work records observations by a scholar who travelled in India.
(iv) His accounts should be considered in the context of his association with Mahmūd's campaigns.
(v) Comparing his writings with other evidence can give historians a fuller picture.

5. How could the destruction of Nālandā and Vikramaśhilā affect learning and culture?

Answer:

(i) The destruction damaged major Buddhist centres of learning.
(ii) Teachers and students lost places where they could study and teach.
(iii) Libraries and manuscripts were put at risk.
(iv) The loss weakened important institutions that preserved knowledge.
(v) Historians connect this destruction with the decline of Buddhism in India.

6. How did Bhāskarāchārya make mathematical knowledge useful and engaging?

Answer:

(i) He wrote *Līlāvatī* to teach basic mathematics through riddles and problems.
(ii) He wrote *Bījaganita* on advanced algebra.
(iii) His *Siddhāntaśhiromaṇi* dealt with astronomical calculations.

(iv) His works used examples, explanations and demonstrations.
(v) Later scholars studied, commented on and translated his works.

7. How did Bhoja's work serve both public needs and learning?
Answer:
(i) Bhoja is credited with founding the town of Bhojpur.
(ii) He built a large lake by harnessing water from several rivers.
(iii) The lake supported irrigation and water management.
(iv) He supported scholars and promoted Sanskrit literature.
(v) His writings covered subjects such as architecture, governance and medicine.

8. What do Rājendra Chola I's naval expedition and the evidence of overseas trade reveal about the Cholas?
Answer:
(i) Rājendra Chola I led a naval expedition to Southeast Asia in 1025 CE.
(ii) The expedition showed the Cholas' ability to organise sea voyages.
(iii) Chola maritime power was connected with trade across the Bay of Bengal.
(iv) Coins and pottery from overseas regions found in India provide evidence of trade.
(v) The Cholas projected political and commercial influence beyond India.

9. Why did agriculture remain important even when trade was flourishing?
Answer:
(i) Agriculture remained the mainstay of the economy.
(ii) Different regions produced crops such as rice, barley, saffron, spices, wheat and cotton.
(iii) Rulers supported irrigation works in some areas.
(iv) Irrigation helped reduce the effects of uncertain seasonal rains.
(v) Trade supported the economy while farming supplied its main foundation.

10. What does the survival of merchant guilds during political disturbances tell us?
Answer:
(i) Merchant guilds supported organised trading activity.
(ii) Trade continued within India and with overseas regions.
(iii) Seaports and shipyards supported maritime trade.
(iv) Guilds adapted as political conditions changed.
(v) Economic connections could endure even when rulers were at war.

11. How did alliances and rivalries shape political relationships among kingdoms?
Answer:
(i) Neighbouring kingdoms often fought over power and territory.
(ii) Some rulers formed matrimonial alliances with other dynasties.
(iii) Kingdoms sometimes supported one another against foreign invaders.
(iv) Alliances could change as political conditions changed.
(v) Relations among kingdoms involved both competition and cooperation.

12. What were the consequences of the two Battles of Tarain?
Answer:
(i) Pṛithvīrāja III defeated Muhammad Ghūrī in 1191 CE.
(ii) Muhammad Ghūrī returned with a larger army.
(iii) He defeated Pṛithvīrāja III at Tarain in 1192 CE.
(iv) Ghūrī went on to capture Delhi.
(v) He left trusted commanders to consolidate his gains in India.

13. How did local resistance affect Bakhtiyār Khiljī's expedition into Kāmarūpa?
Answer:
(i) The local ruler's forces confronted Bakhtiyār's army.
(ii) They inflicted severe losses on the invaders.
(iii) Local people destroyed food and fodder.

(iv) The invading army faced difficulty obtaining supplies.
(v) Bakhtiyār escaped with only a small number of his men.

14. What does Angkor Wat show about cultural connections between India and Southeast Asia?

Answer:

(i) Angkor Wat was built in Cambodia in the 12th century.
(ii) It was originally dedicated to Viṣhṇu.
(iii) Its inscriptions include both Old Khmer and Sanskrit.
(iv) Its architecture shares features with south Indian temples.
(v) The temple shows how Indian religious and artistic traditions influenced Southeast Asia.

15. How did Basaveśhvara's ideas address social divisions?

Answer:

(i) Basaveśhvara rejected caste distinctions and ritualism.
(ii) He taught personal devotion and dedicated work.
(iii) He valued people for their inner worth rather than social rank.
(iv) He promoted the equal spiritual potential of men and women.
(v) His teachings influenced society and culture in south India.

16. How did the Anubhava Maṇḍapa encourage discussion and inclusion?

Answer:

(i) Basaveśhvara established it in Kalyāṇī.
(ii) Men and women could take part in its discussions.
(iii) People from different social and economic backgrounds were welcome.
(iv) Participants discussed moral values, religion and other aspects of life.
(v) The institution encouraged people to exchange ideas.

17. How could temples be both cultural achievements and targets during invasions?

Answer:

(i) Temples were important places of worship and artistic achievement.
(ii) Some large temples held valuable offerings accumulated over time.
(iii) Mahmūd's campaigns included the destruction and plunder of temples.
(iv) The destruction caused loss to local communities and cultural heritage.
(v) Later rebuilding showed that communities continued to value these sites.

18. How did regional kingdoms support cultural and economic life beyond north India?

Answer:

(i) The Senas supported literature in Bengal.
(ii) The Eastern Gangas initiated the construction of the Jagannātha temple at Puri.
(iii) Chola rulers supported temples and maritime expeditions.
(iv) Bhoja supported public works, scholars and the arts in Malwa.
(v) These examples show that regional centres continued to flourish.

19. How can a historian use several kinds of evidence to study this period?

Answer:

(i) Inscriptions can provide information about rulers, grants and political claims.
(ii) Coins can reveal royal names, titles and symbols.
(iii) Buildings and sculptures provide evidence about art and religious life.
(iv) Written accounts by scholars and chroniclers describe events and ideas.
(v) Comparing different sources helps build a more complete understanding.

20. What broader lesson about resilience can be drawn from the chapter?

Answer:

(i) Invasions caused serious destruction in some regions.
(ii) Many kingdoms continued to resist or rule outside the invaders' control.
(iii) Trade networks continued to connect India with other regions.

(iv) Scholars and artists continued to produce important works.
(v) Knowledge, learning and creativity endured through conflict.

4.13 Five-mark questions with Answers of Applied Type: (20 Questions)

Five-Mark Descriptive Questions — Applied Type:

1. Imagine you are advising a ruler whose kingdom lies near the Khyber Pass. How would you protect the kingdom and support travellers?

Answer:

(i) Guard the pass because it is an important route into the subcontinent.
(ii) Watch for armies approaching through the Hindu Kush.
(iii) Cooperate with neighbouring rulers when facing a common threat.
(iv) Keep the route safe for traders and Buddhist travellers.
(v) Prepare for the difficult terrain and supply needs of people travelling through the pass.

2. You are a historian comparing Mahmūd of Ghazni and Muhammad Ghūrī. What points would you use to explain the difference between their campaigns?

Answer:

(i) Mahmūd conducted repeated campaigns and returned to Ghazni with booty.
(ii) He did not establish permanent rule beyond Punjab.
(iii) Muhammad Ghūrī sought territorial control in India.
(iv) He left commanders to consolidate the lands he conquered.
(v) Their different aims led to different political outcomes.

3. Imagine that your town has been affected by an invading army. What historical evidence would you collect to understand what happened?

Answer:

(i) Study inscriptions that record rulers, grants or events.
(ii) Examine coins for names, titles and symbols.
(iii) Look at damaged or surviving buildings and sculptures.
(iv) Read accounts written by travellers, scholars and chroniclers.
(v) Compare different sources before drawing conclusions.

4. You are a ruler in a region with irregular rainfall. Use Bhoja's example to plan a public water project.

Answer:

(i) Identify rivers or other water sources that could be harnessed.
(ii) Plan a lake or reservoir to store water.
(iii) Connect the stored water to fields through irrigation works.
(iv) Maintain the structure so it can serve the community over time.
(v) Use the project to improve water management as well as farming.

5. You are organising a trade mission from the Chola kingdom to Southeast Asia. What preparations would you make?

Answer:

(i) Plan a sea route across the Bay of Bengal.
(ii) Prepare ships for a long voyage.
(iii) Carry goods for trade with overseas regions.
(iv) Learn about the destinations and their trading links.
(v) Use the expedition to strengthen trade and the kingdom's influence.

6. You are asked to design a learning centre inspired by Nālandā and Vikramaśhilā. What features would you include?

Answer:

(i) Provide spaces for teaching and discussion.
(ii) Create a library to collect and preserve manuscripts.
(iii) Invite scholars to teach subjects such as logic and philosophy.
(iv) Set up a fair process for selecting students.
(v) Welcome learners from different regions.

7. You are preparing an exhibition about the destruction of centres of learning. How would you explain its effects?

Answer:

(i) Show that Nālandā and Vikramaśhilā were major learning centres.
(ii) Explain that their monasteries and libraries were damaged.
(iii) Describe how teachers and students lost places to study and teach.
(iv) Explain that manuscripts and knowledge traditions were put at risk.
(v) Connect the destruction with the weakening of Buddhist learning in India.

8. You are teaching younger students about Bhāskarāchārya. How would you make his mathematics interesting?

Answer:

(i) Introduce *Līlāvatī* as a work that uses riddles and problems.
(ii) Select an age-appropriate mathematics problem for students to solve.
(iii) Let students explain the steps they used.
(iv) Show that *Bījagaṇita* dealt with advanced algebra.
(v) Explain that scholars continued to study and comment on his works.

9. You are designing a temple inspired by Angkor Wat. How would you show the cultural connections described in the chapter?

Answer:

(i) Include architectural features inspired by south Indian temples.
(ii) Use inscriptions that reflect the region's own language and history.
(iii) Choose religious themes carefully for the intended community.
(iv) Show how cultural ideas can travel through trade and contact.
(v) Explain that religious use of a monument can change over time.

10. You are planning a discussion space inspired by Basaveśhvara's Anubhava Maṇḍapa. How would you make it welcoming?

Answer:

(i) Invite people from different social backgrounds.
(ii) Ensure women and men can participate.
(iii) Discuss topics such as moral values, religion and community life.
(iv) Give all participants a chance to share their ideas.
(v) Encourage respectful discussion and learning from one another.

11. You are a community leader responding to an invading army approaching your region. What actions from the chapter could guide your response?

Answer:

(i) Seek cooperation with neighbouring rulers.
(ii) Use local knowledge of the terrain to plan resistance.
(iii) Protect food and other essential supplies.
(iv) Organise people to support the defence of the region.
(v) Prepare for the possibility that the invading army may disrupt trade and daily life.

12. You are creating a classroom map showing trade and travel in this period. What should it include?

Answer:

(i) Mark the Khyber Pass as a route between the subcontinent and Central Asia.
(ii) Show seaports on India's coasts.

(iii) Draw trade links with China and Southeast Asia.
(iv) Include the Chola naval expedition route to Southeast Asia.
(v) Add a key to distinguish land routes from sea routes.

13. You are advising a king who wants to strengthen both agriculture and trade. What steps could you suggest?

Answer:

(i) Support irrigation works to help farmers manage seasonal rainfall.
(ii) Maintain routes that connect towns and markets.
(iii) Encourage merchant guilds to organise trade.
(iv) Support seaports and shipyards for overseas commerce.
(v) Connect local producers with traders and distant markets.

14. You are preparing a report on how political change affected religious institutions. What examples would you include?

Answer:

(i) Explain that Turkic invasions changed political control in parts of north India.
(ii) Describe the destruction of temples during some campaigns.
(iii) Include the destruction of Nālandā and Vikramaśhilā.
(iv) Note that large parts of India remained outside Turkic control.
(v) Show that religious and cultural traditions continued in many regions.

15. You are planning a history tour to explain the regional powers of the period. Which places and examples would you include?

Answer:

(i) Visit Dhārā to discuss the Paramāras and Bhoja.
(ii) Visit Tanjāvūr to discuss Rājarāja Chola and the Bṛihadīśhvara temple.
(iii) Visit Puri to learn about the Jagannātha temple and Eastern Gangas.
(iv) Visit Mānyakheṭa to discuss the Rāṣhṭrakūṭas.
(v) Use a map to connect these places with their regions and dynasties.

16. You are creating a student project on cultural influence in Southeast Asia. How would you use Angkor Wat as an example?

Answer:

(i) Identify Cambodia as the location of Angkor Wat.
(ii) Name Sūryavarman II as the Khmer king who built it.
(iii) Explain that the temple was originally dedicated to Viṣhṇu.
(iv) Point out its Sanskrit inscriptions and scenes from Indian epics.
(v) Compare its architectural features with those of south Indian temples.

17. You are a student asked to present the importance of Someśvara III's *Mānasollāsa*. What would you include?

Answer:

(i) Identify Someśvara III as a Chālukya ruler.
(ii) State that he wrote *Mānasollāsa* in the 12th century.
(iii) Explain that it covered subjects such as astronomy and architecture.
(iv) Mention its topics on music, medicine, cooking and games.
(v) Describe it as a guide to royal life and governance.

18. You are preparing a display about women's and social equality ideas in the chapter. What would you include about Basaveśhvara?

Answer:

(i) Introduce Basaveśhvara as a minister who became a reformer.
(ii) Explain that he founded the Lingāyat movement.
(iii) State that he rejected caste distinctions and ritualism.

(iv) Describe his teaching that men and women have equal spiritual potential.
(v) Display examples of his Kannada *vachanas*.

19. You are a student explaining why the period should not be remembered only for war. What examples would you present?

Answer:

(i) Mention Bhāskarāchārya's contributions to mathematics and astronomy.
(ii) Describe Bhoja's support for scholars and public works.
(iii) Give the Chola naval expedition as an example of overseas activity.
(iv) Include the building of major temples.
(v) Explain that trade, literature and religious life continued.

20. You are asked to show how Indian culture travelled abroad. What evidence from the chapter would you present?

Answer:

(i) Explain that trade connected India with China and Southeast Asia.
(ii) Mention the coins and pottery from overseas regions found in India.
(iii) Describe Indian architectural influence seen at Angkor Wat.
(iv) Include the spread of religious and artistic traditions through contact.
(v) Explain that merchants helped carry cultural ideas along with goods.

4.14 Multiple Choice Questions with answers for Olympiad type Competitive Exams:

Olympiad-Type Multiple-Choice Questions:

Choose the correct answer for each question.

1. **Which period does the chapter "Turning Tides" cover?**
   A. 6th and 7th centuries
   B. 8th and 9th centuries
   C. 11th and 12th centuries
   D. 13th and 14th centuries
   Answer: C. 11th and 12th centuries
2. **Which dynasty controlled the Khyber Pass before being defeated by the Ghaznavids?**
   A. Hindu Shāhis
   B. Senas
   C. Cholas
   D. Paramāras
   Answer: A. Hindu Shāhis
3. **The Khyber Pass crosses which mountain range?**
   A. Aravalli
   B. Hindu Kush
   C. Vindhya
   D. Satpura
   Answer: B. Hindu Kush
4. **Why was the Khyber Pass historically important?**
   A. It connected the Ganga plains with southern India.
   B. It was used by armies, traders and Buddhist travellers.
   C. It was the capital of the Hindu Shāhis.
   D. It was the only route to Southeast Asia.
   Answer: B. It was used by armies, traders and Buddhist travellers.
5. **What was the capital of the Ghaznavids?**
   A. Ghazna

B. Dhārā
C. Ajayameru
D. Nādīya
Answer: A. Ghazna

6. **Who was the Hindu Shāhi ruler defeated by Mahmūd of Ghazni?**
A. Pṛithvīrāja III
B. Jayapāla
C. Mūlarāja II
D. Ānandapāla
Answer: B. Jayapāla
7. **In which year did Mahmūd defeat Jayapāla's son Ānandapāla?**
A. 985 CE
B. 1008 CE
C. 1018 CE
D. 1025 CE
Answer: B. 1008 CE
8. **How many campaigns did Mahmūd of Ghazni conduct in India?**
A. 7
B. 12
C. 17
D. 27
Answer: C. 17
9. **Which city did Mahmūd reach in 1018 CE?**
A. Mathura
B. Puri
C. Dhārā
D. Kalyāṇī
Answer: A. Mathura
10. **Which temple was destroyed and plundered by Mahmūd in Gujarat?**
A. Jagannātha Temple
B. Somnath Temple
C. Bṛihadīśhvara Temple
D. Bhojeshwar Temple
Answer: B. Somnath Temple
11. **Who was the Persian scholar who accompanied Mahmūd on some campaigns?**
A. al-Bīrūnī
B. Jayadeva
C. Basaveśhvara
D. Someśvara III
Answer: A. al-Bīrūnī
12. **Which language did al-Bīrūnī learn to study Indian texts?**
A. Tamil
B. Sanskrit
C. Kannada
D. Old Khmer
Answer: B. Sanskrit
13. **Which work by Patanjali did al-Bīrūnī translate into Arabic?**
A. *Līlāvatī*
B. *Gītagovindam*
C. *Yogasūtras*

D. *Mānasollāsa*
Answer: C. *Yogasūtras*

14. **In which year was Bhāskarāchārya born?**
A. 1010 CE
B. 1114 CE
C. 1178 CE
D. 1192 CE
Answer: B. 1114 CE

15. **Which work by Bhāskarāchārya uses riddles and problems to teach basic mathematics?**
A. *Līlāvatī*
B. *Bījagaṇita*
C. *Siddhāntaśhiromaṇi*
D. *Gītagovindam*
Answer: A. *Līlāvatī*

16. **Which dynasty became the dominant power in much of Bengal after the Pālas declined?**
A. Senas
B. Cholas
C. Hoysalas
D. Kākatīyas
Answer: A. Senas

17. **What was the capital of the Sena dynasty?**
A. Mānyakheṭa
B. Nādīya
C. Dhārā
D. Ajayameru
Answer: B. Nādīya

18. **Who wrote *Gītagovindam*?**
A. Bhoja
B. Jayadeva
C. Bhāskarāchārya
D. Basaveśhvara
Answer: B. Jayadeva

19. **The Eastern Gangas initiated the construction of which temple?**
A. Somnath Temple
B. Jagannātha Temple at Puri
C. Bṛihadīśhvara Temple
D. Bhojeshwar Temple
Answer: B. Jagannātha Temple at Puri

20. **Which Chola ruler reigned from 985 to 1014 CE?**
A. Rājendra Chola I
B. Rājarāja Chola I
C. Rājāditya Chola
D. Rājarāja II
Answer: B. Rājarāja Chola I

21. **Who led a Chola naval expedition to Southeast Asia in 1025 CE?**
A. Rājarāja Chola I
B. Rājendra Chola I
C. Bhoja Paramāra

D. Someśvara III
Answer: B. Rājendra Chola I

22. **What does Rājendra Chola's naval expedition demonstrate?**
A. The Cholas avoided overseas contact.
B. The Cholas could project power by sea.
C. The Cholas ruled the Khyber Pass.
D. The Cholas ended all trade with Southeast Asia.
Answer: B. The Cholas could project power by sea.

23. **What was the capital of the Paramāras?**
A. Dhārā
B. Nādīya
C. Ghazna
D. Kānchī
Answer: A. Dhārā

24. **Which Paramāra ruler was also a scholar and patron of learning?**
A. Bhoja
B. Jayapāla
C. Ānandapāla
D. Pṛithvīrāja III
Answer: A. Bhoja

25. **What was one purpose of the large lake associated with Bhoja?**
A. To support irrigation and water management
B. To serve as a naval base
C. To store temple treasures
D. To mark the boundary of Ghazni
Answer: A. To support irrigation and water management

26. **Who defeated Muhammad Ghūrī near Mount Abu in 1178 CE?**
A. Mūlarāja II
B. Pṛithvīrāja III
C. Rājendra Chola I
D. Ānandapāla
Answer: A. Mūlarāja II

27. **Who won the First Battle of Tarain in 1191 CE?**
A. Muhammad Ghūrī
B. Pṛithvīrāja III
C. Qutb-ud-din Aibak
D. Bakhtiyār Khiljī
Answer: B. Pṛithvīrāja III

28. **What was the outcome of the Second Battle of Tarain in 1192 CE?**
A. Pṛithvīrāja III defeated Muhammad Ghūrī.
B. Muhammad Ghūrī defeated Pṛithvīrāja III.
C. Mūlarāja II defeated Mahmūd.
D. The battle ended the Chola Empire.
Answer: B. Muhammad Ghūrī defeated Pṛithvīrāja III.

29. **Who was the general Muhammad Ghūrī left to consolidate his gains in India?**
A. Qutb-ud-din Aibak
B. Jayapāla
C. Jayadeva
D. Someśvara III
Answer: A. Qutb-ud-din Aibak

30. **Which two learning centres were destroyed during Bakhtiyār Khiljī's campaigns?**
    A. Nālandā and Vikramaśhilā
    B. Dhārā and Nādīya
    C. Kānchī and Māmallapuram
    D. Ghazna and Ajayameru
    Answer: A. Nālandā and Vikramaśhilā
31. **How did people in Kāmarūpa help weaken Bakhtiyār Khiljī's army?**
    A. They blocked all seaports.
    B. They destroyed food and fodder.
    C. They surrendered the Khyber Pass.
    D. They joined the Ghaznavid army.
    Answer: B. They destroyed food and fodder.
32. **What remained the mainstay of the economy during this period?**
    A. Shipbuilding
    B. Agriculture
    C. Temple construction
    D. Overseas trade
    Answer: B. Agriculture
33. **Which ruler wrote the 12th-century encyclopaedia *Mānasollāsa*?**
    A. Someśvara III
    B. Bhoja
    C. Rājarāja Chola I
    D. Jayadeva
    Answer: A. Someśvara III
34. **Which philosophical school did Rāmānuja develop?**
    A. Advaita Vedānta
    B. Viśhiṣhṭādvaita Vedānta
    C. Sāṃkhya
    D. Nyāya
    Answer: B. Viśhiṣhṭādvaita Vedānta
35. **Which movement did Basaveśhvara found?**
    A. Lingāyat movement
    B. Bhakti movement
    C. Sufi movement
    D. Jain movement
    Answer: A. Lingāyat movement
36. **What were Basaveśhvara's short Kannada poems called?**
    A. *Vachanas*
    B. *Sūtras*
    C. *Gītas*
    D. *Purāṇas*
    Answer: A. *Vachanas*
37. **What was the Anubhava Maṇḍapa?**
    A. A trading port
    B. A place for people from different backgrounds to discuss life and religion
    C. A Chola naval base
    D. A Ghaznavid fortress
    Answer: B. A place for people from different backgrounds to discuss life and religion

38. **Who built Angkor Wat in the 12th century?**
    A. Sūryavarman II
    B. Rājendra Chola I
    C. Bhoja Paramāra
    D. Muhammad Ghūrī
    Answer: A. Sūryavarman II
39. **Which statement about Angkor Wat is correct?**
    A. It was originally dedicated to Viṣhṇu and later became a Buddhist temple.
    B. It was built as a Ghaznavid fortress.
    C. It was constructed by the Eastern Gangas at Puri.
    D. It was a university founded by Bhoja.
    Answer: A. It was originally dedicated to Viṣhṇu and later became a Buddhist temple.
40. **Which statement best describes the period covered in the chapter?**
    A. Political conflict ended all trade and learning.
    B. Invaders controlled all of India for both centuries.
    C. Political change occurred while trade, culture and learning continued.
    D. No regional kingdoms or alliances existed.
    Answer: C. Political change occurred while trade, culture and learning continued.

4.15 Best Practices Opportunity List from the Chapter: (12 Ideas)

Best Practices for Teaching "Turning Tides: 11th and 12th Centuries":

(1) Start with a timeline: Place key events such as Mahmūd's campaigns, the Battles of Tarain and Rājendra Chola's naval expedition in order.
(2) Use a labelled map: Locate the Khyber Pass, Ghazni, Punjab, Bengal, Dhārā, Tanjāvūr and Kāmarūpa to help students connect events with places.
(3) Compare Mahmūd and Muhammad Ghūrī: Use a simple chart to distinguish Mahmūd's raids and plunder from Ghūrī's attempts to establish territorial control.
(4) Study causes and consequences: Guide students to trace how invasions affected political control, temples, cities and centres of learning.
(5) Discuss historical sources: Compare accounts by al-Bīrūnī with other evidence, and help students consider who created each source and what it can tell us.
(6) Include regional kingdoms: Use a dynasty chart to cover the Senas, Eastern Gangas, Cholas, Paramāras, Chaulukyas and other powers across India.
(7) Connect geography with strategy: Use the Khyber Pass and the Battle of Tarain to show how routes, terrain and location shaped military events.
(8) Link history with mathematics: Let students try a suitable problem inspired by Bhāskarāchārya's *Līlāvatī* and discuss how scholars taught mathematical ideas.
(9) Connect irrigation with everyday life: Discuss how Bhoja's lake and other irrigation works could help farmers manage seasonal rainfall.
(10) Use respectful, evidence-based discussion: Teach students to analyse historical events and sources carefully, without blaming people today for past events.
(11) Highlight continuity as well as conflict: Ask students to identify examples of trade, literature, science, temples and religious life that continued during political disruption.
(12) Check learning with short activities: Use map labelling, event ordering, exit questions or a quick matching quiz to review important people, places and events.

These practices draw on the chapter's accounts of invasions, regional kingdoms, trade, learning and cultural life.

4.16 Innovations Opportunity List from the Chapter: (12 Ideas)

Innovations in Teaching and Learning:

(1) **Interactive invasion map:** Students animate Mahmūd's routes and Muhammad Ghūrī's campaigns on a digital or paper map, marking key places and dates.
(2) **Two-Battles-of-Tarain simulation:** Students use event cards to reconstruct the battles of 1191 and 1192, then explain how the outcome changed.
(3) **History news studio:** Student teams present short news segments on events such as Rājendra Chola's naval expedition, the destruction of Nālandā, or Bhoja's public works.
(4) **Historical decision game:** Give groups a scenario—defending a pass, managing supplies or responding to an invasion—and ask them to choose actions using evidence from the chapter.
(5) **Digital source detective:** Students examine short excerpts from al-Bīrūnī or other historical accounts, identify the writer and context, and discuss what the source can reveal.
(6) **Build a 3D trade route:** Use classroom materials or a simple digital tool to model sea links between India, China and Southeast Asia.
(7) **Bhāskarāchārya problem challenge:** Turn an age-appropriate *Līlāvatī* problem into a team puzzle, with students explaining how they solved it.
(8) **Design a water-management model:** Groups create a simple model inspired by Bhoja's lake and explain how it could support irrigation.
(9) **Temple architecture comparison:** Students make a photo or drawing collage comparing Angkor Wat with south Indian temple features noted in the chapter.
(10) **"A day in the past" audio diary:** Students record a short diary from the viewpoint of a merchant, scholar, farmer or traveller, including chapter-based details.
(11) **Anubhava Maṇḍapa classroom circle:** Hold a structured discussion where students share ideas on fairness, community and respectful dialogue, inspired by Basaveśhvara's assembly.
(12) **Change-and-continuity wall:** Students add cards under "What changed?" and "What continued?" to show how political disruption occurred alongside trade, learning and cultural life.

4.17: Practicing Questions/Question Bank:

Question Bank: "Turning Tides: 11th and 12th Centuries":

A. Fill in the Blanks:

1. The chapter covers the _____ and _____ centuries.

Answer: 11th; 12th

2. The Hindu Shāhis controlled the _____ Pass.

Answer: Khyber

3. Mahmūd of Ghazni conducted _____ campaigns in India.

Answer: 17

4. The Persian scholar who learned Sanskrit and studied Indian texts was _____.

Answer: al-Bīrūnī

5. Bhāskarāchārya's work on basic mathematics using riddles is called _____.

Answer: *Līlāvatī*

6. The Sena dynasty's capital was _____.

Answer: Nādīya

7. Rājendra Chola I led a naval expedition to Southeast Asia in _____ CE.

Answer: 1025

8. The Paramāra capital was _____.

Answer: Dhārā

9. Pṛithvīrāja III defeated Muhammad Ghūrī at the First Battle of Tarain in _____ CE.

Answer: 1191

10. Basaveśhvara's short Kannada poems are known as _____.

Answer: *vachanas*

B. One-Mark Descriptive Questions:

1. **What was the capital of the Ghaznavids?**
   Answer: The Ghaznavid capital was Ghazna.

2. **Who wrote *Gītagovindam*?**
   Answer: Jayadeva wrote *Gītagovindam*.

3. **Who defeated Muhammad Ghūrī at the Second Battle of Tarain?**
   Answer: Muhammad Ghūrī defeated Pṛithvīrāja III at the Second Battle of Tarain.

4. **What was the mainstay of the economy during this period?**
   Answer: Agriculture was the mainstay of the economy.

5. **Who built Angkor Wat in the 12th century?**
   Answer: The Khmer king Sūryavarman II built Angkor Wat.

C. Two-Mark Descriptive Questions:

1. **Name two works by Bhāskarāchārya and state their subjects.**
   Answer:
   (i) *Līlāvatī* teaches basic mathematics through problems and riddles.
   (ii) *Bījagaṇita* deals with advanced algebra.

2. **How did Bhoja support his kingdom?**
   Answer:
   (i) He built a large lake for irrigation and water management.
   (ii) He supported scholars and promoted Sanskrit literature.

3. **What was the difference between Mahmūd of Ghazni's and Muhammad Ghūrī's aims?**
   Answer:
   (i) Mahmūd raided India and returned to Ghazni with booty.
   (ii) Muhammad Ghūrī sought territorial control and left commanders to secure his gains.

4. **What did Basaveśhvara teach?**
   Answer:

(i) He rejected caste distinctions and ritualism.
(ii) He taught personal devotion and dedicated work.

5. **Give two examples of trade connections during this period.**
Answer:
(i) Trade connected India with China and Southeast Asia.
(ii) Merchant guilds supported internal and external trade.

D. Three-Mark Descriptive Questions:

1. **Write three facts about al-Bīrūnī.**
Answer:
(i) Al-Bīrūnī was a Persian scholar from Khwārizm.
(ii) He learned Sanskrit and studied Indian texts.
(iii) He wrote about Indian religion, literature, geography and science.

2. **Describe the two Battles of Tarain.**
Answer:
(i) Pṛithvīrāja III defeated Muhammad Ghūrī in 1191 CE.
(ii) Muhammad Ghūrī returned with a larger army.
(iii) Ghūrī defeated Pṛithvīrāja III in 1192 CE.

3. **How did the people of Kāmarūpa resist Bakhtiyār Khiljī's army?**
Answer:
(i) The local ruler's forces inflicted severe losses on the army.
(ii) Local people destroyed food and fodder.
(iii) Bakhtiyār escaped with only a small number of his men.

4. **State three facts about Rājendra Chola I.**
Answer:
(i) Rājendra Chola I was the son of Rājarāja Chola I.
(ii) He ruled from 1014 to 1044 CE.
(iii) He led a naval expedition to Southeast Asia in 1025 CE.

5. **How did trade support the economy during this period?**
Answer:
(i) Merchant guilds supported trading activity.
(ii) Internal trade connected different parts of India.
(iii) External trade linked India with China and Southeast Asia.

E. Five-Mark Descriptive Questions:

1. **Describe the contributions of Bhoja Paramāra.**
Answer:
(i) Bhoja was the most famous ruler of the Paramāras.
(ii) His capital was Dhārā.
(iii) He supported scholars and promoted Sanskrit literature.
(iv) He built a large lake for irrigation and water management.
(v) He wrote on subjects such as architecture, governance and medicine.

2. **Explain the importance of Nālandā and the effects of its destruction.**
Answer:
(i) Nālandā was a major centre of Buddhist learning.
(ii) Its library contained a large collection of manuscripts.
(iii) Students and scholars travelled there to study.

(iv) Bakhtiyār Khiljī's campaign damaged the centre and its library.
(v) Its destruction harmed important traditions of learning.

3. **Describe the achievements of the Chola rulers Rājarāja I and Rājendra I.**
Answer:
(i) Rājarāja Chola I ruled from 985 to 1014 CE.
(ii) Rājendra Chola I ruled from 1014 to 1044 CE.
(iii) The Cholas built the Bṛihadīśhvara temple at Tanjāvūr.
(iv) Rājendra I led a naval expedition to Southeast Asia in 1025 CE.
(v) He built a new capital and temple at Gangaikoṇḍacholapuram.

4. **Explain how Basaveśhvara's work encouraged social and religious reform.**
Answer:
(i) Basaveśhvara was a royal minister who became a reformer.
(ii) He founded the Lingāyat movement.
(iii) He rejected caste distinctions and ritualism.
(iv) He promoted personal devotion and dedicated work.
(v) His Kannada *vachanas* expressed his spiritual and ethical ideas.

5. **Describe how trade and cultural connections continued during the 11th and 12th centuries.**
Answer:
(i) Internal trade continued between different regions of India.
(ii) Merchant guilds supported trade.
(iii) India traded with China and Southeast Asia.
(iv) Seaports and shipyards supported maritime activity.
(v) Indian religious and artistic traditions influenced regions such as Southeast Asia.

****

7th Standard Social Science Book (Part 2) Chapter 5

Chapter 5: India, a Home to Many

5.1 Summary of the Chapter:

Summary: "India, a Home to Many":

(1) The chapter explores how people from different parts of the world came to India, seeking safety, freedom to practise their faith or new opportunities.

(2) Jewish communities settled in India in different periods. The Bene Israel lived along the Konkan coast, while Jews near Cochin received land and built a synagogue.

(3) Syriac Christians travelled east along trade routes to the Malabar coast, where they could live and worship freely.

(4) Parsis came from Persia after facing religious persecution. According to a popular legend, their wise man used sugar dissolved in milk to show how the newcomers would enrich their new home.

(5) Arab merchants settled along India's west coast from the 7th century onward. They traded, married locally and contributed to the Mappila Muslim community and the Cheraman Juma Mosque.

(6) The Siddis are of African origin. Their community developed a blend of African and Indian traditions, including distinctive music and dance.

(7) Armenian merchants came to India for trade and settlement. Under Mughal rulers such as Akbar, they built churches and contributed to commerce, administration and cultural life.

(8) Baha'is arrived from Persia in the late 19th century, seeking safety. Their faith teaches unity among people and harmony between religions.

(9) During the Second World War, Maharaja Digvijaysinhji of Nawanagar provided shelter and care to Polish children and refugees.

(10) Tibetans, including the 14th Dalai Lama, came to India for refuge in 1959. Tibetan settlements, schools and monasteries helped the community preserve its culture and traditions.

(11) These examples show that migrant communities have maintained parts of their heritage while becoming part of Indian society.

(12) The chapter connects this history with values such as *vasudhaiva kutumbakam* ("the whole world is family"), *atithi devo bhava* ("a guest is like God") and compassion.

5.2 Important Formulas:

Important Rules and Principles for Answering Qualitative Questions:

(1) **Identify why a community moved to India.** Common reasons in the chapter include persecution, the search for safety, trade, and the freedom to practise a faith.

(2) **Connect each community with its place of origin.** For example, Parsis came from Persia, Siddis have African origins, and Tibetan refugees came from Tibet.

(3) **Mention where the community settled when relevant.** Examples include Jewish communities in Konkan and Cochin, Syriac Christians in Malabar, and Tibetan settlements in India.

(4) **Distinguish different communities clearly.** Do not mix up their origins, reasons for migration, places of settlement, or contributions.

(5) **Use dates or time periods accurately.** Add them when they help explain the sequence of events, such as the arrival of Arab merchants from the 7th century or the Dalai Lama's flight to India in 1959.

(6) **Explain both the challenge and the response.** For example, describe the hardship refugees faced and how people or rulers helped them.
(7) **Support answers with examples from the chapter.** The milk-and-sugar story illustrates the Parsis' integration, while the Polish refugees' story illustrates hospitality and protection.
(8) **Describe contributions as well as settlement.** Communities contributed to trade, administration, culture, music, education, and religious life.
(9) **Explain how communities kept their heritage.** Mention practices such as worship, language, festivals, monasteries, or distinctive music and dance.
(10) **Show how communities became part of Indian society.** Explain how they maintained parts of their identity while interacting with local people and traditions.
(11) **Use respectful and inclusive language.** Describe communities without stereotypes and recognise India's many faiths and cultural traditions.
(12) **Link examples to the chapter's values.** Where appropriate, connect them to *vasudhaiva kutumbakam* (the world is one family), *atithi devo bhava* (the guest is like God), and compassion.

5.3 Fill-Up the Blank LOTS type questions with Answers: (40 Questions)

Fill in the Blanks – LOTS:

1. The chapter is titled "India, a Home to _____."
Answer: Many
2. The Bene Israel community settled along the _____ coast.
Answer: Konkan
3. The Bene Israel community remembered its belief in _____ God.
Answer: One
4. Another Jewish community settled in _____.
Answer: Cochin
5. The Raja of Kochi gave land to the Jewish community to build a _____.
Answer: Synagogue
6. Syriac Christians travelled to the Malabar region through _____ routes.
Answer: Trade
7. The Parsis originally came from _____.
Answer: Persia
8. The Parsis followed the _____ faith.
Answer: Zoroastrian
9. The Parsis reached _____ between the 8th and 10th centuries.
Answer: Gujarat
10. The story of the Parsis and Raja Jadi Rana is known as the story of milk and _____.
Answer: Sugar
11. Udvada is an important sacred place for the _____ community.
Answer: Parsi
12. Arab merchants came to India from around the _____ century.
Answer: 7th
13. Arab merchants traded goods such as _____.
Answer: Spices
14. The Mappila community developed in parts of _____.
Answer: Kerala
15. Cheraman Juma Mosque is associated with the history of _____ in Kerala.
Answer: Islam
16. The Siddis have their origins in _____.

Answer: Africa
17. Siddi culture includes distinctive music, dance, and _____.
Answer: Drumming
18. Hirabai Lobi received the _____ Shri award in 2023.
Answer: Padma
19. Armenians settled in places such as Agra, Surat, Kolkata, and _____.
Answer: Chennai
20. The Mughal emperor _____ permitted Armenians to build a church in Agra.
Answer: Akbar
21. Armenians contributed to commerce and _____.
Answer: Administration
22. The Baha'i faith began in _____ in the mid-19th century.
Answer: Persia
23. The Baha'i faith teaches unity and _____.
Answer: Harmony
24. The Lotus Temple is associated with the _____ faith.
Answer: Baha'i
25. Maharaja Digvijaysinhji belonged to the state of _____.
Answer: Nawanagar
26. Maharaja Digvijaysinhji helped Polish refugees during the _____ War.
Answer: Second World
27. Many of the Polish refugees helped by the Maharaja were _____.
Answer: Orphans
28. The 14th Dalai Lama came to India in _____.
Answer: 1959
29. The Dalai Lama came to India from _____.
Answer: Tibet
30. Tibetan settlements in India helped refugees preserve their culture and _____.
Answer: Religion
31. Tibetan monasteries helped preserve religious learning and _____.
Answer: Traditions
32. Sowa Rigpa is a traditional system of _____.
Answer: Medicine
33. The Sanskrit phrase *vasudhaiva kutumbakam* means "the world is one _____."
Answer: Family
34. The phrase *atithi devo bhava* means "the guest is like _____."
Answer: God
35. The phrase *sarve bhavantu sukhinah* expresses the wish that all may be _____.
Answer: Happy
36. Communities that came to India often kept parts of their own _____.
Answer: Heritage
37. Many migrant communities also adopted elements of local Indian _____.
Answer: Culture
38. Arab merchants often settled in India and married _____.
Answer: Locally
39. India's diversity includes many communities, cultures, and _____.
Answer: Faiths
40. The chapter highlights the values of hospitality, compassion, and _____.
Answer: Inclusion

5.4 Fill-Up the Blank HOTS type questions with Answers: (40 Questions)

Fill in the Blanks – HOTS:

1. When a community leaves its homeland because it is unsafe to practise its faith, its main reason for migration is the search for _____.

Answer: Religious freedom

2. A ruler welcomes refugees and gives them a place to live. This action shows _____.

Answer: Compassion and hospitality

3. The milk-and-sugar story suggests that the Parsis hoped to join local society while adding to its _____.

Answer: Diversity

4. A community keeps its religious traditions while learning from local customs. This is an example of cultural _____.

Answer: Integration

5. If people from different communities live together peacefully, they help build a more _____ society.

Answer: Inclusive

6. The arrival of Arab merchants through trade routes shows that trade can also encourage cultural _____.

Answer: Exchange

7. When merchants settle in a new place and marry local people, communities may develop a _____ identity.

Answer: Shared

8. The Mappila community's history illustrates how trade and settlement can shape a region's _____.

Answer: Culture

9. If a refugee group establishes schools and monasteries, it is working to preserve its _____.

Answer: Heritage

10. Tibetan settlements in India helped refugees keep their traditions while beginning a new _____.

Answer: Life

11. The help given to Polish orphans during the Second World War is an example of humanitarian _____.

Answer: Aid

12. A person who studies the history of migrant communities should compare their reasons for moving, places of settlement, and _____.

Answer: Contributions

13. The presence of communities with different faiths shows that India has a long history of _____.

Answer: Religious diversity

14. When newcomers contribute to trade, administration, or culture, they become active members of their _____.

Answer: Society

15. If a community preserves its music and dance after migrating, it is maintaining its cultural _____.

Answer: Identity

16. A student who connects the Parsis' migration with their search for safety is explaining cause and _____.

Answer: Effect

17. A student comparing the Parsis and Tibetans should note that they came from different regions for different _____.

Answer: Reasons

18. Welcoming people who have been forced to flee reflects the principle of treating a guest with _____.

Answer: Respect

19. The idea *vasudhaiva kutumbakam* encourages people to see all humanity as one _____.

Answer: Family

20. If a community adapts to local life without giving up all its traditions, it shows both adaptation and cultural _____.

Answer: Continuity

21. The story of the Jewish communities in Konkan and Cochin shows that one broad community may have more than one _____ in a country.

Answer: Settlement

22. If a refugee receives safety, education, and a place to practise their faith, these forms of support help them rebuild their _____.

Answer: Life

23. A history lesson that includes migrants' achievements as well as their hardships gives a more _____ picture.

Answer: Complete

24. When local people and newcomers share customs and ideas, both groups can influence one another's _____.

Answer: Culture

25. A student who labels the Siddis only by their African origins misses their blended African and Indian _____.

Answer: Heritage

26. If people from different religions are allowed to worship freely, the society is supporting religious _____.

Answer: Tolerance

27. A community's contribution to music, trade, and public life shows that migration can enrich a country's _____.

Answer: Society

28. When a ruler provides refuge to people escaping conflict, the ruler is protecting their safety and _____.

Answer: Dignity

29. The Baha'i teaching of unity can help people respond to religious differences with _____.

Answer: Respect

30. If a student uses the example of the Maharaja helping Polish refugees to explain *atithi devo bhava*, the student is linking a value to a historical _____.

Answer: Example

31. A community that keeps its language, worship, and customs across generations is preserving its cultural _____.

Answer: Heritage

32. The chapter's examples suggest that migration may result in new communities and _____ traditions.

Answer: Shared

33. If a student explains why Syriac Christians travelled to Malabar, the answer should connect their journey with safety and freedom of _____.

Answer: Worship

34. Comparing the experiences of migrants helps us understand both their common challenges and their different _____.

Answer: Histories

35. Treating refugees fairly means recognising their needs and respecting their _____.

Answer: Rights

36. The arrival of people from many regions over time has made India culturally _____.

Answer: Diverse

37. When a community builds a place of worship in its new home, it helps maintain its religious _____.

Answer: Practices

38. A student who explains how migration changed both newcomers and local society is describing cultural _____.

Answer: Interaction

39. Helping displaced people settle, study, and practise their faith is a way of promoting their well-being and _____.

Answer: Inclusion

40. The chapter encourages readers to value differences and treat people from all communities with _____.

Answer: Compassion

5.5 One-mark questions with Answers of LOTS Type: (35 Questions)

One-Mark Descriptive Questions – LOTS:

1. **What is the title of the chapter?**
   Answer: The chapter is titled "India, a Home to Many."
2. **Where did the Bene Israel community settle?**
   Answer: The Bene Israel community settled along the Konkan coast.
3. **Which other Jewish community settled in Cochin?**
   Answer: The Cochin Jews settled in Cochin.
4. **What place of worship did the Jewish community build in Cochin?**
   Answer: The Jewish community built a synagogue in Cochin.
5. **Where did the Syriac Christians settle in India?**
   Answer: The Syriac Christians settled in the Malabar region.
6. **Why did Syriac Christians travel to Malabar?**
   Answer: They travelled there seeking safety and freedom to practise their faith.
7. **From which country did the Parsis come to India?**
   Answer: The Parsis came from Persia.
8. **Which faith do the Parsis follow?**
   Answer: The Parsis follow the Zoroastrian faith.
9. **In which Indian state did the Parsis settle?**
   Answer: The Parsis settled in Gujarat.
10. **What is the story associated with Raja Jadi Rana and the Parsis called?**
    Answer: It is known as the story of milk and sugar.
11. **Which place is sacred to the Parsis?**
    Answer: Udvada is a sacred place for the Parsis.
12. **From which century did Arab merchants arrive in India?**
    Answer: Arab merchants arrived in India from around the 7th century.
13. **Which goods did Arab merchants trade in India?**
    Answer: Arab merchants traded goods such as spices.
14. **What community developed through Arab settlement in Kerala?**
    Answer: The Mappila community developed in Kerala.

15. **Where is the Cheraman Juma Mosque located?**
    Answer: The Cheraman Juma Mosque is in Kerala.
16. **Where did the Siddis originally come from?**
    Answer: The Siddis originally came from Africa.
17. **Name one cultural feature associated with the Siddis.**
    Answer: Siddi culture is known for distinctive music and dance.
18. **Which award did Hirabai Lobi receive in 2023?**
    Answer: Hirabai Lobi received the Padma Shri in 2023.
19. **Name one Indian city where Armenians settled.**
    Answer: Armenians settled in cities such as Agra, Surat, Kolkata, and Chennai.
20. **Which Mughal emperor permitted Armenians to build a church in Agra?**
    Answer: Emperor Akbar permitted Armenians to build a church in Agra.
21. **What were two areas in which Armenians contributed?**
    Answer: Armenians contributed to commerce and administration.
22. **Where did the Baha'i faith begin?**
    Answer: The Baha'i faith began in Persia.
23. **When did the Baha'i faith begin?**
    Answer: The Baha'i faith began in the mid-19th century.
24. **What values does the Baha'i faith teach?**
    Answer: The Baha'i faith teaches unity and harmony.
25. **Which faith is the Lotus Temple associated with?**
    Answer: The Lotus Temple is associated with the Baha'i faith.
26. **Which ruler helped Polish refugees during the Second World War?**
    Answer: Maharaja Digvijaysinhji of Nawanagar helped Polish refugees.
27. **Whom did the Maharaja especially help among the Polish refugees?**
    Answer: The Maharaja especially helped Polish orphans.
28. **When did the 14th Dalai Lama come to India?**
    Answer: The 14th Dalai Lama came to India in 1959.
29. **From which place did the Dalai Lama come to India?**
    Answer: The Dalai Lama came to India from Tibet.
30. **Name one way Tibetan refugees preserved their culture in India.**
    Answer: Tibetan refugees preserved their culture by establishing monasteries.
31. **What is Sowa Rigpa?**
    Answer: Sowa Rigpa is a traditional system of medicine.
32. **What does *vasudhaiva kutumbakam* mean?**
    Answer: *Vasudhaiva kutumbakam* means "the world is one family."
33. **What does *atithi devo bhava* mean?**
    Answer: *Atithi devo bhava* means "the guest is like God."
34. **What does *sarve bhavantu sukhinah* express?**
    Answer: It expresses the wish that all may be happy.
35. **What values does the chapter encourage towards people from different communities?**
    Answer: The chapter encourages hospitality, compassion, respect, and inclusion.

5.6 One-mark questions with Answers of HOTS Type: (30 Questions)

One-Mark Descriptive Questions – HOTS:

1. **What does the milk-and-sugar story suggest about how the Parsis wished to live in India?**

Answer: It suggests that they wished to blend into local society while adding to its richness.

2. **How did trade help Arab merchants become part of Indian society?**
   Answer: Trade brought them into contact with local people, and some settled and married locally.
3. **What does the history of the Mappila community show about cultural interaction?**
   Answer: It shows that interaction between traders and local people can shape a region's culture.
4. **Why was the Maharaja's help to Polish orphans important?**
   Answer: It gave children escaping war a safe place and support.
5. **What can we learn from the way Tibetan refugees established monasteries in India?**
   Answer: They worked to preserve their religious and cultural traditions in a new home.
6. **How did the Parsis maintain their identity after settling in India?**
   Answer: They continued their Zoroastrian faith and preserved important traditions.
7. **What does the presence of Jewish communities in both Konkan and Cochin tell us?**
   Answer: It shows that communities could settle in different parts of India over time.
8. **Why might a community preserve its music and dance after migration?**
   Answer: These traditions help maintain its cultural identity across generations.
9. **How does the story of the Syriac Christians illustrate the importance of religious freedom?**
   Answer: It shows that people may move to places where they can practise their faith freely.
10. **What does Akbar's permission to Armenians suggest about life in his empire?**
    Answer: It suggests that Armenians were allowed to practise their faith and build a church in Agra.
11. **How can a community contribute to a country while keeping its own heritage?**
    Answer: It can take part in society while continuing its traditions, beliefs, and cultural practices.
12. **Why is it useful to learn both the reasons people migrated and their contributions?**
    Answer: It helps us understand their challenges as well as how they shaped society.
13. **What does the chapter suggest about the effect of migration on Indian culture?**
    Answer: It suggests that migration has added new traditions and influences to India's cultural diversity.
14. **How does the phrase *vasudhaiva kutumbakam* relate to welcoming migrants?**
    Answer: It encourages people to treat all humanity as one family.
15. **What value is shown when a ruler provides safety to people fleeing persecution?**
    Answer: The ruler shows compassion and hospitality.
16. **How might education help refugee children settle in a new country?**
    Answer: Education can help them learn, build a future, and take part in their new society.
17. **Why should we avoid describing a community only by its place of origin?**
    Answer: Its identity may also include the culture and experiences it developed in its new home.
18. **What does the Siddi community's blended heritage illustrate?**
    Answer: It illustrates how African and Indian influences can exist together in a community's culture.

19. **How could freedom to build places of worship help migrant communities?**
    Answer: It could help them practise their faith and preserve their traditions.
20. **What does the history of Armenian settlements in several cities suggest about their activities?**
    Answer: It suggests that Armenians took part in trade and public life in different regions.
21. **Why is hospitality important when people arrive as refugees?**
    Answer: Hospitality can help them find safety, shelter, and a sense of belonging.
22. **How does the Baha'i teaching of unity help people live with religious differences?**
    Answer: It encourages people to respect one another and seek harmony.
23. **What can the story of Polish refugees teach students about helping people in crisis?**
    Answer: It teaches that offering protection and care can make a meaningful difference.
24. **How can local people and newcomers influence one another?**
    Answer: They can exchange customs, ideas, and ways of life through living and working together.
25. **Why is preserving a community's history important?**
    Answer: It helps later generations understand their roots and cultural heritage.
26. **What does the chapter show about the relationship between cultural identity and integration?**
    Answer: It shows that people can join a wider society while retaining parts of their own identity.
27. **How does the example of Arab merchants challenge the idea that migration happens only because of conflict?**
    Answer: It shows that people may also migrate for trade and other opportunities.
28. **Why should refugees be treated with dignity?**
    Answer: They are people seeking safety and deserve respect and humane treatment.
29. **What can students infer from the many communities described in the chapter?**
    Answer: They can infer that India's society has been shaped by people from many places and backgrounds.
30. **How can the values in the chapter guide people in a diverse classroom?**
    Answer: They can encourage students to welcome classmates, respect differences, and treat everyone fairly.

5.7 Two-mark questions with Answers of LOTS Type: (30 Questions)

Two-Mark Descriptive Questions – LOTS:

1. **Where did the Bene Israel community settle, and what belief did they preserve?**
   Answer:
   (i) The Bene Israel community settled along the Konkan coast.
   (ii) They preserved their belief in one God.
2. **Where did the Cochin Jewish community settle, and what place of worship did they build?**
   Answer:
   (i) The Cochin Jewish community settled in Cochin.
   (ii) They built a synagogue.
3. **Where did the Syriac Christians settle, and why did they travel there?**
   Answer:

(i) They settled in the Malabar region.
(ii) They travelled there seeking safety and freedom to practise their faith.

4. **Where did the Parsis come from, and which faith did they follow?**
   Answer:
   (i) The Parsis came from Persia.
   (ii) They followed the Zoroastrian faith.
5. **When and where did the Parsis reach India?**
   Answer:
   (i) They reached India between the 8th and 10th centuries.
   (ii) They settled in Gujarat.
6. **What is the story associated with Raja Jadi Rana and the Parsis?**
   Answer:
   (i) It is known as the story of milk and sugar.
   (ii) It describes the Parsis' integration into local society.
7. **When did Arab merchants arrive in India, and what did they trade?**
   Answer:
   (i) Arab merchants arrived from around the 7th century.
   (ii) They traded goods such as spices.
8. **Where did Arab merchants settle, and which community developed in Kerala?**
   Answer:
   (i) Arab merchants settled in regions including Kerala, Gujarat, and Karnataka.
   (ii) The Mappila community developed in Kerala.
9. **What are the origins of the Siddis, and name one feature of their culture.**
   Answer:
   (i) The Siddis have African origins.
   (ii) Their culture includes distinctive music and dance.
10. **Who was Hirabai Lobi, and which award did she receive?**
    Answer:
    (i) Hirabai Lobi was a member of the Siddi community.
    (ii) She received the Padma Shri in 2023.
11. **Name two Indian cities where Armenians settled.**
    Answer:
    (i) Armenians settled in Agra and Surat.
    (ii) They also settled in Kolkata and Chennai.
12. **Which Mughal emperor permitted Armenians to build a church in Agra, and what did Armenians contribute to?**
    Answer:
    (i) Emperor Akbar permitted them to build a church in Agra.
    (ii) Armenians contributed to commerce and administration.
13. **Where and when did the Baha'i faith begin?**
    Answer:
    (i) The Baha'i faith began in Persia.
    (ii) It began in the mid-19th century.
14. **What two values are taught by the Baha'i faith?**
    Answer:
    (i) The Baha'i faith teaches unity.
    (ii) It also teaches harmony.
15. **Who helped Polish refugees during the Second World War, and whom did he especially help?**
    Answer:

(i) Maharaja Digvijaysinhji of Nawanagar helped Polish refugees.
(ii) He especially helped Polish orphans.

16. **When did the 14th Dalai Lama come to India, and from where?**
Answer:
(i) The 14th Dalai Lama came to India in 1959.
(ii) He came from Tibet.
17. **Name two ways Tibetan refugees preserved their culture in India.**
Answer:
(i) They established settlements and schools.
(ii) They built monasteries to preserve religious traditions.
18. **What is Sowa Rigpa, and where did it spread?**
Answer:
(i) Sowa Rigpa is a traditional system of medicine.
(ii) It spread in India with Tibetan communities.
19. **What does *vasudhaiva kutumbakam* mean, and what value does it express?**
Answer:
(i) It means "the world is one family."
(ii) It expresses unity among all people.
20. **What does *atithi devo bhava* mean, and what value does it encourage?**
Answer:
(i) It means "the guest is like God."
(ii) It encourages hospitality towards guests.
21. **What does *sarve bhavantu sukhinah* mean, and what wish does it express?**
Answer:
(i) It means "may all be happy."
(ii) It expresses a wish for everyone's well-being.
22. **Name two reasons communities migrated to India, as described in the chapter.**
Answer:
(i) Some communities migrated to escape persecution and seek safety.
(ii) Others came for trade and new opportunities.
23. **How did some communities preserve their identity after settling in India?**
Answer:
(i) They continued their religious practices.
(ii) They maintained customs and cultural traditions.
24. **Name two contributions made by migrant communities in India.**
Answer:
(i) Some communities contributed to trade and commerce.
(ii) Others contributed to culture, administration, or public life.
25. **Name two places where Jewish communities settled in India.**
Answer:
(i) One Jewish community settled along the Konkan coast.
(ii) Another community settled in Cochin.
26. **What help did Maharaja Digvijaysinhji give Polish refugees?**
Answer:
(i) He gave Polish refugees shelter in Nawanagar.
(ii) He helped many Polish children and orphans during the war.
27. **How did Arab merchants become connected with local communities?**
Answer:
(i) They settled in coastal regions and traded with local people.
(ii) Some married locally and became part of the region's society.

28. **Name two ways communities can maintain their heritage after migration.**
    Answer:
    (i) They can continue their religious practices and celebrations.
    (ii) They can preserve their language, music, or customs.
29. **What two ideas about Indian society does the chapter highlight?**
    Answer:
    (i) India is home to communities with different origins and faiths.
    (ii) These communities have contributed to its cultural diversity.
30. **Name two values that the chapter encourages people to practise.**
    Answer:
    (i) The chapter encourages compassion towards people in need.
    (ii) It encourages respect and inclusion across communities.

5.8. Two-mark questions with Answers of HOTS Type: (30 Questions)

Two-Mark Descriptive Questions – HOTS:

1. **What does the milk-and-sugar story suggest about how the Parsis joined Indian society?**
   Answer:
   (i) The Parsis adapted to life in their new home.
   (ii) They also hoped to enrich the society they joined.
2. **How did trade help Arab merchants become part of local communities?**
   Answer:
   (i) Trade brought them into regular contact with local people.
   (ii) Some settled and married locally, strengthening community ties.
3. **What can we infer from the development of the Mappila community?**
   Answer:
   (i) Long-term contact between traders and local people can create new communities.
   (ii) Such communities may combine influences from different backgrounds.
4. **Why was the Maharaja's support important to Polish refugees?**
   Answer:
   (i) It gave refugees a safe place during a difficult period.
   (ii) It showed how compassionate leadership can protect people in danger.
5. **What can Tibetan settlements and monasteries tell us about preserving culture?**
   Answer:
   (i) Settlements help people rebuild their lives together.
   (ii) Monasteries help preserve religious learning and traditions.
6. **How can a community integrate into society while keeping its identity?**
   Answer:
   (i) Its members can take part in the wider society.
   (ii) They can continue their own religious and cultural practices.
7. **What does the presence of Jewish communities in both Konkan and Cochin suggest?**
   Answer:
   (i) Communities may settle in more than one region over time.
   (ii) Their histories can include several local experiences and traditions.
8. **Why might music and dance matter to a community that has migrated?**
   Answer:
   (i) They help pass cultural traditions to younger generations.
   (ii) They can strengthen a shared sense of identity.

9. **What does the migration of Syriac Christians to Malabar teach about freedom of worship?**
   Answer:
   (i) People may move to find a place where they can practise their faith freely.
   (ii) Religious freedom can help communities feel secure in a new home.
10. **What can be inferred from Akbar allowing Armenians to build a church in Agra?**
    Answer:
    (i) The Armenians were allowed to maintain their religious practices.
    (ii) A ruler's policies can affect how welcome a community feels.
11. **Why should we study both the challenges and contributions of migrant communities?**
    Answer:
    (i) Their challenges help us understand why they moved.
    (ii) Their contributions show how they shaped life in their new home.
12. **How has migration contributed to India's cultural diversity?**
    Answer:
    (i) Communities brought different beliefs, customs, and traditions.
    (ii) Their interactions added new influences to Indian society.
13. **How can *vasudhaiva kutumbakam* guide people in welcoming newcomers?**
    Answer:
    (i) It encourages people to see all humanity as one family.
    (ii) It supports kindness and inclusion towards newcomers.
14. **What values are shown when a ruler gives refuge to people fleeing danger?**
    Answer:
    (i) The ruler shows compassion towards people in need.
    (ii) The ruler recognises their need for safety and dignity.
15. **How might schooling help refugee children build a new life?**
    Answer:
    (i) It gives them opportunities to learn and develop skills.
    (ii) It can help them participate in their new community.
16. **Why is it incomplete to describe the Siddis only by their African origins?**
    Answer:
    (i) Their history also includes life and experiences in India.
    (ii) Their culture reflects influences from more than one background.
17. **How can places of worship support migrant communities?**
    Answer:
    (i) They provide a place for people to practise their faith together.
    (ii) They help preserve traditions and strengthen community ties.
18. **What can the spread of Armenian settlements across several cities suggest?**
    Answer:
    (i) Armenians established communities in different parts of India.
    (ii) Their presence was connected with activities such as trade and administration.
19. **How can the Baha'i teaching of unity help people live peacefully with differences?**
    Answer:
    (i) It encourages people to look for shared human values.
    (ii) It supports respect and harmony among people of different faiths.
20. **What lesson does the story of Polish refugees offer about helping people in crisis?**
    Answer:

(i) People can offer protection and care to those forced to leave home.
(ii) Timely help can make a meaningful difference to refugees' lives.

21. **How can local people and newcomers influence each other?**
Answer:
(i) They can share ideas, customs, and skills through daily contact.
(ii) Their interaction can shape the culture of the wider community.
22. **Why is recording a community's history important?**
Answer:
(i) It helps preserve the community's experiences and heritage.
(ii) It helps future generations understand how society developed.
23. **How does the chapter show that migration can happen for reasons other than conflict?**
Answer:
(i) Arab merchants came to India for trade.
(ii) Their story shows that people may move in search of work or opportunity.
24. **Why should refugees be treated with dignity?**
Answer:
(i) They have often left home because of danger or hardship.
(ii) Respectful treatment helps protect their well-being and sense of belonging.
25. **What can we infer from the many communities described in the chapter?**
Answer:
(i) India has welcomed people from a range of regions and backgrounds.
(ii) These communities have helped shape the country's diverse society.
26. **How can the chapter's values guide students in a diverse classroom?**
Answer:
(i) Students can respect classmates' different beliefs and backgrounds.
(ii) They can make everyone feel included in classroom activities.
27. **How did local settlement help Arab merchants build lasting connections in India?**
Answer:
(i) Living in a region allowed merchants to form relationships with local people.
(ii) These relationships helped create communities such as the Mappilas.
28. **What is the connection between preserving heritage and adapting to a new home?**
Answer:
(i) A community can maintain important traditions from its past.
(ii) It can also adapt to the customs and circumstances of its new home.
29. **Why is hospitality especially important for people arriving as refugees?**
Answer:
(i) It can help them find shelter and safety after displacement.
(ii) It can help them feel accepted in their new surroundings.
30. **How does the chapter connect historical examples with the idea of inclusion?**
Answer:
(i) It describes communities that found homes and built lives in India.
(ii) It encourages readers to treat people of different backgrounds with compassion and respect.

5.9. Three-mark questions with Answers of LOTS Type: (30 Questions)

Three-Mark Descriptive Questions – LOTS:

1. **Describe the settlement of the Bene Israel community in India.**
   Answer:
   (i) The Bene Israel settled along the Konkan coast.
   (ii) Their history is linked to a migration from ancient Israel.
   (iii) They preserved their belief in one God.
2. **Write about the Jewish community in Cochin.**
   Answer:
   (i) Jewish people settled in Cochin over several centuries.
   (ii) The Raja of Kochi gave them land.
   (iii) They built a synagogue there.
3. **Why did Syriac Christians travel to the Malabar region?**
   Answer:
   (i) Some Syriac Christians faced persecution in West Asia.
   (ii) They travelled to Malabar along trade routes.
   (iii) They could practise their faith freely there.
4. **Describe the migration of the Parsis to India.**
   Answer:
   (i) The Parsis came from Persia.
   (ii) They left after facing religious persecution.
   (iii) They reached Gujarat between the 8th and 10th centuries.
5. **What is the story of milk and sugar connected with the Parsis?**
   Answer:
   (i) Raja Jadi Rana received the Parsis in Gujarat.
   (ii) The story describes a bowl of milk and sugar.
   (iii) It is remembered as a symbol of the Parsis' integration into local society.
6. **Write three facts about the Parsi community's heritage.**
   Answer:
   (i) The Parsis follow the Zoroastrian faith.
   (ii) Udvada is an important sacred place for them.
   (iii) Fire has a special place in their religious tradition.
7. **Describe the arrival of Arab merchants in India.**
   Answer:
   (i) Arab merchants came to India from around the 7th century.
   (ii) They settled in coastal regions such as Kerala, Gujarat, and Karnataka.
   (iii) They traded goods such as spices.
8. **How did the Mappila community develop?**
   Answer:
   (i) Arab merchants settled in Kerala.
   (ii) Some married local people.
   (iii) Their interactions contributed to the development of the Mappila community.
9. **Write three facts about the Siddis.**
   Answer:
   (i) The Siddis have African origins.
   (ii) Many were brought to India by Arab, Portuguese, and British traders.
   (iii) Their culture includes distinctive music and dance.
10. **Who is Hirabai Lobi?**
    Answer:
    (i) Hirabai Lobi is a member of the Siddi community.
    (ii) She worked to uplift her community.
    (iii) She received the Padma Shri in 2023.

11. **Describe the Armenian presence in India.**
Answer:
(i) Armenians settled in India from at least the 8th century.
(ii) They lived in cities such as Agra, Surat, Kolkata, and Chennai.
(iii) They contributed to commerce and administration.
12. **What did Akbar do for the Armenians in Agra?**
Answer:
(i) Akbar permitted Armenians to build a church in Agra.
(ii) This allowed them to practise their faith.
(iii) It is an example of their presence during the Mughal period.
13. **Write three facts about the Baha'i faith.**
Answer:
(i) The Baha'i faith began in Persia in the mid-19th century.
(ii) Its teachings include unity and harmony.
(iii) Followers came to India seeking safety from persecution.
14. **What is the Lotus Temple?**
Answer:
(i) The Lotus Temple is in India.
(ii) It is associated with the Baha'i faith.
(iii) It is a place where people can gather for prayer and reflection.
15. **Describe the help given to Polish refugees during the Second World War.**
Answer:
(i) Maharaja Digvijaysinhji of Nawanagar helped Polish refugees.
(ii) He provided shelter to many refugees.
(iii) He especially cared for Polish orphans.
16. **Write three facts about the Dalai Lama's arrival in India.**
Answer:
(i) The 14th Dalai Lama came to India in 1959.
(ii) He fled Tibet after an uprising.
(iii) India granted him asylum.
17. **How were Tibetan refugees supported in India?**
Answer:
(i) They were given support to rebuild their lives.
(ii) Settlements and schools were established for them.
(iii) Monasteries helped preserve their religious traditions.
18. **What is Sowa Rigpa?**
Answer:
(i) Sowa Rigpa is a traditional system of medicine.
(ii) It is associated with Tibetan culture.
(iii) It spread in India with Tibetan communities.
19. **Explain the meaning of *vasudhaiva kutumbakam*.**
Answer:
(i) It is a Sanskrit expression.
(ii) It means "the world is one family."
(iii) It teaches people to feel connected to all humanity.
20. **Explain the meaning of *atithi devo bhava*.**
Answer:
(i) It is an Indian expression about guests.
(ii) It means "the guest is like God."
(iii) It teaches people to welcome guests with respect.

21. **What does *sarve bhavantu sukhinah* mean?**
Answer:
(i) It is a Sanskrit expression.
(ii) It means "may all be happy."
(iii) It expresses a wish for everyone's well-being.
22. **Name three reasons people came to India, as described in the chapter.**
Answer:
(i) Some came to escape persecution.
(ii) Some sought safety and freedom to practise their faith.
(iii) Others came for trade and new opportunities.
23. **How did migrant communities preserve their heritage?**
Answer:
(i) They continued their religious practices.
(ii) They maintained customs and traditions.
(iii) Some established places of worship, schools, or monasteries.
24. **Name three contributions made by migrant communities in India.**
Answer:
(i) Some communities contributed to trade and commerce.
(ii) Some took part in administration.
(iii) Communities added to India's cultural diversity.
25. **Name three regions where communities discussed in the chapter settled.**
Answer:
(i) Bene Israel communities settled along the Konkan coast.
(ii) Syriac Christians settled in Malabar.
(iii) Parsis settled in Gujarat.
26. **What role did trade routes play in the history of some communities?**
Answer:
(i) Trade routes helped merchants travel to India.
(ii) They connected foreign traders with coastal regions.
(iii) Some traders settled in India and formed local connections.
27. **How did some migrant communities maintain religious life in India?**
Answer:
(i) They continued their own forms of worship.
(ii) Some built places of worship.
(iii) Tibetan communities established monasteries.
28. **What does the chapter say about communities becoming part of Indian society?**
Answer:
(i) Communities settled in different parts of India.
(ii) They interacted with local people and traditions.
(iii) They contributed to society while preserving parts of their heritage.
29. **Name three values highlighted in the chapter.**
Answer:
(i) The chapter highlights hospitality.
(ii) It encourages compassion towards people in need.
(iii) It promotes respect and inclusion.
30. **What does the chapter teach about India's diversity?**
Answer:
(i) People from many regions have made India their home.
(ii) They brought different faiths and cultural traditions.
(iii) Their presence has contributed to India's diverse society.

5.10. Three-mark questions with Answers of HOTS Type: (30 Questions)

Three-Mark Descriptive Questions – HOTS:

1. **How does the milk-and-sugar story explain the Parsis' relationship with local society?**
   Answer:
   (i) The story represents the Parsis' wish to live peacefully in their new home.
   (ii) The sugar symbolises the contribution they hoped to make to society.
   (iii) It is remembered as an image of cultural integration.
2. **How did trade help create lasting connections between Arab merchants and local people?**
   Answer:
   (i) Trade brought the merchants into regular contact with local communities.
   (ii) Some merchants settled and married locally.
   (iii) These connections helped shape communities such as the Mappilas.
3. **What does the history of the Mappilas teach us about the growth of communities?**
   Answer:
   (i) Communities can develop through long-term contact between different groups.
   (ii) Trade and settlement can bring people together.
   (iii) A community's culture may reflect more than one influence.
4. **How does the experience of Syriac Christians show the importance of religious freedom?**
   Answer:
   (i) Some Syriac Christians faced persecution in West Asia.
   (ii) They travelled to Malabar, where they could practise their faith freely.
   (iii) Their story shows how freedom of worship can influence migration.
5. **What can we learn from the way the Jewish community in Cochin was received?**
   Answer:
   (i) The Raja of Kochi gave the community land.
   (ii) This support helped the community establish a synagogue.
   (iii) The example shows how local support can help newcomers settle.
6. **How did Tibetan refugees work to preserve their culture in India?**
   Answer:
   (i) They established settlements where people could live together.
   (ii) They developed schools to support education.
   (iii) Their monasteries helped preserve religious learning and traditions.
7. **Why was the Maharaja's help to Polish refugees an example of compassionate leadership?**
   Answer:
   (i) He offered shelter to people displaced by war.
   (ii) He gave special care to Polish orphans.
   (iii) His actions put the safety and well-being of refugees first.
8. **How can migrant communities preserve their identity while integrating into society?**
   Answer:
   (i) They can participate in the wider society around them.
   (ii) They can continue important religious and cultural practices.
   (iii) They can share their traditions with others while learning from local customs.

9. **What does the Siddi community's history tell us about cultural identity?**
   Answer:
   (i) The Siddis have African origins.
   (ii) Their history also includes generations of life in India.
   (iii) Their culture reflects a blend of influences.
10. **Why should the history of a community include both its challenges and contributions?**
    Answer:
    (i) Its challenges help explain why people migrated.
    (ii) Its contributions show how the community shaped its new home.
    (iii) Considering both gives a fuller understanding of its history.
11. **How does the chapter show that migration can enrich a society?**
    Answer:
    (i) Migrant communities brought different beliefs and traditions.
    (ii) They contributed to activities such as trade, administration, and culture.
    (iii) Their interactions added to India's diversity.
12. **How can the idea *vasudhaiva kutumbakam* guide people's treatment of refugees?**
    Answer:
    (i) It encourages people to see all humanity as one family.
    (ii) It supports helping people who are in need.
    (iii) It promotes respect and inclusion for newcomers.
13. **How does *atithi devo bhava* connect with the stories in this chapter?**
    Answer:
    (i) It teaches that guests should be welcomed with respect.
    (ii) Several communities in the chapter found shelter or support in India.
    (iii) Their experiences illustrate the value of hospitality.
14. **What does Akbar's permission for Armenians to build a church illustrate?**
    Answer:
    (i) Armenians were able to practise their faith in Agra.
    (ii) The example shows that a ruler's decisions can affect religious life.
    (iii) It helps explain how different communities could maintain their traditions.
15. **How did places of worship help migrant communities?**
    Answer:
    (i) They provided spaces for people to practise their faith.
    (ii) They helped communities maintain shared traditions.
    (iii) They could strengthen a sense of belonging in a new home.
16. **What can be inferred from Armenians settling in several Indian cities?**
    Answer:
    (i) Armenian communities were present in different regions.
    (ii) Their settlements were linked to activities such as trade and administration.
    (iii) Their history forms part of India's wider story of migration.
17. **How can education help refugee children rebuild their lives?**
    Answer:
    (i) Education gives children opportunities to learn and develop skills.
    (ii) It can help them take part in their new communities.
    (iii) It can support their hopes for the future.
18. **Why is it useful to compare the reasons different communities migrated?**
    Answer:
    (i) Some communities moved to escape persecution or seek safety.

(ii) Others came for trade or new opportunities.
(iii) Comparing these reasons shows that migration has many causes.

19. **How did Arab merchants' settlement differ from migration caused by persecution?**
Answer:
(i) Arab merchants came mainly through trade and commercial activity.
(ii) Some other groups moved because they faced persecution or needed safety.
(iii) The examples show that people migrate for different reasons.
20. **How can local communities and newcomers influence each other?**
Answer:
(i) They can exchange customs, ideas, and knowledge.
(ii) Newcomers can contribute skills and traditions to local society.
(iii) Local ways of life can also influence newcomers.
21. **Why is it important for later generations to learn about migrant communities?**
Answer:
(i) Their stories help preserve the communities' histories.
(ii) Their experiences explain how India's society developed.
(iii) Learning about them can encourage respect for diversity.
22. **What can the Baha'i teaching of unity contribute to a diverse society?**
Answer:
(i) It encourages people to recognise their shared humanity.
(ii) It supports respect across religious differences.
(iii) It can help people work towards harmony.
23. **How does the chapter connect migration with cultural exchange?**
Answer:
(i) Migrants brought their own customs and beliefs to India.
(ii) They interacted with local people and ways of life.
(iii) These interactions helped create shared cultural influences.
24. **What lessons about helping displaced people can be drawn from the Polish and Tibetan refugee stories?**
Answer:
(i) Refugees need safety and support when forced to leave home.
(ii) Shelter, education, and community support can help them rebuild.
(iii) Respecting their culture can help them maintain a sense of identity.
25. **How can the chapter's values be practised in a classroom with students from different backgrounds?**
Answer:
(i) Students can listen respectfully to one another's experiences.
(ii) They can include classmates in shared activities.
(iii) They can treat differences as part of the class's diversity.
26. **What does the chapter show about the connection between heritage and belonging?**
Answer:
(i) Cultural and religious practices can help people remember their roots.
(ii) Support from others can help newcomers feel accepted.
(iii) People can preserve heritage while developing a sense of belonging in a new home.
27. **Why should communities be described through more than their origins?**
Answer:
(i) Their histories continue after they arrive in a new country.

(ii) Their cultures can change through interaction with local people.
(iii) Their contributions are also part of their identity.

28. **How does the chapter challenge the idea that newcomers only receive help from society?**
Answer:
(i) Migrant communities also contributed to trade and administration.
(ii) They added cultural traditions and knowledge.
(iii) The chapter presents settlement as a process involving contributions as well as support.
29. **How can hospitality and inclusion help a community receiving refugees?**
Answer:
(i) Hospitality can provide newcomers with immediate care and shelter.
(ii) Inclusion can help them participate in community life.
(iii) Both values can encourage peaceful relationships.
30. **What overall lesson does the chapter offer about living with diversity?**
Answer:
(i) People from different places and faiths can make a shared home.
(ii) Communities can preserve their traditions while contributing to society.
(iii) Respect, compassion, and hospitality help people live together peacefully.

5.11 Five-mark questions with Answers of LOTS Type: (20 Questions)

Five-Mark Descriptive Questions – LOTS:

1. **Describe the history of the Bene Israel community in India.**
Answer:
(i) The Bene Israel community is one of the Jewish communities mentioned in the chapter.
(ii) It settled along the Konkan coast.
(iii) Its history is linked to a migration from ancient Israel.
(iv) Members remembered their belief in one God.
(v) The community grew in India over time.
2. **Write about the Jewish community in Cochin.**
Answer:
(i) Jewish people settled in Cochin over several centuries.
(ii) The Raja of Kochi gave them land.
(iii) They built a synagogue there.
(iv) The synagogue served as a place of worship.
(v) Their history is part of the Jewish presence in India.
3. **Describe the arrival of Syriac Christians in Malabar.**
Answer:
(i) Some Syriac Christians faced persecution in West Asia.
(ii) They travelled along trade routes.
(iii) They settled in the Malabar region.
(iv) They were able to practise their faith there.
(v) Their migration added to the religious diversity of India.
4. **Write five facts about the Parsis.**
Answer:
(i) The Parsis came to India from Persia.
(ii) They followed the Zoroastrian faith.
(iii) They reached Gujarat between the 8th and 10th centuries.

(iv) The story of milk and sugar is associated with their arrival.
(v) Udvada is an important sacred place for them.

5. **Describe the story of milk and sugar.**
   Answer:
   (i) The story is connected with the arrival of the Parsis in Gujarat.
   (ii) Raja Jadi Rana is associated with the story.
   (iii) A bowl of milk features in the story.
   (iv) Sugar is added to the milk in the story.
   (v) It is remembered as a symbol of the Parsis' integration into local society.
6. **Write about the arrival and activities of Arab merchants in India.**
   Answer:
   (i) Arab merchants came to India from around the 7th century.
   (ii) They reached coastal regions such as Kerala, Gujarat, and Karnataka.
   (iii) They traded goods such as spices.
   (iv) Some settled in India.
   (v) Some married locally and formed connections with local communities.
7. **Describe the development of the Mappila community.**
   Answer:
   (i) Arab merchants settled in Kerala.
   (ii) They interacted with local people.
   (iii) Some merchants married locally.
   (iv) These interactions contributed to the development of the Mappila community.
   (v) The community is part of Kerala's history.
8. **Write five facts about the Siddis.**
   Answer:
   (i) The Siddis have African origins.
   (ii) Many were brought to India by traders over several centuries.
   (iii) Some Siddis became prominent in armies.
   (iv) Their culture includes distinctive music and dance.
   (v) Their heritage reflects African and Indian influences.
9. **Write about Hirabai Lobi.**
   Answer:
   (i) Hirabai Lobi belongs to the Siddi community.
   (ii) She worked to uplift her community.
   (iii) Her work brought attention to the community.
   (iv) She received the Padma Shri in 2023.
   (v) Her story is an example of community service.
10. **Describe the Armenian presence in India.**
    Answer:
    (i) Armenians settled in India from at least the 8th century.
    (ii) They lived in several Indian cities.
    (iii) Their settlements included Agra and Surat.
    (iv) They also settled in Kolkata and Chennai.
    (v) They contributed to commerce and administration.
11. **Write about Akbar's support for the Armenians.**
    Answer:
    (i) Armenians lived in Agra during the Mughal period.
    (ii) Emperor Akbar permitted them to build a church.
    (iii) The church allowed them to practise their faith.

(iv) Armenians also took part in commerce and administration.
(v) Their history shows their presence in Mughal India.

12. **Write five facts about the Baha'i faith in India.**
Answer:
(i) The Baha'i faith began in Persia in the mid-19th century.
(ii) Its teachings include unity and harmony.
(iii) Followers faced persecution in Persia.
(iv) Some Baha'is came to India seeking safety.
(v) The Lotus Temple is associated with the Baha'i faith.
13. **Describe the help given to Polish refugees during the Second World War.**
Answer:
(i) Polish refugees came to India during the Second World War.
(ii) Maharaja Digvijaysinhji of Nawanagar helped them.
(iii) He provided shelter to refugees.
(iv) He especially cared for Polish orphans.
(v) His actions are remembered as an example of compassion.
14. **Describe the arrival of the 14th Dalai Lama in India.**
Answer:
(i) The 14th Dalai Lama came from Tibet.
(ii) He fled after an uprising in Tibet.
(iii) He arrived in India in 1959.
(iv) India granted him asylum.
(v) Tibetan refugees later established communities in India.
15. **How did Tibetan refugees preserve their culture in India?**
Answer:
(i) Tibetan refugees established settlements.
(ii) They built schools for education.
(iii) They established monasteries.
(iv) Monasteries helped preserve religious learning.
(v) Their communities helped maintain Tibetan traditions.
16. **Write five facts about Sowa Rigpa.**
Answer:
(i) Sowa Rigpa is a traditional system of medicine.
(ii) It is associated with Tibetan culture.
(iii) Tibetan communities brought its knowledge to India.
(iv) It became known in India through these communities.
(v) It is one example of cultural knowledge shared through migration.
17. **Explain the meanings of three Sanskrit expressions from the chapter.**
Answer:
(i) *Vasudhaiva kutumbakam* means "the world is one family."
(ii) *Atithi devo bhava* means "the guest is like God."
(iii) *Sarve bhavantu sukhinah* means "may all be happy."
(iv) These expressions encourage care for others.
(v) They reflect values of unity, hospitality, and well-being.
18. **Name reasons why people migrated to India, as described in the chapter.**
Answer:
(i) Some people came to escape persecution.
(ii) Some sought safety.
(iii) Some came to practise their faith freely.

(iv) Arab merchants came for trade.
(v) Others came seeking new opportunities.

19. **How did migrant communities preserve their heritage in India?**
Answer:
(i) They continued their religious practices.
(ii) Some built places of worship.
(iii) Some maintained their customs and traditions.
(iv) Tibetan communities established monasteries.
(v) These practices helped pass heritage to later generations.
20. **What does the chapter teach about India's cultural diversity?**
Answer:
(i) People from many regions came to India.
(ii) They brought different faiths and traditions.
(iii) Some communities contributed to trade and administration.
(iv) Others enriched India's cultural life.
(v) The chapter highlights hospitality, compassion, and inclusion.

5.12 Five-mark questions with Answers of HOTS Type: (20 Questions)

Five-Mark Descriptive Questions – HOTS:

1. **How does the milk-and-sugar story explain the Parsis' integration into Indian society?**
Answer:
(i) The story describes the Parsis being welcomed by Raja Jadi Rana.
(ii) The bowl of milk represents the society they were joining.
(iii) The sugar represents the contribution they hoped to make.
(iv) The story suggests that they wished to live peacefully with local people.
(v) It is remembered as a symbol of integration.
2. **Explain how trade helped Arab merchants become part of Indian society.**
Answer:
(i) Arab merchants came to India for trade.
(ii) Their journeys brought them into contact with coastal communities.
(iii) Some merchants settled in India.
(iv) Some married local people.
(v) These connections helped shape communities such as the Mappilas.
3. **What does the history of the Mappila community show about cultural exchange?**
Answer:
(i) Arab merchants settled in Kerala.
(ii) They interacted with local people.
(iii) Trade and marriage helped create lasting connections.
(iv) These connections contributed to the growth of the Mappila community.
(v) The example shows how cultures can influence one another.
4. **How do the stories of Polish and Tibetan refugees show different forms of support?**
Answer:
(i) Polish refugees received shelter during the Second World War.
(ii) Maharaja Digvijaysinhji gave special care to Polish orphans.
(iii) Tibetan refugees received asylum after fleeing Tibet.
(iv) Tibetan settlements and schools helped them rebuild their lives.
(v) Both examples show the importance of safety and support for refugees.

5. **How did Tibetan refugees work to preserve their heritage in India?**
   Answer:
   (i) They established settlements where their communities could live together.
   (ii) They created schools to support education.
   (iii) They established monasteries.
   (iv) Monasteries helped preserve religious learning and practices.
   (v) These efforts helped pass Tibetan traditions to future generations.
6. **How can migrant communities join a new society while retaining their identity?**
   Answer:
   (i) They can take part in the wider community's social and economic life.
   (ii) They can continue their own religious practices.
   (iii) They can preserve important customs and traditions.
   (iv) They can share their culture with local people.
   (v) They can adapt to their new home without forgetting their heritage.
7. **Why is it important to learn about both the hardships and contributions of migrant communities?**
   Answer:
   (i) Hardships help explain why people left their homelands.
   (ii) They show the challenges refugees and migrants faced.
   (iii) Contributions reveal how communities took part in society.
   (iv) Their activities enriched areas such as trade, administration, and culture.
   (v) Considering both gives a fuller picture of their history.
8. **How does the chapter show that migration can increase cultural diversity?**
   Answer:
   (i) People arrived in India from different regions.
   (ii) They brought varied faiths and customs.
   (iii) Some communities established places of worship and schools.
   (iv) Their interactions added new influences to local life.
   (v) Their histories contribute to India's cultural diversity.
9. **How could the value *vasudhaiva kutumbakam* guide a community receiving refugees?**
   Answer:
   (i) It teaches that the world is one family.
   (ii) It encourages people to see refugees as fellow human beings.
   (iii) It supports offering help to those in need.
   (iv) It encourages respect for different backgrounds.
   (v) It can help create a more welcoming community.
10. **How does the idea *atithi devo bhava* relate to the chapter's examples of migration?**
    Answer:
    (i) The expression teaches people to treat guests with respect.
    (ii) Several communities came to India seeking safety or opportunity.
    (iii) Some received shelter and support from local rulers or communities.
    (iv) Such support helped newcomers begin life in a new place.
    (v) The examples reflect the value of hospitality.
11. **What can the Siddi community's history teach us about cultural identity?**
    Answer:
    (i) The Siddis have African origins.
    (ii) Their community has a long history in India.
    (iii) Their cultural life includes distinctive music and dance.

(iv) Their heritage reflects influences from different backgrounds.
(v) Their story shows that identity can include more than one cultural influence.

12. **How might places of worship help migrant communities feel at home?**
Answer:
(i) They provide a place for people to practise their faith.
(ii) They bring community members together.
(iii) They help preserve religious customs.
(iv) They connect younger generations with their traditions.
(v) They can give people a sense of belonging in a new home.
13. **What can we learn from Akbar permitting Armenians to build a church in Agra?**
Answer:
(i) Armenians were able to practise their faith in Agra.
(ii) The permission allowed them to build a place of worship.
(iii) It shows that rulers' decisions can affect minority communities.
(iv) The Armenians also took part in commerce and administration.
(v) Their history forms part of India's diverse past.
14. **Why should communities be described by more than their place of origin?**
Answer:
(i) Their histories continue after they migrate.
(ii) They develop new experiences in their place of settlement.
(iii) They may contribute to the society around them.
(iv) Their cultures can reflect both inherited and local influences.
(v) A fuller description recognises their complete history.
15. **How can education help refugee children build a new life?**
Answer:
(i) Education gives children opportunities to learn.
(ii) It helps them develop knowledge and skills.
(iii) It can support their participation in the new community.
(iv) It can help them prepare for future work.
(v) It gives children a stronger foundation for rebuilding their lives.
16. **How can local communities and newcomers influence each other?**
Answer:
(i) Newcomers bring their customs and knowledge.
(ii) Local people share their own ways of life.
(iii) Daily contact allows ideas and practices to be exchanged.
(iv) Trade and social relationships can bring groups closer.
(v) These interactions can shape a shared culture.
17. **Why is it useful to compare why different groups migrated to India?**
Answer:
(i) Some groups moved because of persecution.
(ii) Some sought safety or freedom to practise their faith.
(iii) Arab merchants came for trade.
(iv) Comparing these reasons shows that migration has many causes.
(v) It helps us understand each community's experience more clearly.
18. **How can the chapter's values be practised in a classroom with students from different backgrounds?**
Answer:
(i) Students can listen respectfully to one another.
(ii) They can include everyone in group activities.
(iii) They can learn about classmates' different traditions.

(iv) They can avoid unfair treatment or stereotypes.
(v) These actions build a more welcoming classroom.

19. **How can hospitality and inclusion help refugees settle in a new place?**
Answer:
(i) Hospitality can provide shelter and immediate care.
(ii) Respectful treatment can help refugees feel safe.
(iii) Inclusion can help them participate in community life.
(iv) Support for education and culture can help them rebuild.
(v) Together, these actions can help newcomers feel they belong.
20. **What overall lesson does the chapter offer about living with diversity?**
Answer:
(i) People from many regions and faiths have made India their home.
(ii) Communities can preserve their traditions after migration.
(iii) They can also contribute to the society around them.
(iv) Hospitality and compassion help people live together.
(v) Respect for differences supports a more inclusive society.

5.13 Five-mark questions with Answers of Applied Type: (20 Questions)

Five-Mark Descriptive Questions – Applied Type:

1. **A family has moved to a new country after facing religious persecution. Using examples from the chapter, suggest five ways the receiving community can help them settle.**
Answer:
(i) Provide a safe place for the family to live.
(ii) Allow them to practise their faith freely.
(iii) Help the children join a school.
(iv) Respect their customs and cultural traditions.
(v) Include them in community activities.
2. **Your class is welcoming a new student from a different cultural background. How can you apply the chapter's values to make the student feel welcome?**
Answer:
(i) Greet the student warmly.
(ii) Listen respectfully when the student shares their experiences.
(iii) Invite the student to join group activities.
(iv) Show interest in the student's traditions without making fun of them.
(v) Treat the student fairly and kindly.
3. **A local community is raising funds to support refugee children. Suggest five useful forms of support, keeping the chapter's examples in mind.**
Answer:
(i) Arrange safe accommodation for the children and their families.
(ii) Provide school supplies and access to education.
(iii) Help families obtain food and basic necessities.
(iv) Make space for the children to practise their cultural traditions.
(v) Include them in community events and activities.
4. **Your school is planning a "Many Communities, One Home" exhibition. Suggest five displays inspired by the chapter.**
Answer:
(i) Show a map marking the regions where the communities settled.
(ii) Display information about Jewish communities in Konkan and Cochin.

(iii) Present the milk-and-sugar story associated with the Parsis.
(iv) Include examples of Siddi music and dance traditions.
(v) Share the stories of Polish and Tibetan refugees.

5. **A student says that migrants only receive help and do not contribute to their new society. Use the chapter to respond with five points.**
   Answer:
   (i) Arab merchants contributed to trade in coastal regions.
   (ii) Armenians took part in commerce and administration.
   (iii) Siddi cultural traditions added to India's cultural life.
   (iv) Migrant communities shared their customs and knowledge.
   (v) The chapter shows that communities can receive support and also contribute.
6. **A community wants to preserve its heritage while becoming part of its new home. Suggest five practical steps.**
   Answer:
   (i) Continue important religious practices.
   (ii) Teach children the community's history and traditions.
   (iii) Hold cultural events that share music, food, or customs.
   (iv) Take part in local school and community activities.
   (v) Build respectful relationships with neighbours.
7. **A group of refugees has arrived in your town. What five actions could the local council take to support them?**
   Answer:
   (i) Arrange safe temporary shelter.
   (ii) Provide information about health and public services.
   (iii) Help children enrol in nearby schools.
   (iv) Support access to places where they can practise their faith.
   (v) Invite refugees to participate in community life.
8. **Your class is comparing the migration of Arab merchants with that of refugees. Suggest five points students should include.**
   Answer:
   (i) Arab merchants came to India for trade.
   (ii) Some refugees came seeking safety from persecution or conflict.
   (iii) Arab merchants settled in coastal regions.
   (iv) Refugees may need shelter and support when they arrive.
   (v) Both examples show that people move for different reasons.
9. **A school wants to teach students about *vasudhaiva kutumbakam*. Suggest five activities that connect this idea to the chapter.**
   Answer:
   (i) Discuss what "the world is one family" means.
   (ii) Read stories about communities that found a home in India.
   (iii) Invite students to share family traditions respectfully.
   (iv) Create a class poster about welcoming people from different backgrounds.
   (v) Plan a kindness activity for someone new to the school.
10. **A refugee child is struggling to feel accepted in a new school. Suggest five ways classmates can help.**
    Answer:
    (i) Introduce themselves and invite the child to join them.
    (ii) Help the child learn classroom routines.
    (iii) Listen patiently if the child wants to share their story.

(iv) Respect the child's language, beliefs, and customs.
(v) Include the child in games and group assignments.

11. **A student is preparing a report on how migrant communities preserve their traditions. Suggest five details to investigate from the chapter.**
Answer:
(i) Find examples of communities that built places of worship.
(ii) Learn how Tibetan monasteries preserve religious traditions.
(iii) Identify cultural practices such as music and dance.
(iv) Note how communities passed their heritage to younger generations.
(v) Explain how traditions continued alongside participation in Indian society.
12. **Your neighbourhood is organising a welcome programme for families who have recently arrived. Suggest five ways to make it respectful and inclusive.**
Answer:
(i) Ask the families what support they need.
(ii) Provide information in a language they understand, if possible.
(iii) Offer food while respecting their dietary practices.
(iv) Introduce them to local services and community groups.
(v) Invite them to share their culture only if they wish to do so.
13. **A student group is creating a timeline of migration stories from the chapter. Name five entries they could include.**
Answer:
(i) The arrival of Arab merchants from around the 7th century.
(ii) The settlement of Parsis in Gujarat between the 8th and 10th centuries.
(iii) The Armenian presence in India from at least the 8th century.
(iv) The arrival of Polish refugees during the Second World War.
(v) The Dalai Lama's arrival in India in 1959.
14. **A local museum wants to present the history of the Siddis accurately and respectfully. Suggest five points the display should include.**
Answer:
(i) Explain that the Siddis have African origins.
(ii) Describe how many Siddis came to India over several centuries.
(iii) Include their contributions and experiences in India.
(iv) Present their music and dance traditions respectfully.
(v) Recognise their blended African and Indian heritage.
15. **A student uses *atithi devo bhava* to explain why people should help newcomers. Give five actions that reflect this value.**
Answer:
(i) Welcome newcomers with kindness.
(ii) Offer practical help when they need it.
(iii) Respect their beliefs and customs.
(iv) Help them learn about local services and routines.
(v) Include them in community activities.
16. **A class is studying how rulers and communities supported newcomers. Suggest five questions students could investigate using the chapter.**
Answer:
(i) What support did the Raja of Kochi give the Jewish community?
(ii) What did Akbar permit the Armenians to build in Agra?
(iii) How did Maharaja Digvijaysinhji help Polish refugees?
(iv) What support did Tibetan refugees receive in India?
(v) How did this support help communities settle or preserve traditions?

17. **Your school is making a "Respecting Differences" pledge based on the chapter. Write five promises students could make.**
    Answer:
    (i) I will respect people who follow different religions.
    (ii) I will not make fun of another person's customs or language.
    (iii) I will welcome students who are new to the school.
    (iv) I will listen when people share their experiences.
    (v) I will include others in classroom and school activities.
18. **A town is deciding whether to allow a new community to build a place of worship. Use the chapter to explain five reasons why respectful discussion and fair treatment matter.**
    Answer:
    (i) A place of worship helps a community practise its faith.
    (ii) The chapter describes communities that built or used places of worship in India.
    (iii) Fair treatment can help newcomers feel secure.
    (iv) Respect for different faiths supports peaceful coexistence.
    (v) The community should discuss the matter respectfully and follow local rules.
19. **Your class is preparing a presentation about how migration affects both newcomers and local people. Suggest five points to include.**
    Answer:
    (i) Newcomers bring their own customs and knowledge.
    (ii) Local people can offer support and help them settle.
    (iii) Trade and social contact can connect different groups.
    (iv) Communities may share and adapt cultural practices.
    (v) These interactions can contribute to a diverse society.
20. **A student wants to explain how the chapter's ideas can help build a peaceful society today. Suggest five points for the student's answer.**
    Answer:
    (i) Welcome people who are new to the community.
    (ii) Respect different religions and cultural traditions.
    (iii) Help people who have been displaced or are in need.
    (iv) Give everyone fair chances to participate in society.
    (v) Practise compassion, hospitality, and inclusion.

5.14 Multiple Choice Questions with answers for Olympiad type Competitive Exams:

Olympiad-Style Multiple Choice Questions:

1. **Which community settled along the Konkan coast?**
   A. Armenians
   B. Bene Israel
   C. Siddis
   D. Parsis
   Answer: B. Bene Israel
2. **What place of worship did the Jewish community in Cochin build?**
   A. Monastery
   B. Mosque
   C. Synagogue
   D. Church
   Answer: C. Synagogue

3. **Which community travelled to Malabar seeking safety and freedom to practise its faith?**
   A. Syriac Christians
   B. Siddis
   C. Armenians
   D. Baha'is
   Answer: A. Syriac Christians
4. **The Parsis came to India from which region?**
   A. Tibet
   B. Persia
   C. Africa
   D. Poland
   Answer: B. Persia
5. **The Parsis followed which faith?**
   A. Zoroastrianism
   B. Buddhism
   C. Baha'i faith
   D. Judaism
   Answer: A. Zoroastrianism
6. **Which state became an important place of settlement for the Parsis?**
   A. Gujarat
   B. Assam
   C. Punjab
   D. Odisha
   Answer: A. Gujarat
7. **The story of milk and sugar is associated with which community?**
   A. Armenians
   B. Parsis
   C. Siddis
   D. Tibetans
   Answer: B. Parsis
8. **Which community arrived in India as merchants from around the 7th century?**
   A. Arab merchants
   B. Polish refugees
   C. Tibetan monks
   D. Baha'is
   Answer: A. Arab merchants
9. **Which good was especially associated with the trade of Arab merchants in India?**
   A. Spices
   B. Wool
   C. Coal
   D. Tea
   Answer: A. Spices
10. **Which community developed in Kerala through interaction between Arab merchants and local people?**
    A. Bene Israel
    B. Mappila
    C. Armenian
    D. Siddi
    Answer: B. Mappila

11. **The Siddis have their origins in which continent?**
    A. Europe
    B. Africa
    C. Asia
    D. South America
    Answer: B. Africa
12. **Which cultural features are associated with the Siddis in the chapter?**
    A. Music and dance
    B. Shipbuilding and pottery
    C. Ice sculpture and skiing
    D. Weaving and glassmaking
    Answer: A. Music and dance
13. **Which award did Hirabai Lobi receive in 2023?**
    A. Bharat Ratna
    B. Padma Shri
    C. Arjuna Award
    D. Jnanpith Award
    Answer: B. Padma Shri
14. **Which Mughal emperor permitted Armenians to build a church in Agra?**
    A. Babur
    B. Akbar
    C. Aurangzeb
    D. Shah Jahan
    Answer: B. Akbar
15. **Which combination lists only cities where Armenians settled?**
    A. Agra, Surat, Kolkata
    B. Kochi, Patna, Jaipur
    C. Delhi, Shimla, Pune
    D. Lucknow, Bhopal, Ranchi
    Answer: A. Agra, Surat, Kolkata
16. **Which areas of public life did Armenians contribute to?**
    A. Commerce and administration
    B. Mining and aviation
    C. Fishing and forestry
    D. Farming and astronomy
    Answer: A. Commerce and administration
17. **The Baha'i faith began in which region?**
    A. Persia
    B. Tibet
    C. Africa
    D. Poland
    Answer: A. Persia
18. **Which pair of values is linked with the Baha'i faith in the chapter?**
    A. Unity and harmony
    B. Wealth and power
    C. Competition and victory
    D. Silence and isolation
    Answer: A. Unity and harmony
19. **The Lotus Temple is associated with which faith?**
    A. Zoroastrianism

B. Baha'i faith
C. Judaism
D. Buddhism
Answer: B. Baha'i faith

20. **Who helped Polish refugees during the Second World War?**
A. Raja Jadi Rana
B. Maharaja Digvijaysinhji
C. Emperor Akbar
D. The 14th Dalai Lama
Answer: B. Maharaja Digvijaysinhji

21. **Whom did Maharaja Digvijaysinhji especially help?**
A. Polish orphans
B. Armenian merchants
C. Arab traders
D. Jewish sailors
Answer: A. Polish orphans

22. **In which year did the 14th Dalai Lama come to India?**
A. 1942
B. 1947
C. 1959
D. 1965
Answer: C. 1959

23. **Tibetan refugees established monasteries mainly to help preserve their:**
A. Religious traditions
B. Trading routes
C. Military weapons
D. Farming tools
Answer: A. Religious traditions

24. **What is Sowa Rigpa?**
A. A traditional system of medicine
B. A type of synagogue
C. A trade route
D. A refugee settlement
Answer: A. A traditional system of medicine

25. **Which expression means "the world is one family"?**
A. Atithi devo bhava
B. Sarve bhavantu sukhinah
C. Vasudhaiva kutumbakam
D. Sowa Rigpa
Answer: C. Vasudhaiva kutumbakam

26. **Which expression means "the guest is like God"?**
A. Atithi devo bhava
B. Vasudhaiva kutumbakam
C. Sarve bhavantu sukhinah
D. Mappila
Answer: A. Atithi devo bhava

27. **Which expression expresses the wish that all may be happy?**
A. Atithi devo bhava
B. Sarve bhavantu sukhinah
C. Vasudhaiva kutumbakam

D. Milk and sugar
Answer: B. Sarve bhavantu sukhinah

28. **A community migrates because its members are persecuted for their faith. Which need is most directly involved?**
A. Freedom of worship
B. A new trade good
C. A larger harbour
D. A different climate
Answer: A. Freedom of worship

29. **Which example best shows migration for trade rather than escape from persecution?**
A. Arab merchants arriving in India
B. Polish orphans receiving shelter
C. Tibetans fleeing an uprising
D. Syriac Christians seeking religious freedom
Answer: A. Arab merchants arriving in India

30. **A community builds a place of worship after migrating. What does this most directly help it do?**
A. Preserve religious practices
B. Control trade routes
C. Change its place of origin
D. End cultural interaction
Answer: A. Preserve religious practices

31. **Which situation best illustrates cultural integration?**
A. A community participates in local society while keeping some traditions
B. A community avoids all contact with local people
C. A community gives up every aspect of its heritage
D. A community moves without settling anywhere
Answer: A. A community participates in local society while keeping some traditions

32. **What does the milk-and-sugar story mainly symbolise?**
A. The Parsis' integration and contribution to local society
B. A change from farming to trade
C. A disagreement over religious practice
D. The start of Armenian settlements
Answer: A. The Parsis' integration and contribution to local society

33. **Which example best shows that migration can happen for different reasons?**
A. Some people migrated for safety while merchants came for trade
B. All communities migrated for the same reason
C. People migrated only to build places of worship
D. Migration happened only during the Second World War
Answer: A. Some people migrated for safety while merchants came for trade

34. **A student is preparing a project on community contributions. Which pair from the chapter is correctly matched?**
A. Armenians — commerce and administration
B. Tibetans — spice trade
C. Parsis — Polish refugee relief
D. Siddis — building a synagogue in Cochin
Answer: A. Armenians — commerce and administration

35. **Which action best reflects the value of *atithi devo bhava*?**
    A. Welcoming newcomers and treating them respectfully
    B. Refusing to learn about other communities
    C. Preventing people from practising their faith
    D. Ignoring people who need shelter
    Answer: A. Welcoming newcomers and treating them respectfully
36. **Why are schools and settlements useful for refugees?**
    A. They can help people rebuild their lives and community
    B. They prevent people from keeping their traditions
    C. They make migration unnecessary
    D. They replace all places of worship
    Answer: A. They can help people rebuild their lives and community
37. **Which conclusion is best supported by the chapter's examples?**
    A. Migrant communities can preserve traditions and contribute to society
    B. Migrant communities always abandon their heritage
    C. Only traders can settle in India
    D. Communities from different backgrounds cannot live together
    Answer: A. Migrant communities can preserve traditions and contribute to society
38. **A student says that India's cultural diversity has been shaped by communities arriving from different places. Which chapter theme supports this idea?**
    A. Communities settled, interacted, and shared traditions
    B. All communities followed one faith
    C. Migration stopped cultural exchange
    D. Newcomers had no role in society
    Answer: A. Communities settled, interacted, and shared traditions
39. **Which response best applies the chapter's values when a refugee family arrives in a town?**
    A. Offer practical help and treat the family with respect
    B. Ask the family to abandon its traditions
    C. Keep the family separate from all local activities
    D. Refuse to provide information about local services
    Answer: A. Offer practical help and treat the family with respect
40. **What is the central idea of "India, a Home to Many"?**
    A. India has been home to communities of varied origins, faiths, and traditions
    B. India's history includes only communities born within its borders
    C. Migration always leads to the loss of cultural identity
    D. Trade was the only reason people came to India
    Answer: A. India has been home to communities of varied origins, faiths, and traditions

5.15 Best Practices Opportunity List from the Chapter: (10 Ideas)

Best Practices for Teaching "India, a Home to Many":

(1) Begin with a map activity. Locate Persia, Tibet, Africa, Poland, and the Indian regions where the communities settled.

(2) Use a migration timeline. Have students arrange key events, such as the arrival of Arab merchants, the settlement of Parsis in Gujarat, and the Dalai Lama's arrival in India.

(3) **Teach each community through a simple profile.** Record its place of origin, reason for migration, place of settlement, and contribution.
(4) **Compare reasons for migration.** Help students distinguish migration for trade from migration for safety or freedom to practise a faith.
(5) **Use stories to explain ideas.** Discuss the Parsis' milk-and-sugar story and the Maharaja's support for Polish refugees.
(6) **Connect history with values.** Explain *vasudhaiva kutumbakam*, *atithi devo bhava*, and *sarve bhavantu sukhinah* using classroom examples.
(7) **Use respectful, inclusive language.** Present communities with care and avoid stereotypes or assumptions about their beliefs and experiences.
(8) **Invite evidence-based discussion.** Ask students to support their answers with examples from the chapter, such as trade, places of worship, or refugee support.
(9) **Include varied learning materials.** Use maps, a timeline, short readings, images of places of worship, and key vocabulary to support different learners.
(10) **Check understanding during the lesson.** Use short exit questions, matching exercises, or a "one fact, one question" activity.
(11) **Encourage comparison without ranking communities.** Students can compare migration experiences, heritage, and contributions while recognising each community's distinct history.
(12) **End with a reflection on inclusion.** Ask students to name one practical way they can welcome or support someone new to their school or community.

5.16 Innovations Opportunity List from the Chapter: (10 Ideas)

Innovations in Teaching–Learning:

(1) **Interactive migration map:** Students click or place markers on a map to connect communities' origins with their Indian settlements.
(2) **Digital timeline:** In groups, students create a timeline of key events using slides or a classroom timeline wall.
(3) **Community profile cards:** Teams make illustrated cards showing each community's origin, reason for migration, settlement, and contribution.
(4) **Milk-and-sugar storytelling:** Students retell the Parsi story through a short comic strip, storyboard, or narrated presentation, then discuss its message.
(5) **Refugee support design challenge:** Groups plan a welcoming settlement with shelter, education, places of worship, and community support, drawing on the chapter's examples.
(6) **"Museum in the classroom":** Students create small exhibits with maps, captions, timelines, and objects or images representing the communities discussed.
(7) **Values-to-action wall:** Students connect *vasudhaiva kutumbakam* and *atithi devo bhava* to practical ways of welcoming someone new at school.
(8) **Migration story podcast:** Pairs record a brief, fact-based audio segment about one community, using chapter information and respectful language.
(9) **Interactive quiz trail:** Set up question stations around the classroom on origins, settlements, reasons for migration, and contributions; students move between stations in teams.
(10) **Culture and contribution web:** Students use strings or a digital mind map to show links between migration, trade, cultural exchange, and community life.
(11) **Choose-the-support activity:** Present a fictional newcomer's situation and ask groups to select helpful actions, then explain their choices using chapter values.

(12) **Collaborative digital book:** Each group contributes one illustrated page about a community; combine the pages into a shared class book.
(13) **Classroom role-play:** Students act out a respectful community meeting about welcoming newcomers, focusing on listening, fairness, and practical support.
(14) **Exit-ticket reflection:** At the end of the lesson, students write one new fact, one value they learned, and one action they could take to include others.

5.17: Practicing Questions/Question Bank:

Sample Question Bank:

A. Fill in the Blanks:

1. The Bene Israel community settled along the _____ coast.

Answer: Konkan

2. The Parsis came to India from _____.

Answer: Persia

3. Arab merchants traded goods such as _____.

Answer: Spices

4. The 14th Dalai Lama came to India in _____.

Answer: 1959

5. The phrase *vasudhaiva kutumbakam* means "the world is one _____."

Answer: Family

B. One-Mark Descriptive Questions:

1. **Where did the Syriac Christians settle in India?**
   Answer: They settled in the Malabar region.

2. **Which faith do the Parsis follow?**
   Answer: The Parsis follow the Zoroastrian faith.

3. **Who helped Polish refugees during the Second World War?**
   Answer: Maharaja Digvijaysinhji of Nawanagar helped Polish refugees.

4. **What is Sowa Rigpa?**
   Answer: Sowa Rigpa is a traditional system of medicine.

5. **What does *atithi devo bhava* mean?**
   Answer: It means "the guest is like God."

C. Two-Mark Descriptive Questions:

1. **Where did the Bene Israel community settle, and what belief did it preserve?**
   Answer:
   (i) The Bene Israel community settled along the Konkan coast.
   (ii) It preserved the belief in one God.

2. **Why did Syriac Christians travel to Malabar?**
   Answer:

(i) Some faced persecution in West Asia.
(ii) They sought safety and freedom to practise their faith.

3. **Name two contributions of Armenians in India.**
Answer:
(i) Armenians contributed to commerce.
(ii) They also contributed to administration.

4. **Name two ways Tibetan refugees preserved their culture in India.**
Answer:
(i) They established settlements and schools.
(ii) They built monasteries to preserve religious traditions.

D. Three-Mark Descriptive Questions:

1. **Write three facts about the Parsis in India.**
Answer:
(i) The Parsis came from Persia.
(ii) They followed the Zoroastrian faith.
(iii) They settled in Gujarat.

2. **How did Arab merchants become connected with local communities?**
Answer:
(i) They came to India to trade.
(ii) Some settled in coastal regions.
(iii) Some married locally and formed connections with local people.

3. **What does the chapter teach about welcoming people from different backgrounds?**
Answer:
(i) People may migrate for safety, freedom, trade, or opportunity.
(ii) Communities can preserve their traditions while joining a new society.
(iii) Hospitality and respect help people live together peacefully.

E. Five-Mark Descriptive Questions:

1. **Describe the support given to Polish refugees during the Second World War.**
Answer:
(i) Polish refugees came to India during the Second World War.
(ii) Maharaja Digvijaysinhji of Nawanagar helped them.
(iii) He provided shelter to many refugees.
(iv) He especially cared for Polish orphans.
(v) His actions are remembered as an example of compassion.

2. **How did Tibetan refugees preserve their culture in India?**
Answer:
(i) They established settlements in India.
(ii) They created schools for education.
(iii) They established monasteries.
(iv) Monasteries helped preserve religious learning and practices.
(v) These efforts helped pass Tibetan traditions to future generations.

****

7th Standard Social Science Book (Part 2) Chapter 6

Chapter 6: The State, the Government, and You

6.1 Summary of the Chapter:

Summary: "The State, the Government, and You":

(1) A **state** has four key features: people, a defined territory, a government, and sovereignty.

(2) **Sovereignty** means a state has the authority to make and carry out its own laws without outside control.

(3) A **government** runs the state and makes, enforces, and interprets laws; governments may change after elections while the state continues.

(4) The three main organs of government are the **legislature**, which makes laws; the **executive**, which implements laws and policies; and the **judiciary**, which interprets laws and protects rights.

(5) A **democracy** allows people to choose their leaders through free and fair elections. A **republic** has an elected head of state rather than a hereditary monarch.

(6) India is a democratic republic. Its Constitution guarantees citizens' fundamental rights and limits the powers of government.

(7) The political executive includes elected leaders, while the permanent executive includes civil servants who implement policies and help keep government services running.

(8) The government acts as a **protector**, **provider**, and **regulator**—for example, maintaining law and order, providing public services, and regulating areas of public life.

(9) Citizens can engage with government by filing grievances, seeking information under the Right to Information Act, contacting representatives, using media, joining civil society organisations, and voting when eligible.

(10) An independent judiciary settles disputes, protects citizens' rights, and ensures that everyone—including the government—follows the law.

(11) India has three levels of government: **Union**, **State**, and **Local**. They handle matters affecting the country, each state, and local communities respectively.

(12) **Decentralisation** spreads decision-making across these levels. It helps local representatives address nearby needs, involve people, and remain accountable.

6.2 Important Formulas:

Important Rules for Solving Qualitative Questions:

(1) **Distinguish the state from the government.** The state includes people, territory, government, and sovereignty; the government is the system or group that runs the state and may change after elections.

(2) **Check for the four features of a state.** Identify its people, defined territory, government, and sovereignty when a question asks whether an area is a state.

(3) **Use the correct meaning of sovereignty.** It is a state's authority to make and implement its own laws without outside control.

(4) **Separate democracy from republic.** Democracy means people choose leaders through free and fair elections; a republic has an elected, not hereditary, head of state.

(5) **Remember that majority rule has limits.** Decisions must respect the Constitution and citizens' fundamental rights, including the rights of minorities.

(6) **Match each government organ to its function.** The legislature makes laws, the executive implements laws and policies, and the judiciary interprets laws, settles disputes, and protects rights.

(7) **Distinguish the two parts of the executive.** Political executives are elected leaders; permanent executives are civil servants who continue their work across changes of government.
(8) **Identify the level of government suited to the issue.** Union matters include defence and foreign affairs; state matters include police and health; local matters include streetlights, drainage, and parks.
(9) **Apply decentralisation to local problems.** Problems affecting a neighbourhood or village are usually best addressed by the local government because it is closer to the people.
(10) **Use the Constitution and rule of law when judging government action.** The government must follow the law, and the judiciary can check whether actions or laws violate rights.
(11) **Choose an appropriate way for citizens to raise an issue.** Depending on the situation, citizens can file a grievance, use the Right to Information Act, contact representatives, engage through media or civil society, or vote when eligible.
(12) **Support answers with a clear example.** For instance, a broken streetlight is a local concern, while national defence is a Union responsibility.

6.3 Fill-Up the Blank LOTS type questions with Answers: (35 Questions)

Fill in the Blanks – LOTS:

1. A state has four key features: people, territory, government, and _____.
Answer: Sovereignty
2. The people who live in a country form its permanent _____.
Answer: Population
3. A state has a geographically defined _____.
Answer: Territory
4. Sovereignty gives a state the power to make and implement its own _____.
Answer: Laws
5. A government is one part of the _____.
Answer: State
6. Governments may change after _____, while the state continues.
Answer: Elections
7. The branch of government that makes laws is the _____.
Answer: Legislature
8. The branch that carries out laws and policies is the _____.
Answer: Executive
9. The branch that interprets laws and settles disputes is the _____.
Answer: Judiciary
10. In a democracy, people choose their leaders through free and fair _____.
Answer: Elections
11. In a republic, the head of state is elected rather than _____.
Answer: Hereditary
12. India is a democratic _____.
Answer: Republic
13. The Constitution guarantees fundamental _____ to citizens.
Answer: Rights
14. The Constitution limits the powers of the _____.
Answer: Government
15. The police are responsible for maintaining law and _____.
Answer: Order

16. Police work closely with courts and other parts of the criminal justice _____.
Answer: System
17. The executive includes political and _____ executives.
Answer: Permanent
18. The prime minister and chief ministers are part of the political _____.
Answer: Executive
19. Civil servants are also called _____.
Answer: Bureaucrats
20. Civil servants are selected through examinations such as those conducted by the _____.
Answer: UPSC
21. Civil servants help implement laws, policies, and government _____.
Answer: Schemes
22. The government plays the roles of protector, provider, and _____.
Answer: Regulator
23. The Right to Information Act is commonly abbreviated as _____.
Answer: RTI
24. Citizens can use grievance redressal systems to register their _____.
Answer: Complaints
25. The Public Grievances Portal allows people to lodge complaints and _____.
Answer: Grievances
26. Citizens can write to their political _____ about public issues.
Answer: Representatives
27. Civil society organisations, including NGOs, work on issues such as health and the _____.
Answer: Environment
28. Citizens who are old enough can participate in elections by _____.
Answer: Voting
29. The judiciary is expected to be _____ from the government and politicians.
Answer: Independent
30. Judicial review helps the judiciary safeguard the _____.
Answer: Constitution
31. The principle that everyone must follow the law is called the rule of _____.
Answer: Law
32. India has three levels of government: Union, State, and _____.
Answer: Local
33. The Union Government looks after matters related to the whole _____.
Answer: Country
34. Defence and foreign affairs are responsibilities of the _____ Government.
Answer: Union
35. Police and health are examples of matters handled by _____ governments.
Answer: State
36. Panchayats and municipalities are examples of _____ governments.
Answer: Local
37. A broken streetlamp is usually a concern for the _____ government.
Answer: Local
38. The spreading of power and decision-making across levels is called _____.
Answer: Decentralisation
39. Decentralisation allows people to take part more directly in decisions that affect their _____ lives.

Answer: Daily

40. In the school education system, Parliament and State Legislatures make laws and approve _____.

Answer: Budgets

6.4 Fill-Up the Blank HOTS type questions with Answers: (40 Questions)

Fill in the Blanks – HOTS:

1. A country keeps the same territory and people even after its leaders change; this shows that the government can change while the _____ continues.

Answer: State

2. A place has people and territory but no independent authority to make its own decisions; it lacks _____.

Answer: Sovereignty

3. If citizens choose their leaders through free and fair elections, the country follows the principle of _____.

Answer: Democracy

4. If a country's head of state inherits the position as a monarch, it is not a _____.

Answer: Republic

5. A country has elections and an elected head of state; it can be both a democracy and a _____.

Answer: Republic

6. If elected leaders pass a law, the organ responsible for making laws is the _____.

Answer: Legislature

7. If government officers put a law into practice, they are carrying out the work of the _____.

Answer: Executive

8. If two people disagree about what a law means, the _____ can interpret it.

Answer: Judiciary

9. If a new law violates a citizen's fundamental rights, the citizen can seek protection through the _____.

Answer: Judiciary

10. If a government uses its power without limits, the Constitution's role is to _____ that power.

Answer: Limit

11. A rule supported by most residents but harmful to a minority should still be checked against people's _____.

Answer: Rights

12. When a government department provides public schools and hospitals, it is performing its role as a _____.

Answer: Provider

13. When the government maintains law and order to keep people safe, it acts as a _____.

Answer: Protector

14. When the government sets rules for economic activity and social justice, it acts as a _____.

Answer: Regulator

15. If an elected minister leaves office after an election but civil servants continue their work, the civil servants belong to the _____ executive.

Answer: Permanent

16. A citizen wants to know how much public money was spent on a road; the law that can help is the _____ to Information Act.

Answer: Right

17. If a government service is delayed and a citizen wants an official response, the citizen can file a _____.

Answer: Grievance

18. When residents use public information to question how a project was completed, they are promoting transparency and _____.

Answer: Accountability

19. If citizens share an issue publicly and tag the responsible officials, they are using the _____.

Answer: Media

20. When people join an organisation to persuade the government to protect a forest, they are engaging through _____ society.

Answer: Civil

21. If citizens want to choose leaders who support their concerns, they can participate by _____ in elections.

Answer: Voting

22. A broken streetlight affects one neighbourhood, so the first level of government to approach is usually the _____ government.

Answer: Local

23. If a village road needs repair, local people can raise the matter with their _____ government.

Answer: Local

24. If a matter concerns the country's defence, it should be handled by the _____ Government.

Answer: Union

25. If a matter concerns police in a particular state, it usually falls under the _____ government.

Answer: State

26. When a country shares decision-making between national, state, and local levels, it practises _____.

Answer: Decentralisation

27. Local leaders may make better decisions about a neighbourhood because they know its _____ and needs.

Answer: Area

28. When residents can question leaders who live and work nearby, local government becomes more _____ to the people.

Answer: Accountable

29. If people participate in decisions about their own village or town, decentralisation makes governance more _____.

Answer: Democratic

30. If only one central authority decides every local matter, the principle of _____ is weakened.

Answer: Decentralisation

31. When a state, rather than visitors, has people who live there permanently, it has a permanent _____.

Answer: Population

32. If neighbouring countries agree on lines that separate their territories, those lines define the state's _____.

Answer: Boundaries

33. When police maintain safety, they must still respect the rights guaranteed by the _____.

Answer: Constitution

34. If a court checks whether a government action breaks the law, it is protecting the rule of _____.

Answer: Law

35. If civil servants carry out a policy approved by elected leaders, they are implementing government _____.

Answer: Policies

36. When voters elect representatives to speak and act on their behalf, those representatives provide political _____.

Answer: Representation

37. If a government's lawmaking, law-implementing, and law-checking functions are assigned to different organs, these are the three _____ of government.

Answer: Pillars

38. When the judiciary is not controlled by politicians, it can make decisions more _____.

Answer: Independently

39. If local people discuss a water-supply problem with their municipality, they are addressing the issue at the level closest to _____.

Answer: Them

40. If citizens use a grievance portal, contact representatives, and vote when eligible, they are actively engaging with the _____.

Answer: Government

6.5 One-mark questions with Answers of LOTS Type: (40 Questions)

One-Mark Descriptive Questions – LOTS:

1. **What are the four features of a state?**
   Answer: The four features are people, territory, government, and sovereignty.
2. **What does sovereignty mean?**
   Answer: Sovereignty is a state's authority to make and implement its own laws without outside control.
3. **What is a government?**
   Answer: A government is the group of people or system that runs a country.
4. **Does a government change after elections while the state remains?**
   Answer: Yes, governments may change after elections while the state continues.
5. **Which organ of government makes laws?**
   Answer: The legislature makes laws.
6. **Which organ implements laws and policies?**
   Answer: The executive implements laws and policies.
7. **Which organ interprets laws and settles disputes?**
   Answer: The judiciary interprets laws and settles disputes.
8. **What does democracy mean in the chapter?**
   Answer: Democracy means that people choose their government through free and fair elections.
9. **What is a republic?**
   Answer: A republic is a system in which the head of state is elected rather than hereditary.

10. **Who is the head of state in India?**
    Answer: The President is the head of state in India.
11. **Is India a democratic republic?**
    Answer: Yes, India is a democratic republic.
12. **What does the Constitution guarantee to Indian citizens?**
    Answer: The Constitution guarantees fundamental rights to Indian citizens.
13. **Why does the Constitution limit government powers?**
    Answer: It limits government powers to protect people's rights and freedoms.
14. **What is meant by "dominance of the majority"?**
    Answer: It is a situation in which the majority's interests are pursued at the expense of minority rights.
15. **What is the main responsibility of the police in a state?**
    Answer: The police are responsible for maintaining law and order in the state.
16. **Which part of the government do government departments belong to?**
    Answer: Government departments belong to the executive.
17. **Who are part of the political executive?**
    Answer: Elected leaders such as the Prime Minister, Chief Ministers, and their ministers are part of the political executive.
18. **Who are part of the permanent executive?**
    Answer: Civil servants and government officers form the permanent executive.
19. **What are civil servants also called?**
    Answer: Civil servants are also called bureaucrats.
20. **Name one function of the permanent executive.**
    Answer: The permanent executive implements laws, policies, and government schemes.
21. **What three roles does the government perform?**
    Answer: The government acts as a protector, provider, and regulator.
22. **What does the government do as a provider?**
    Answer: As a provider, the government offers public services and infrastructure.
23. **What is the Right to Information Act used for?**
    Answer: The Right to Information Act allows citizens to ask for information about government actions.
24. **What can citizens do through a grievance redressal system?**
    Answer: Citizens can use it to register complaints about government services or actions.
25. **How can citizens raise a public issue through the media?**
    Answer: Citizens can share the issue through print, electronic, or social media.
26. **What is one way civil society organisations help citizens?**
    Answer: Civil society organisations raise public issues and work to encourage government action.
27. **How can citizens choose leaders who support their concerns?**
    Answer: Citizens can vote in elections when they are eligible.
28. **Why is the judiciary independent in India?**
    Answer: Its independence helps ensure that justice is fair and equal.
29. **What does the judiciary do when people disagree about the meaning of a law?**
    Answer: The judiciary interprets the law.
30. **What is judicial review?**
    Answer: Judicial review is the judiciary's power to check whether laws or actions follow the Constitution.

31. **What is meant by the rule of law?**
    Answer: The rule of law means that everyone, including the government, must follow the law.
32. **What are the three levels of government in India?**
    Answer: The three levels are Union, State, and Local government.
33. **Which level of government is responsible for defence?**
    Answer: The Union Government is responsible for defence.
34. **Name one subject handled by State governments.**
    Answer: State governments handle subjects such as police, health, or agriculture.
35. **Name one issue handled by Local governments.**
    Answer: Local governments handle issues such as water supply, drainage, or streetlights.
36. **What is decentralisation?**
    Answer: Decentralisation is the sharing of power and decision-making across different levels of government.
37. **Why is local government useful for solving local problems?**
    Answer: Local government is close to the people and understands their local needs.
38. **What are panchayats and municipalities examples of?**
    Answer: Panchayats and municipalities are examples of Local government.
39. **What did the Silent Valley movement help protect?**
    Answer: The movement helped protect the forests and biodiversity of Silent Valley.
40. **What does the chapter encourage citizens to do?**
    Answer: The chapter encourages citizens to stay informed and engage with the government.

6.6 One-mark questions with Answers of HOTS Type: (30 Questions)

One-Mark Descriptive Questions – HOTS:

1. **A new group of leaders takes office after an election. What remains unchanged?**
   Answer: The state remains unchanged even when the government changes.
2. **A place has a population and territory but cannot make its own decisions. Which feature of a state is missing?**
   Answer: Sovereignty is missing.
3. **A country allows people to choose their leaders in free and fair elections. What form of government does this show?**
   Answer: It shows democracy.
4. **A head of state receives the position through family inheritance. Is this a republic?**
   Answer: No, because a republic has an elected rather than hereditary head of state.
5. **Why can a country be both a democracy and a republic?**
   Answer: People can choose their leaders through elections while also having an elected head of state.
6. **A law is passed by the legislature, but officials must put it into practice. Which organ is responsible?**
   Answer: The executive is responsible for implementing it.
7. **Two people disagree about how a law should be understood. Which organ should interpret it?**
   Answer: The judiciary should interpret the law.
8. **A law is supported by most people but violates a minority's rights. What should limit the majority's decision?**
   Answer: The Constitution and fundamental rights should limit it.

9. **Why should the government's power be limited by the Constitution?**
   Answer: Limits help prevent misuse of power and protect citizens' rights.
10. **A resident believes that public money was not properly used on a road. Which law can help them seek information?**
    Answer: The Right to Information Act can help them seek the information.
11. **A person is unhappy with a delayed government service. What can they file to seek a response?**
    Answer: They can file a grievance with the relevant department.
12. **A community wants to draw attention to a local problem. How can media help?**
    Answer: Media can share the issue publicly and draw the attention of officials.
13. **Why might a local government be better placed to fix a broken streetlight than the Union Government?**
    Answer: Local officials are closer to the area and its needs.
14. **A village needs a local road repaired. Which level of government should residents approach first?**
    Answer: They should approach the local government.
15. **A country needs to make a decision about national defence. Which level of government is responsible?**
    Answer: The Union Government is responsible.
16. **Why does India need more than one level of government?**
    Answer: Its large and diverse population has needs that one central government cannot manage alone.
17. **How does decentralisation help people take part in decisions?**
    Answer: It gives people more opportunities to participate in decisions affecting their daily lives.
18. **Why can local leaders sometimes understand a problem better than distant officials?**
    Answer: Local leaders are more familiar with the area, its people, and their needs.
19. **A government officer continues working after a new party wins an election. Which type of executive is the officer part of?**
    Answer: The officer is part of the permanent executive.
20. **Why does the permanent executive help keep government services running?**
    Answer: Civil servants continue their work even when elected leaders change.
21. **A court checks whether a government action violates the Constitution. What is this an example of?**
    Answer: It is an example of judicial review.
22. **Why is an independent judiciary important in a democracy?**
    Answer: It can protect rights and decide disputes without control by politicians.
23. **A group of citizens joins an organisation to campaign for forest protection. What form of public engagement is this?**
    Answer: It is engagement through civil society.
24. **How did public action help protect Silent Valley?**
    Answer: Organisations and citizens raised public concern, helping lead to the project's cancellation and the forest's protection.
25. **Why should the police respect the Constitution while maintaining law and order?**
    Answer: Their work must protect public safety without violating citizens' rights.
26. **A majority votes for a rule that harms elderly residents. What should decision-makers consider before keeping the rule?**

Answer: They should consider whether the rule unfairly harms people's rights or well-being.

27. **A citizen wants leaders who will address local concerns. What democratic action can they take when eligible?**
    Answer: They can vote for representatives whose plans address those concerns.
28. **How can the judiciary protect a citizen whose fundamental rights are violated?**
    Answer: The citizen can approach a court to seek protection of those rights.
29. **Why are civil servants important even though they are not elected?**
    Answer: They provide expertise and implement laws, policies, and public services.
30. **How can citizens help make government more accountable?**
    Answer: They can ask for information, report grievances, contact representatives, and participate in public discussion.

6.7 Two-mark questions with Answers of LOTS Type: (30 Questions)

Two-Mark Descriptive Questions – LOTS:

1. **What are the four features of a state?**
   Answer:
   (i) A state has people, a defined territory, and a government.
   (ii) It also has sovereignty.
2. **What does sovereignty mean?**
   Answer:
   (i) Sovereignty means a state has authority over its own matters.
   (ii) It can make and implement laws without outside control.
3. **How is a state different from a government?**
   Answer:
   (i) A state includes its people, territory, government, and sovereignty.
   (ii) A government is the system or group that runs the state.
4. **What happens to the state when a government changes?**
   Answer:
   (i) Governments may change after elections.
   (ii) The state continues to exist.
5. **What is the role of the legislature?**
   Answer:
   (i) The legislature makes laws.
   (ii) It represents people through elected members.
6. **What is the role of the executive?**
   Answer:
   (i) The executive implements laws.
   (ii) It also makes and carries out policies.
7. **What are two functions of the judiciary?**
   Answer:
   (i) The judiciary interprets laws and settles disputes.
   (ii) It protects citizens' rights.
8. **What is democracy?**
   Answer:
   (i) Democracy means rule by the people.
   (ii) People choose their government through free and fair elections.
9. **What is a republic?**
   Answer:

(i) In a republic, the head of state is elected.
(ii) The position is not inherited as a hereditary title.

10. **How are democracy and republic different?**
Answer:
(i) Democracy focuses on people choosing their government.
(ii) A republic focuses on having an elected head of state.
11. **How does the Constitution protect citizens?**
Answer:
(i) It guarantees fundamental rights to citizens.
(ii) It limits the powers of the government.
12. **Why should the rights of minorities be protected?**
Answer:
(i) A majority's decision may sometimes harm a smaller group.
(ii) The Constitution protects everyone's fundamental rights.
13. **What is the responsibility of the police in each state?**
Answer:
(i) The police maintain law and order.
(ii) They help protect people from crime and violence.
14. **What are the two parts of the executive?**
Answer:
(i) The executive has a political part.
(ii) It also has a permanent part.
15. **Who are the political executives?**
Answer:
(i) Political executives are elected leaders.
(ii) They include the Prime Minister, Chief Ministers, and ministers.
16. **Who are the permanent executives?**
Answer:
(i) Permanent executives are government officers who are not elected.
(ii) They are also called civil servants or bureaucrats.
17. **State two functions of civil servants.**
Answer:
(i) They implement laws, policies, and government schemes.
(ii) They help provide public services and maintain government records.
18. **What three roles does the government perform?**
Answer:
(i) The government acts as a protector and provider.
(ii) It also acts as a regulator.
19. **How does the government act as a protector and provider?**
Answer:
(i) It protects people by maintaining law and order.
(ii) It provides services such as education and infrastructure.
20. **How can citizens use the grievance redressal system?**
Answer:
(i) Citizens can report problems with government services.
(ii) The relevant department can respond to their complaints.
21. **What is the Right to Information Act used for?**
Answer:
(i) It allows citizens to ask for information about government actions.
(ii) This promotes transparency and accountability.

22. **How can citizens use the media to raise concerns?**
    Answer:
    (i) They can share public issues through print or electronic media.
    (ii) They can also contact officials through social media platforms.
23. **What is the role of civil society organisations?**
    Answer:
    (i) They work on issues such as health, education, and the environment.
    (ii) They can raise public concerns and work with the government.
24. **How can citizens take part in elections?**
    Answer:
    (i) Citizens who are old enough can register and vote.
    (ii) Voting helps them choose their representatives.
25. **Why is the judiciary independent?**
    Answer:
    (i) It is not controlled by the government or politicians.
    (ii) Its independence helps ensure fair justice.
26. **What is judicial review?**
    Answer:
    (i) Judicial review allows courts to check laws and government actions.
    (ii) It helps safeguard the Constitution.
27. **What are the three levels of government in India?**
    Answer:
    (i) The Union and State governments are two levels.
    (ii) Local government is the third level.
28. **What responsibilities belong to the Union Government?**
    Answer:
    (i) It handles matters concerning the whole country.
    (ii) Defence and foreign affairs are examples.
29. **What responsibilities belong to State governments?**
    Answer:
    (i) State governments look after the needs of people in their states.
    (ii) Police, health, and agriculture are examples of state matters.
30. **What responsibilities belong to Local governments?**
    Answer:
    (i) Local governments work in villages, towns, and cities.
    (ii) They address concerns such as drainage, water, and streetlights.

6.8. Two-mark questions with Answers of HOTS Type: (30 Questions)

Two-Mark Descriptive Questions – HOTS:

1. **A new party forms the government after an election. What changes, and what remains the same?**
   Answer:
   (i) The group running the government changes.
   (ii) The state, including its people and territory, continues.
2. **A territory has people and boundaries but cannot make its own laws. Which feature of a state is missing, and why is it important?**
   Answer:
   (i) It lacks sovereignty.
   (ii) Sovereignty gives a state authority to make and implement its own laws.

3. **A country holds elections, but its head of state inherits the position. How should this system be described?**
   Answer:
   (i) It may be a democracy if people choose their government in free and fair elections.
   (ii) It is not a republic because the head of state is hereditary.
4. **Why can India be described as both a democracy and a republic?**
   Answer:
   (i) People choose representatives through elections.
   (ii) India's head of state, the President, is elected rather than inheriting the position.
5. **A law is proposed, approved, and then carried out. Which organs perform the first and last tasks?**
   Answer:
   (i) The legislature makes and approves laws.
   (ii) The executive implements them.
6. **Two citizens disagree about the meaning of a law. Which organ should resolve the disagreement, and what is its role?**
   Answer:
   (i) The judiciary should address the disagreement.
   (ii) It interprets laws and settles disputes.
7. **A popular rule harms a small group of residents. What principle should guide the decision, and why?**
   Answer:
   (i) The rule should be checked against the Constitution and fundamental rights.
   (ii) Majority support does not justify violating the rights of a minority.
8. **Why should an elected government not have unlimited power?**
   Answer:
   (i) Unlimited power could be misused against citizens.
   (ii) The Constitution limits government power and protects people's rights.
9. **A citizen wants to know how public money was spent on a road. What can the citizen do, and what does this promote?**
   Answer:
   (i) The citizen can request the information under the Right to Information Act.
   (ii) Access to information promotes transparency and accountability.
10. **A government department has not acted on a service request. What can a citizen do to seek a response?**
    Answer:
    (i) The citizen can file a grievance with the relevant department or portal.
    (ii) This asks the department to address the complaint.
11. **Residents want officials to notice a local safety concern. How can media help them?**
    Answer:
    (i) Residents can share the concern through print, electronic, or social media.
    (ii) Public attention may encourage the responsible officials to act.
12. **A citizens' group campaigns to protect a forest. What kind of participation is this, and how can it influence government?**
    Answer:
    (i) It is participation through civil society.
    (ii) The group can raise public concern and encourage government action.
13. **A neighbourhood streetlight has stopped working. Which level of government should residents contact, and why?**

Answer:
(i) They should contact the local government.
(ii) Streetlights are a local issue, and local officials are closest to the area.

14. **A village road needs repair. Why is the local government a suitable first contact?**
Answer:
(i) The problem affects the local community.
(ii) Local representatives understand nearby needs and can address local matters.
15. **A proposal concerns the country's defence. Which level of government should handle it, and why?**
Answer:
(i) The Union Government should handle it.
(ii) Defence concerns the whole country.
16. **Why is one central government not enough to address every need in India?**
Answer:
(i) India has a very large and diverse population spread across many regions.
(ii) Different communities have national, state, and local needs.
17. **How does decentralisation help people participate in government?**
Answer:
(i) It gives local people a greater role in decisions affecting daily life.
(ii) They can discuss local issues with representatives closer to them.
18. **How can decentralisation make local leaders more accountable?**
Answer:
(i) Residents can approach local leaders more easily.
(ii) They can question decisions and ask for explanations.
19. **An elected leader leaves office, but a government officer remains at work. Why?**
Answer:
(i) The leader belongs to the political executive and may change after elections.
(ii) The officer belongs to the permanent executive, which continues across governments.
20. **Why is the permanent executive needed when elected leaders make the main decisions?**
Answer:
(i) Civil servants provide expertise and help manage government work.
(ii) They implement policies and services even when political leaders change.
21. **A court checks whether a government action violates the Constitution. What is this process, and why does it matter?**
Answer:
(i) The process is judicial review.
(ii) It helps safeguard the Constitution and citizens' rights.
22. **Why is an independent judiciary important when citizens challenge government action?**
Answer:
(i) It can consider a dispute without control by politicians.
(ii) It can protect rights and ensure that the law is followed.
23. **Police are maintaining order during a public event. What limit must they respect?**
Answer:
(i) They must respect the rights guaranteed by the Constitution.
(ii) Maintaining safety does not permit them to ignore citizens' rights.

24. **A town's residents want to improve local water supply. Name two ways they can engage with government.**
    Answer:
    (i) They can raise the issue with their local representatives or file a grievance.
    (ii) They can organise through a community group to draw attention to the problem.
25. **How did citizens and organisations help protect Silent Valley?**
    Answer:
    (i) NGOs and members of the public mobilised opinion against the proposed project.
    (ii) Their efforts contributed to the project's cancellation and the area's protection.
26. **A citizen wants leaders who will address an issue important to them. What action can they take, and when?**
    Answer:
    (i) They can vote for candidates whose plans address the issue.
    (ii) They can do this when eligible during an election.
27. **Why does the rule of law apply to the government as well as citizens?**
    Answer:
    (i) It means everyone must follow the law.
    (ii) It prevents government power from being used without legal limits.
28. **A student says that civil servants make all political decisions. What correction should be made?**
    Answer:
    (i) Elected political executives make major policy and political decisions.
    (ii) Civil servants advise and implement laws, policies, and schemes.
29. **How do the legislature, executive, and judiciary help prevent arbitrary decisions?**
    Answer:
    (i) The legislature creates rules through laws.
    (ii) The executive implements them while the judiciary interprets laws and checks legality.
30. **How can citizens help make government more responsive?**
    Answer:
    (i) They can raise concerns through grievances, representatives, media, or civil society.
    (ii) They can seek information and vote when eligible.

6.9. Three-mark questions with Answers of LOTS Type: (30 Questions)

Three-Mark Descriptive Questions – LOTS:

1. **What are the four features of a state?**
   Answer:
   (i) A state has people who live in it permanently.
   (ii) It has a defined territory and a government.
   (iii) It has sovereignty.
2. **What is sovereignty?**
   Answer:
   (i) Sovereignty is the full authority of a state over its own matters.
   (ii) It allows the state to make laws according to its needs.
   (iii) It means that no outside authority controls the state's internal affairs.
3. **How is a state different from a government?**
   Answer:

(i) A state includes its people and territory.
(ii) It also includes government and sovereignty.
(iii) A government runs the state and may change after elections.

4. **What are the three main functions of government?**
   Answer:
   (i) The government makes laws through the legislature.
   (ii) It implements laws and policies through the executive.
   (iii) It interprets laws and settles disputes through the judiciary.
5. **What is democracy?**
   Answer:
   (i) Democracy means rule by the people.
   (ii) People choose their government through elections.
   (iii) These elections should be free and fair.
6. **What is a republic?**
   Answer:
   (i) In a republic, the head of state is elected.
   (ii) The position is not inherited from a family.
   (iii) The powers of rulers are limited by a constitution or laws.
7. **How are democracy and republic different?**
   Answer:
   (i) Democracy refers to people choosing their government.
   (ii) A republic refers to an elected head of state.
   (iii) A country can be both a democracy and a republic.
8. **Why is India called a democratic republic?**
   Answer:
   (i) People choose their representatives through elections.
   (ii) India's head of state is the elected President.
   (iii) The Constitution limits government powers and protects rights.
9. **How does the Constitution protect citizens' rights?**
   Answer:
   (i) It guarantees fundamental rights to citizens.
   (ii) It limits the powers of elected leaders and government officers.
   (iii) It prevents laws from unfairly violating citizens' rights.
10. **What is the role of the legislature?**
    Answer:
    (i) The legislature is the lawmaking organ of government.
    (ii) It represents people through elected members.
    (iii) State legislatures make laws for their respective states.
11. **What is the role of the executive?**
    Answer:
    (i) The executive implements laws made by the legislature.
    (ii) It makes and carries out policies.
    (iii) It manages the day-to-day work of government.
12. **What are the functions of the judiciary?**
    Answer:
    (i) The judiciary interprets laws.
    (ii) It settles disputes and protects citizens' rights.
    (iii) It checks whether laws and government actions follow the Constitution.
13. **What are the two parts of the executive?**
    Answer:

(i) The political executive consists of elected leaders.
(ii) The permanent executive consists of civil servants and officers.
(iii) Both parts work together to run the government.

14. **Who are political executives?**
Answer:
(i) Political executives are leaders chosen through elections.
(ii) They include the Prime Minister, Chief Ministers, and ministers.
(iii) They make major decisions and set goals for the country.
15. **Who are permanent executives?**
Answer:
(i) Permanent executives are government officers who are not elected.
(ii) They are also known as civil servants or bureaucrats.
(iii) They continue their work when elected governments change.
16. **What are three functions of civil servants?**
Answer:
(i) They implement laws, policies, and schemes.
(ii) They help deliver public services and address grievances.
(iii) They maintain records of government work and decisions.
17. **What three roles does the government perform?**
Answer:
(i) The government acts as a protector by maintaining law and order.
(ii) It acts as a provider by offering public services and infrastructure.
(iii) It acts as a regulator of economic activity and social justice.
18. **What is the role of the police?**
Answer:
(i) The police maintain law and order within each state.
(ii) They help protect people from crime and violence.
(iii) They must respect the rights guaranteed by the Constitution.
19. **How can citizens raise a grievance with the government?**
Answer:
(i) They can contact the grievance redressal office of a department.
(ii) They can lodge a complaint through the Public Grievances Portal.
(iii) They can approach the appropriate vigilance commission about corruption.
20. **What is the Right to Information Act?**
Answer:
(i) It allows citizens to request information about government actions.
(ii) Citizens can ask about public spending and government projects.
(iii) It promotes transparency and accountability.
21. **How can citizens engage with the government through civil society?**
Answer:
(i) Citizens can join an organisation such as an NGO.
(ii) These organisations work on issues such as health, education, or the environment.
(iii) They raise issues and encourage the government to address them.
22. **How can citizens use media to raise public concerns?**
Answer:
(i) They can write about issues in print or electronic media.
(ii) They can share concerns through social media.
(iii) They can contact or tag the relevant officials.
23. **What is the role of the judiciary in protecting the Constitution?**
Answer:

(i) It checks whether laws and government actions follow the law.
(ii) It protects the rights and freedoms given by the Constitution.
(iii) It uses judicial review to safeguard the Constitution.

24. **What does the rule of law mean?**
Answer:
(i) Everyone must follow the law.
(ii) Government leaders and officers must also follow the law.
(iii) The judiciary helps protect this principle.
25. **What are the three levels of government in India?**
Answer:
(i) The Union Government works at the national level.
(ii) State governments work at the state level.
(iii) Local governments work in villages, towns, and cities.
26. **What matters are handled by the Union Government?**
Answer:
(i) It handles matters concerning the whole country.
(ii) Defence and foreign affairs are examples.
(iii) It is also responsible for currency.
27. **What matters are handled by State governments?**
Answer:
(i) State governments address the needs of people in their states.
(ii) Police, land, and health are examples of state matters.
(iii) Agriculture and education are also listed in the chapter.
28. **What matters are handled by Local governments?**
Answer:
(i) Local governments address problems in villages, towns, and cities.
(ii) They deal with matters such as water, drainage, and streetlights.
(iii) Parks and other local concerns are also handled at this level.
29. **What is decentralisation?**
Answer:
(i) Decentralisation means spreading power and decision-making across levels.
(ii) It prevents power from being concentrated in one place or group.
(iii) It allows local matters to be handled closer to the people.
30. **Why is decentralisation important?**
Answer:
(i) It gives people more opportunities to participate in decisions.
(ii) Local leaders often understand the area and its needs better.
(iii) People can more easily question local leaders and seek answers.

6.10. Three-mark questions with Answers of HOTS Type: (30 Questions)

Three-Mark Descriptive Questions – HOTS:

1. **A new government takes office after an election. Explain what changes and what continues.**
Answer:
(i) The leaders running the government may change.
(ii) The state's people and territory remain.
(iii) The state continues even when its government changes.
2. **A territory has people and boundaries but cannot make its own laws. Which feature of a state is missing, and why does it matter?**

Answer:
(i) The territory lacks sovereignty.
(ii) Sovereignty gives a state authority over its own affairs.
(iii) It enables the state to make and implement laws without outside control.

3. **A country elects its representatives but has a hereditary monarch as head of state. Is it a democracy, a republic, or both? Explain.**
Answer:
(i) It may be a democracy if elections are free and fair.
(ii) It is not a republic because the head of state inherits the position.
(iii) The example shows that democracy and republic describe different features.
4. **Why is India described as both a democracy and a republic?**
Answer:
(i) People choose their representatives through elections.
(ii) India's head of state, the President, is elected.
(iii) The Constitution sets limits on the powers of government.
5. **A proposed law has been made, but no department is carrying it out. Which organ's work is missing, and what does it do?**
Answer:
(i) The executive's work is missing.
(ii) The executive implements laws and policies.
(iii) It also manages the day-to-day activities of government.
6. **A dispute arises about what a law means. Which organ should address it, and how?**
Answer:
(i) The judiciary should address the dispute.
(ii) It interprets the law.
(iii) It can settle the disagreement according to the law.
7. **A rule supported by most residents harms a minority group. What should decision-makers consider before enforcing it?**
Answer:
(i) They should check whether the rule violates fundamental rights.
(ii) The Constitution protects the rights of all citizens.
(iii) Majority support does not justify unfairly harming a minority.
8. **Why are constitutional limits needed even when leaders are elected?**
Answer:
(i) Elected leaders still exercise government power.
(ii) Unchecked power could threaten citizens' rights.
(iii) The Constitution provides limits and safeguards.
9. **A citizen wants to know how much public money was spent on a road. How can the citizen act, and what does this promote?**
Answer:
(i) The citizen can request information under the Right to Information Act.
(ii) The request can seek details about public spending.
(iii) Access to information promotes transparency and accountability.
10. **A government department has not responded to a complaint about a public service. What steps can the citizen take?**
Answer:
(i) The citizen can contact the department's grievance redressal office.
(ii) The citizen can lodge a complaint through the Public Grievances Portal.
(iii) The complaint asks the department to address the problem.

11. **A neighbourhood is concerned about unsafe roads. How could citizens use the media to raise the issue?**
    Answer:
    (i) They can describe the problem through print or electronic media.
    (ii) They can share their concerns on social media.
    (iii) They can contact the relevant officials through those platforms.
12. **A group wants the government to protect a forest. How can civil society help?**
    Answer:
    (i) Members can organise through an NGO or citizens' group.
    (ii) They can inform the public about the forest issue.
    (iii) They can urge the government to take protective action.
13. **A streetlight in a neighbourhood has stopped working. Which government should residents contact, and why?**
    Answer:
    (i) Residents should contact the local government.
    (ii) Streetlights are a local concern.
    (iii) Local representatives are close to the people and their needs.
14. **A village road needs repair. Explain why local government is a suitable level to approach first.**
    Answer:
    (i) The road problem affects the village community.
    (ii) Local representatives know the area and its needs.
    (iii) Local decision-making can address such concerns directly.
15. **A decision concerns the country's defence. Which level of government is responsible, and why?**
    Answer:
    (i) The Union Government is responsible.
    (ii) Defence concerns the whole country.
    (iii) The Union Government handles matters of national importance.
16. **Why does India need Union, State, and Local governments?**
    Answer:
    (i) India is large and has many communities and localities.
    (ii) People have needs at national, state, and local levels.
    (iii) Different levels can address the matters suited to their responsibilities.
17. **How does decentralisation help people take part in decisions?**
    Answer:
    (i) It gives people more opportunities to participate in local decisions.
    (ii) They can discuss problems affecting their daily lives.
    (iii) Local representatives can take up those concerns.
18. **How can decentralisation improve the accountability of local leaders?**
    Answer:
    (i) Local leaders are closer to the people they represent.
    (ii) Residents can more easily question them about decisions.
    (iii) Leaders can be asked to explain their actions.
19. **An elected minister leaves office, but government officers continue working. Explain why.**
    Answer:
    (i) The minister is part of the political executive.
    (ii) Government officers are part of the permanent executive.
    (iii) The permanent executive helps maintain the continuity of government work.

20. **Why does the government need both political and permanent executives?**
Answer:
(i) Political executives make major decisions and set goals.
(ii) Permanent executives provide expertise and implement policies.
(iii) Together, they help run the government.
21. **A court checks whether a government action violates the Constitution. What is this called, and why is it important?**
Answer:
(i) This is judicial review.
(ii) It allows the judiciary to check government actions against the law.
(iii) It helps safeguard the Constitution and citizens' rights.
22. **Why does a democracy need an independent judiciary?**
Answer:
(i) An independent judiciary is not controlled by politicians.
(ii) It can settle disputes and protect citizens' rights fairly.
(iii) It helps ensure that everyone follows the law.
23. **Police are maintaining order during a public event. What responsibilities and limits apply to them?**
Answer:
(i) They are responsible for maintaining law and order.
(ii) They must protect people from crime and violence.
(iii) They must respect rights guaranteed by the Constitution.
24. **Residents want to improve the water supply in their town. Describe three ways they can engage with government.**
Answer:
(i) They can raise the issue with local representatives.
(ii) They can file a grievance with the relevant department.
(iii) They can work through a citizens' group to draw attention to the problem.
25. **How did public participation help protect Silent Valley?**
Answer:
(i) NGOs mobilised public opinion against the proposed project.
(ii) Scientists, writers, teachers, villagers, and others joined the campaign.
(iii) The Central Government cancelled the project, and Silent Valley later became a National Park.
26. **How can voting help citizens influence government decisions?**
Answer:
(i) Citizens can choose representatives whose plans reflect their concerns.
(ii) Elected representatives make decisions and represent the people.
(iii) Voting gives citizens a role in choosing who governs.
27. **How does the rule of law protect citizens from misuse of power?**
Answer:
(i) It requires everyone to follow the law.
(ii) Government leaders and officers are also subject to the law.
(iii) The judiciary can address unlawful actions and protect rights.
28. **A student claims that civil servants replace elected leaders in making government policy. Explain the correct roles.**
Answer:
(i) Elected political leaders make major decisions and set policy goals.
(ii) Civil servants give expert advice and implement policies.
(iii) Both groups have different but connected responsibilities.

29. **How do the three organs of government help ensure that decisions follow laws?**
Answer:
(i) The legislature makes laws.
(ii) The executive implements the laws.
(iii) The judiciary interprets laws and checks that they are followed.
30. **What three actions can citizens take to make government more responsive?**
Answer:
(i) They can seek information or file grievances about government work.
(ii) They can contact representatives or raise issues through media and civil society.
(iii) They can vote when eligible.

6.11 Five-mark questions with Answers of LOTS Type: (20 Questions)

Five-Mark Descriptive Questions – LOTS:

1. **What are the four features of a state?**
Answer:
(i) A state has a permanent population.
(ii) It has a defined territory.
(iii) It has a government.
(iv) It has sovereignty.
(v) These features together make up a state.
2. **Explain the meaning of sovereignty.**
Answer:
(i) Sovereignty is the full authority of a state over its own matters.
(ii) It allows a state to make laws according to its needs.
(iii) It allows the state to implement those laws.
(iv) No outside state or body can control its internal affairs.
(v) Sovereignty is an essential feature of a state.
3. **How is a state different from a government?**
Answer:
(i) A state includes the people who live in a country.
(ii) It includes the country's defined territory.
(iii) It has sovereignty.
(iv) The government is the system or group that runs the state.
(v) A government may change after elections while the state continues.
4. **Describe the three main organs of government.**
Answer:
(i) The legislature is the lawmaking organ.
(ii) The executive implements laws and policies.
(iii) The judiciary interprets laws.
(iv) The judiciary also settles disputes.
(v) Together, these are the three main organs of government.
5. **What is democracy?**
Answer:
(i) Democracy means rule by the people.
(ii) People have the power to choose their government.
(iii) They choose their representatives through elections.
(iv) The elections should be free and fair.
(v) India is a democracy.

6. **What is a republic?**
   Answer:
   (i) A republic has an elected head of state.
   (ii) The head of state does not inherit the position as a monarch.
   (iii) The head of state may be elected directly or indirectly by the people.
   (iv) A constitution or laws limit the powers of rulers.
   (v) India is a republic.
7. **Why is India called a democratic republic?**
   Answer:
   (i) People choose their representatives through elections.
   (ii) The President is India's head of state.
   (iii) The President is elected rather than inheriting the position.
   (iv) The Constitution guarantees fundamental rights.
   (v) The Constitution limits the powers of government.
8. **How does the Constitution protect citizens?**
   Answer:
   (i) It guarantees fundamental rights to citizens.
   (ii) It sets limits on the powers of government.
   (iii) It protects people's freedoms.
   (iv) It helps prevent unfair laws from violating rights.
   (v) It provides the framework for government.
9. **What is the role of the legislature?**
   Answer:
   (i) The legislature makes laws.
   (ii) In a democracy, it represents the people.
   (iii) Parliament makes laws for the country.
   (iv) State legislatures make laws for their states.
   (v) Legislatures help governance follow defined rules.
10. **What is the role of the executive?**
    Answer:
    (i) The executive implements laws made by the legislature.
    (ii) It makes and carries out policies.
    (iii) It enforces laws.
    (iv) It manages the day-to-day work of government.
    (v) It includes political and permanent executives.
11. **Describe the functions of the judiciary.**
    Answer:
    (i) The judiciary makes sure laws are followed.
    (ii) It interprets laws when their meaning is unclear.
    (iii) It settles disputes.
    (iv) It protects citizens' rights and freedoms.
    (v) It safeguards the Constitution through judicial review.
12. **What is the difference between the political and permanent executives?**
    Answer:
    (i) The political executive consists of elected leaders.
    (ii) It includes the Prime Minister, Chief Ministers, and ministers.
    (iii) The permanent executive consists of government officers.
    (iv) Permanent executive officers are also called civil servants or bureaucrats.
    (v) They continue their work when elected governments change.

13. **What are the functions of the permanent executive?**
Answer:
(i) It implements laws and government policies.
(ii) It carries out government schemes.
(iii) It helps provide public services.
(iv) It maintains records of government work.
(v) It helps connect citizens with the government.
14. **What roles does the government perform?**
Answer:
(i) The government acts as a protector.
(ii) It maintains law and order and provides defence.
(iii) It acts as a provider of welfare and infrastructure.
(iv) It acts as a regulator of economic activity and social justice.
(v) It performs these roles through laws, institutions, and public services.
15. **What are the responsibilities of the police?**
Answer:
(i) The police maintain law and order within each state.
(ii) They help keep people safe from crime and violence.
(iii) They investigate crimes.
(iv) They work with courts and other parts of the criminal justice system.
(v) They must respect rights guaranteed by the Constitution.
16. **How can citizens engage with the government?**
Answer:
(i) They can file grievances with government departments.
(ii) They can request information under the Right to Information Act.
(iii) They can use print, electronic, or social media to raise concerns.
(iv) They can join civil society organisations.
(v) They can write to representatives and vote when eligible.
17. **What is the role of the judiciary in a democracy?**
Answer:
(i) It protects citizens' rights.
(ii) It settles disputes peacefully.
(iii) It interprets laws.
(iv) It checks whether laws and government actions follow the Constitution.
(v) Its independence helps ensure fair justice.
18. **What are the three levels of government in India?**
Answer:
(i) The Union Government works at the national level.
(ii) State governments work at the state level.
(iii) Local governments work at the village, town, and city levels.
(iv) Each level has responsibilities suited to its area.
(v) Together, they form India's three tiers of government.
19. **What responsibilities do the three levels of government have?**
Answer:
(i) The Union Government handles matters such as defence and foreign affairs.
(ii) State governments handle matters such as police and health.
(iii) Local governments handle local concerns such as water and drainage.
(iv) Local governments also work on issues such as streetlights and parks.
(v) These responsibilities help address needs at different levels.

20. **What is decentralisation, and why is it important?**
Answer:
(i) Decentralisation means spreading power and decision-making across levels.
(ii) It allows local matters to be handled locally.
(iii) It gives people more opportunity to participate.
(iv) Local leaders often understand their area's needs well.
(v) It helps people question local leaders and hold them accountable.

6.12 Five-mark questions with Answers of HOTS Type: (20 Questions)

Five-Mark Descriptive Questions – HOTS:

1. **A student says, "The government and the state are the same because both run the country." Explain why this is not fully correct.**
Answer:
(i) The state includes the people and territory of a country.
(ii) It also includes a government and sovereignty.
(iii) The government is the system that runs the state.
(iv) Governments can change after elections.
(v) The state continues even when the government changes.
2. **A country holds free elections but has a monarch who inherits the position of head of state. Use this example to explain the difference between democracy and a republic.**
Answer:
(i) Free and fair elections allow people to choose their government.
(ii) This is a democratic feature.
(iii) A republic has an elected head of state.
(iv) A hereditary monarch does not meet this feature of a republic.
(v) Therefore, a country can be democratic without being a republic.
3. **A majority of residents support a rule, but the rule would prevent a minority from getting essential medicine. How should the rule be reconsidered?**
Answer:
(i) Decision-makers should consider the impact on the minority.
(ii) They should check whether the rule conflicts with people's rights.
(iii) The Constitution places limits on government power.
(iv) Majority support alone does not make a rule fair.
(v) The rule should protect people's essential needs and rights.
4. **Why is it important that the Constitution limits the powers of elected leaders?**
Answer:
(i) Elected leaders exercise authority on behalf of the people.
(ii) Their decisions can affect citizens' rights and freedoms.
(iii) Unchecked power could be misused.
(iv) The Constitution sets a framework for government action.
(v) These limits help protect all citizens, including minorities.
5. **A government passes a law, but officials do not carry it out. Explain how the three organs of government relate to this situation.**
Answer:
(i) The legislature is responsible for making the law.
(ii) The executive is responsible for implementing it.
(iii) The judiciary helps ensure that laws are followed.

(iv) The judiciary can interpret the law if its meaning is disputed.
(v) Each organ has a distinct role in governance.

6. **Why is an independent judiciary important when a citizen believes that the government has violated their rights?**
   Answer:
   (i) The judiciary is not controlled by the government or politicians.
   (ii) A citizen can approach a court when fundamental rights are violated.
   (iii) Courts interpret the law and settle disputes.
   (iv) Judicial review can check whether government action follows the Constitution.
   (v) This helps uphold the rule of law.
7. **An elected minister leaves office, but a government school continues to function. Explain the roles that may help ensure this continuity.**
   Answer:
   (i) The minister belongs to the political executive.
   (ii) The political executive may change after elections.
   (iii) Government officers belong to the permanent executive.
   (iv) Civil servants implement policies and manage public services.
   (v) Their continued work helps government services operate across changes in leadership.
8. **A citizen wants to find out how much money was spent on a local road. Explain how the citizen can use the Right to Information Act and why it may help.**
   Answer:
   (i) The citizen can request information about the road project.
   (ii) The request may ask how much public money was allocated or spent.
   (iii) Officials are required to provide information under the Act.
   (iv) The information can help citizens understand how public funds were used.
   (v) This supports transparency and accountability.
9. **A town's residents face a drainage problem. Explain why local government is an appropriate level to address it.**
   Answer:
   (i) Drainage is a local concern affecting the town.
   (ii) Local governments handle issues such as drainage and water.
   (iii) Local representatives are closer to the people affected.
   (iv) They may understand the area's specific needs better.
   (v) Residents can more easily question them about the response.
10. **How does decentralisation help a country as large and diverse as India?**
    Answer:
    (i) It spreads decision-making across Union, State, and Local governments.
    (ii) Different levels can address issues suited to their responsibilities.
    (iii) Local people can take part in decisions affecting their daily lives.
    (iv) Local leaders can use their knowledge of the area's needs.
    (v) People can hold nearby representatives more directly accountable.
11. **A citizen is unhappy with a delayed government service. Describe different ways the citizen can raise the concern.**
    Answer:
    (i) The citizen can file a grievance with the relevant department.
    (ii) The citizen can use a public grievance portal.
    (iii) The citizen can write to an elected representative.
    (iv) The citizen can raise the issue through media or a civil society group.
    (v) These methods allow citizens to seek a response from government.

12. **How can citizens help protect a local environment by working with civil society and government?**
Answer:
(i) Citizens can join or form an organisation focused on the issue.
(ii) The group can inform the public about the environmental concern.
(iii) It can mobilise people to express their views.
(iv) Citizens can present the issue to government representatives.
(v) The Silent Valley movement shows how public action can contribute to government decisions.
13. **The police have legal authority to maintain order. Why must that authority still be limited by the Constitution?**
Answer:
(i) Police have an important role in protecting people from crime and violence.
(ii) Their work involves the use of state authority.
(iii) Citizens have rights guaranteed by the Constitution.
(iv) Police must respect those rights while enforcing the law.
(v) Constitutional limits help prevent misuse of authority.
14. **Why are the political and permanent executives both needed to run the government?**
Answer:
(i) Political executives are elected and make major decisions.
(ii) They set goals and introduce policies.
(iii) Permanent executives provide expertise and advice.
(iv) Civil servants implement policies and manage public services.
(v) Their different roles help government function continuously.
15. **A student claims that the majority should always get whatever it wants in a democracy. Explain why this view is incomplete.**
Answer:
(i) Democracy allows people to choose their government.
(ii) Decisions still have to follow the Constitution and laws.
(iii) Fundamental rights apply to all citizens.
(iv) The rights of minorities must also be protected.
(v) Majority rule cannot justify unfair or unlawful treatment.
16. **Why should decisions about local issues usually be made close to the people affected?**
Answer:
(i) Local people experience the problem directly.
(ii) Local leaders often know the area and its needs.
(iii) Residents can contribute information to local discussions.
(iv) Nearby representatives are easier to question.
(v) This supports participation and accountability.
17. **How do the legislature, executive, and judiciary help prevent government from being run only by personal wishes?**
Answer:
(i) The legislature creates laws and rules.
(ii) The executive carries out those laws and policies.
(iii) The judiciary interprets laws and settles disputes.
(iv) The Constitution provides the framework within which they work.
(v) Together, these institutions support governance based on law.

18. **Why is it useful for citizens to use more than one method to raise an important public issue?**
    Answer:
    (i) A grievance can formally notify the responsible department.
    (ii) An RTI request can provide relevant information.
    (iii) Representatives can raise the concern in government.
    (iv) Media or civil society can bring wider public attention.
    (v) These methods give citizens different ways to seek action and accountability.
19. **How does the example of the Silent Valley movement show the relationship between citizens and government?**
    Answer:
    (i) The government proposed a hydroelectric project in Silent Valley.
    (ii) NGOs and citizens raised concerns about the forest and its biodiversity.
    (iii) Scientists, writers, teachers, and local people joined the campaign.
    (iv) Public action helped bring the issue to wider attention.
    (v) The project was cancelled, and Silent Valley later became a National Park.
20. **A group of students wants to make their school council more democratic. What lessons from the chapter could guide them?**
    Answer:
    (i) Students can elect representatives to speak for them.
    (ii) Council members can discuss issues before making decisions.
    (iii) Decisions should follow agreed rules rather than personal wishes.
    (iv) The rights and needs of minority groups should be considered.
    (v) Members should be able to question decisions and ask for explanations.

6.13 Five-mark questions with Answers of Applied Type: (20 Questions)

Five-Mark Descriptive Questions – Applied Type:

1. **Your neighbourhood's streetlights are not working. How can residents use the ideas in the chapter to address the problem?**
   Answer:
   (i) Identify the local government responsible for streetlights.
   (ii) Report the problem to the relevant local office.
   (iii) File a grievance if the problem is not addressed.
   (iv) Contact local representatives to request action.
   (v) Follow up respectfully and ask for information about progress.
2. **Residents are concerned about the money spent on a new road. Describe five steps they can take to seek accountability.**
   Answer:
   (i) Identify the government department responsible for the road.
   (ii) Use the Right to Information Act to request project information.
   (iii) Review the information about spending and work completed.
   (iv) Raise any concerns with the relevant officials or representatives.
   (v) Use a citizens' group or the media to bring attention to an unresolved issue.
3. **A public rule in your apartment complex causes difficulty for elderly residents who need medicine delivered at night. How could the residents address this fairly?**
   Answer:
   (i) Explain how the rule affects elderly residents and others who need medicine.
   (ii) Include the affected residents in a discussion about the rule.

(iii) Consider an exception for essential food and medicine deliveries.
(iv) Check that the revised rule treats residents fairly.
(v) Record and share the decision with everyone in the complex.

4. **A local forest may be damaged by a proposed project. Suggest five ways citizens can engage with the issue.**
   Answer:
   (i) Learn about the proposed project and its possible effects.
   (ii) Discuss the issue with local residents and community groups.
   (iii) Join or form a civil society organisation focused on the forest.
   (iv) Share concerns with the government and relevant representatives.
   (v) Use media to inform the public and encourage discussion.
5. **A student wants to ask how funds for a school improvement project were used. What steps should the student take with adult guidance?**
   Answer:
   (i) Identify the public department responsible for the project.
   (ii) Ask a parent, guardian, or teacher to help frame the request.
   (iii) Request relevant information under the Right to Information Act.
   (iv) Read the response to understand how the funds were used.
   (v) Share any concerns through the appropriate school or government channel.
6. **Your town has a drainage problem that affects several streets. Explain how people can work with local government to solve it.**
   Answer:
   (i) Gather clear information about the streets and the drainage problem.
   (ii) Discuss the issue with neighbours and affected residents.
   (iii) Contact the municipality or relevant local representative.
   (iv) File a grievance if the issue needs formal attention.
   (v) Follow up and ask for updates on the proposed action.
7. **A village road needs repair, but residents are unsure whom to approach. Apply the chapter's ideas to identify how they can proceed.**
   Answer:
   (i) Recognise the road as a local concern.
   (ii) Contact the village panchayat or relevant local government body.
   (iii) Explain the location and condition of the road clearly.
   (iv) Submit a written request or grievance.
   (v) Follow up with local representatives about the repair.
8. **A student council is planning rules for a school event. How can it use democratic and constitutional principles to make fair decisions?**
   Answer:
   (i) Elect or consult representatives from different student groups.
   (ii) Discuss proposed rules before making a decision.
   (iii) Consider how the rules affect all students, including minorities.
   (iv) Follow school rules and respect students' rights.
   (v) Explain decisions openly so students can understand them.
9. **A new student says that a school rule unfairly limits their participation. How can the school community respond using ideas from the chapter?**
   Answer:
   (i) Listen to the student's concern respectfully.
   (ii) Check the rule and how it affects the student.
   (iii) Discuss the issue with the appropriate teacher or school authority.

(iv) Make sure the rule is fair and does not exclude a student unfairly.
(v) Communicate any change or explanation clearly to students.

10. **You notice that a public service complaint has not been answered. Describe five appropriate ways to follow up.**
Answer:
(i) Keep a copy of the original complaint and its details.
(ii) Contact the grievance redressal office again.
(iii) Use the Public Grievances Portal if it applies to the department.
(iv) Write to the elected representative responsible for the area.
(v) Seek help from a civil society group if the issue remains unresolved.
11. **A community wants to improve access to a public park. How can citizens participate in the decision-making process?**
Answer:
(i) Identify the local government body responsible for parks.
(ii) Ask residents what changes are needed.
(iii) Present the suggestions to local representatives.
(iv) Use a citizens' group or public meeting to discuss the issue.
(v) Follow up with the local body about its decision.
12. **A local newspaper reports poor-quality work on a public project. How can citizens use this information responsibly?**
Answer:
(i) Check the report and gather reliable details about the project.
(ii) Request official information about the work and public funds.
(iii) Share concerns with the department responsible.
(iv) Contact representatives or a civil society organisation for support.
(v) Avoid spreading unverified claims while seeking a response.
13. **A family needs to know which government level handles a local water-supply problem. Explain how they can identify the right level and raise the issue.**
Answer:
(i) Recognise water supply in a neighbourhood as a local concern.
(ii) Contact the municipality or panchayat responsible for the area.
(iii) Describe the problem and the affected location.
(iv) Submit a grievance if needed.
(v) Follow up with the local body or representative.
14. **A citizen believes that a government action has violated a fundamental right. What steps can the citizen take?**
Answer:
(i) Identify the right that may have been affected.
(ii) Keep relevant information or documents about the action.
(iii) Seek guidance from a trusted adult or appropriate legal resource.
(iv) Approach the judiciary through the proper legal process.
(v) Ask the court to consider whether the action follows the Constitution.
15. **A class is studying how local decisions are made. Design a simple classroom activity that demonstrates decentralisation.**
Answer:
(i) Choose a classroom issue, such as arranging a reading corner.
(ii) Ask students to share their needs and suggestions.
(iii) Let elected class representatives present the ideas.
(iv) Discuss options and agree on a decision.
(v) Review whether the decision meets the class's needs.

16. **A local representative is preparing a plan to improve a neighbourhood. What information should residents provide to help the representative?**
    Answer:
    (i) Identify the main problems residents face.
    (ii) Describe where and when each problem occurs.
    (iii) Explain who is affected by the problem.
    (iv) Suggest practical improvements residents would support.
    (v) Ask how the representative will share progress and decisions.
17. **A government officer is explaining a new public scheme to residents. How can residents participate and remain informed?**
    Answer:
    (i) Listen to the explanation and note the scheme's purpose.
    (ii) Ask questions about eligibility and services.
    (iii) Request official information if details are unclear.
    (iv) Contact the relevant department about difficulties in accessing the scheme.
    (v) Share accurate information with other residents.
18. **A group of students wants to understand how a school education decision involves different organs and levels of government. What five aspects should they investigate?**
    Answer:
    (i) Identify which legislature makes relevant education laws.
    (ii) Find out which executive departments implement the laws and policies.
    (iii) Learn how government officers help deliver school services.
    (iv) Investigate how courts or child-rights bodies protect children's rights.
    (v) Identify the roles of Union, State, and Local governments in the issue.
19. **A resident wants to vote responsibly in an upcoming election. What steps can help them make an informed choice?**
    Answer:
    (i) Learn about the candidates standing for election.
    (ii) Compare their plans for important public issues.
    (iii) Consider their record and public commitments.
    (iv) Check reliable sources of election information.
    (v) Vote for the candidate whose plans best address the resident's concerns.
20. **A citizens' group wants to make the government more accountable for a delayed public project. Suggest five actions based on the chapter.**
    Answer:
    (i) Collect reliable information about the project and its progress.
    (ii) Request official records under the Right to Information Act.
    (iii) File a grievance with the responsible department.
    (iv) Contact elected representatives and share the issue through media.
    (v) Track the response and report the outcome to the community.

6.14 Multiple Choice Questions with answers for Olympiad type Competitive Exams:

Olympiad-Style Multiple Choice Questions:

1. **Which set correctly lists the four features of a state?**
   A. People, territory, government, and sovereignty
   B. People, army, currency, and language
   C. Territory, courts, elections, and taxes

D. Government, police, roads, and schools
Answer: A. People, territory, government, and sovereignty

2. **A country has a permanent population and defined boundaries but cannot make its own laws. Which feature is missing?**
   A. Government
   B. Sovereignty
   C. Population
   D. Territory
   Answer: B. Sovereignty
3. **What usually happens to the state when a new government takes office after an election?**
   A. The state ends
   B. The territory changes
   C. The state continues
   D. The population becomes temporary
   Answer: C. The state continues
4. **Which statement best describes sovereignty?**
   A. The ability to choose a local representative
   B. The authority to govern without outside control
   C. The power of courts to settle disputes
   D. The right of citizens to form organisations
   Answer: B. The authority to govern without outside control
5. **Which organ of government makes laws?**
   A. Executive
   B. Judiciary
   C. Legislature
   D. Police
   Answer: C. Legislature
6. **A government department puts a law into practice. Which organ is carrying out this work?**
   A. Legislature
   B. Executive
   C. Judiciary
   D. Civil society
   Answer: B. Executive
7. **When people disagree about the meaning of a law, which organ can interpret it?**
   A. Judiciary
   B. Legislature
   C. Political executive
   D. Local government
   Answer: A. Judiciary
8. **Which option best describes democracy?**
   A. Government by a hereditary ruler
   B. People choosing their government through free and fair elections
   C. Government by one permanent official
   D. Government by courts alone
   Answer: B. People choosing their government through free and fair elections
9. **Which feature makes a country a republic?**
   A. It has a legislature
   B. It has a permanent population

C. Its head of state is elected, not hereditary
D. It has a local government
Answer: C. Its head of state is elected, not hereditary

10. **Which statement about democracy and republic is correct?**
A. Every democracy is a republic
B. A country cannot be both a democracy and a republic
C. A country can be democratic without being a republic
D. A republic has no elections
Answer: C. A country can be democratic without being a republic

11. **Why is India called a democratic republic?**
A. The President inherits the position
B. People elect representatives, and the President is elected
C. The judiciary chooses all leaders
D. State governments make all national decisions
Answer: B. People elect representatives, and the President is elected

12. **What is one important purpose of the Constitution?**
A. To allow leaders unlimited power
B. To protect citizens' rights and limit government power
C. To replace all elections
D. To give all decisions to local governments
Answer: B. To protect citizens' rights and limit government power

13. **A rule is supported by most residents but harms a minority. Which principle should be considered?**
A. The majority can ignore all rights
B. The Constitution protects the rights of all citizens
C. Only the police can decide whether the rule is fair
D. Local rules cannot be changed
Answer: B. The Constitution protects the rights of all citizens

14. **Which statement correctly describes the political executive?**
A. It consists mainly of elected leaders
B. It consists only of judges
C. It is made up of permanent officers selected through examinations
D. It includes only police officers
Answer: A. It consists mainly of elected leaders

15. **Which statement best describes the permanent executive?**
A. It changes completely after every election
B. It consists of civil servants who implement policies
C. It makes all laws
D. It settles court disputes
Answer: B. It consists of civil servants who implement policies

16. **Why does the permanent executive help government continue smoothly?**
A. Civil servants remain in their roles when elected leaders change
B. Civil servants choose the voters
C. Civil servants replace the Constitution
D. Civil servants decide election results
Answer: A. Civil servants remain in their roles when elected leaders change

17. **Which three roles does the government perform according to the chapter?**
A. Protector, provider, and regulator
B. Teacher, voter, and judge
C. Farmer, trader, and builder

D. Legislature, state, and citizen
Answer: A. Protector, provider, and regulator

18. **The government builds schools and roads. Which role is it performing?**
A. Protector
B. Provider
C. Regulator
D. Interpreter
Answer: B. Provider

19. **Which body is responsible for maintaining law and order within a state?**
A. Police
B. Legislature
C. Civil society
D. Election commission
Answer: A. Police

20. **What must the police respect while carrying out their duties?**
A. Only the wishes of elected leaders
B. Rights guaranteed by the Constitution
C. The decisions of private companies
D. The preferences of the majority alone
Answer: B. Rights guaranteed by the Constitution

21. **A citizen wants to know how public money was spent on a road. Which tool is most suitable?**
A. Right to Information Act
B. Judicial review
C. Election petition
D. Police complaint
Answer: A. Right to Information Act

22. **A resident is unhappy with a delayed government service. What should they use to seek a response?**
A. Grievance redressal system
B. Legislature
C. Census
D. State boundary map
Answer: A. Grievance redressal system

23. **Which action best promotes transparency in government?**
A. Hiding details of public spending
B. Requesting information about a public project
C. Avoiding contact with officials
D. Ignoring a delayed public service
Answer: B. Requesting information about a public project

24. **A citizens' group campaigns to protect a forest. This is an example of engagement through:**
A. Civil society
B. Permanent executive
C. Judiciary only
D. Police service
Answer: A. Civil society

25. **How can the media help citizens engage with government?**
A. By making laws
B. By raising public concerns and informing people

C. By replacing elected representatives
D. By enforcing court orders
Answer: B. By raising public concerns and informing people

26. **Which is an appropriate way for citizens to influence who governs them?**
A. Vote in elections when eligible
B. Ignore all public issues
C. Ask civil servants to choose the leaders
D. Allow one person to make every decision
Answer: A. Vote in elections when eligible

27. **Why should the judiciary be independent?**
A. So it can make decisions without control by politicians
B. So it can pass every law
C. So it can replace the executive
D. So it can appoint all local representatives
Answer: A. So it can make decisions without control by politicians

28. **What does "rule of law" mean?**
A. Only citizens must follow the law
B. Everyone, including the government, must follow the law
C. Laws apply only during elections
D. The police may ignore the Constitution
Answer: B. Everyone, including the government, must follow the law

29. **Which action is an example of judicial review?**
A. A court checks whether a government action follows the Constitution
B. A minister introduces a policy
C. A department repairs a road
D. A citizen votes in an election
Answer: A. A court checks whether a government action follows the Constitution

30. **Which level of government is responsible for national defence?**
A. Local
B. State
C. Union
D. Village
Answer: C. Union

31. **Which level of government generally handles police and health within a state?**
A. Union
B. State
C. Local
D. International
Answer: B. State

32. **A streetlight in a town has stopped working. Which level of government should residents usually contact?**
A. Union
B. State
C. Local
D. Foreign
Answer: C. Local

33. **What does decentralisation mean?**
A. Concentrating all decisions in one office
B. Spreading power and decision-making across levels
C. Removing all local governments

D. Giving courts responsibility for every service
Answer: B. Spreading power and decision-making across levels

34. **Why can local leaders often understand a neighbourhood problem well?**
A. They are closer to the area and its needs
B. They make laws for the whole country
C. They control the judiciary
D. They are selected by foreign governments
Answer: A. They are closer to the area and its needs

35. **Which benefit of decentralisation allows people to question local leaders more easily?**
A. Greater accountability
B. Hereditary leadership
C. External control
D. Centralisation
Answer: A. Greater accountability

36. **Which group helped make local governments the third tier of India's democracy in the early 1990s?**
A. Panchayats and municipalities
B. Parliament and courts
C. Police stations and prisons
D. Schools and hospitals
Answer: A. Panchayats and municipalities

37. **What did the public campaign around Silent Valley help achieve?**
A. The hydroelectric project was cancelled, and the area later became a National Park
B. The forest was converted into a city
C. Local government was removed
D. The project was transferred to another state
Answer: A. The hydroelectric project was cancelled, and the area later became a National Park

38. **Which choice best describes the relationship between citizens and government in a democracy?**
A. Citizens can engage through elections and other public channels
B. Citizens have no role after an election
C. Only civil servants can raise public concerns
D. Citizens can participate only through the judiciary
Answer: A. Citizens can engage through elections and other public channels

39. **A local water-supply problem affects one neighbourhood. Which approach best applies the chapter's idea of decentralisation?**
A. Raise it with the local government closest to the community
B. Ask a foreign government to solve it
C. Wait for the judiciary to build a pipeline
D. Contact only the Union Government
Answer: A. Raise it with the local government closest to the community

40. **Which statement best summarises the chapter's view of good governance?**
A. Government should operate under the Constitution and remain answerable to people
B. Government should act without laws or public questions
C. Only the legislature should provide public services
D. Citizens should not take part in government

Answer: A. Government should operate under the Constitution and remain answerable to people

6.15 Best Practices Opportunity List from the Chapter: (12 Ideas)

Best Practices for Teaching "The State, the Government, and You":

(1) **Start with familiar examples.** Ask students who they would contact about a broken streetlight, a school issue, or a national defence matter.
(2) **Use a comparison chart.** Help students distinguish the *state* from the *government*, and *democracy* from *republic*.
(3) **Teach the three organs with clear examples.** Connect the legislature with making laws, the executive with carrying them out, and the judiciary with interpreting laws and settling disputes.
(4) **Use a simple government-level map.** Sort examples into Union, State, and Local responsibilities, then discuss where a local problem should be raised.
(5) **Explain constitutional rights through age-appropriate examples.** Discuss why rules and decisions should respect everyone's rights, including those of minority groups.
(6) **Use a mock grievance activity.** Students can practise writing a respectful complaint about a fictional public-service problem and identify the department it should go to.
(7) **Show how citizens can participate.** Introduce the chapter's examples of voting, contacting representatives, using the RTI Act, filing grievances, and engaging through civil society or media.
(8) **Discuss the Silent Valley example.** Use it to show how citizens, organisations, and government can interact over a public issue.
(9) **Use diagrams and role cards.** Assign students roles such as legislator, civil servant, judge, police officer, and citizen to illustrate how they work together.
(10) **Encourage evidence-based answers.** Ask students to explain their choices using chapter concepts—for example, why a broken streetlight is usually a local concern.
(11) **Keep discussions balanced and respectful.** Focus on how institutions work and how citizens participate, rather than turning classroom discussion into party-political debate.
(12) **Check learning with short scenarios.** Give students a situation and ask them to identify the responsible organ or level of government, then explain their answer.

6.16 Innovations Opportunity List from the Chapter: (14 Ideas)

Innovations in Teaching–Learning:

(1) **Mini-government simulation:** Assign students roles in a legislature, executive, and judiciary to show how a proposed school rule is discussed, carried out, and reviewed.
(2) **"Who handles this?" scenario game:** Give students examples—such as a broken streetlight, a state health issue, or national defence—and ask them to identify the responsible level of government.
(3) **Digital civic issue map:** Students mark local concerns such as roads, parks, or drainage and connect each issue to the likely local government office.
(4) **Mock grievance portal:** Students submit a fictional complaint, identify the department that should respond, and draft a polite follow-up.
(5) **RTI request practice:** Using a made-up public project, students prepare a simple information request and discuss how access to information supports accountability.
(6) **Democracy or republic card sort:** Students sort examples under "people choose the government," "head of state is elected," or both, then explain their choices.
(7) **Constitutional rights case cards:** Present age-appropriate fictional situations and ask groups to identify which rights or fairness concerns should be considered.

(8) **Public meeting role-play:** Students act as residents, local representatives, and officials discussing a fictional neighbourhood issue and proposing a solution.
(9) **Silent Valley decision simulation:** Groups represent different stakeholders and discuss a fictional development project, considering both public needs and environmental concerns.
(10) **Interactive government-organs flowchart:** Students build a digital or classroom flowchart showing how a law moves from being made to being implemented and interpreted.
(11) **Civic participation podcast:** Pairs record a short episode explaining one way citizens can engage with government, such as voting, filing a grievance, or joining a community group.
(12) **"Design a responsive local government" challenge:** Teams choose a local issue, suggest a plan, assign responsibilities, and decide how residents can track progress.
(13) **Class accountability dashboard:** For a mock project, students create a board showing the promised action, responsible office, progress update, and questions citizens may ask.
(14) **Exit-ticket civic decision:** End the lesson with a short scenario; students name the government level or organ involved and give one reason.

6.17: Practicing Questions/Question Bank:

Sample Question Bank:

A. Fill in the Blanks:

1. A state has people, territory, government, and _____.

Answer: Sovereignty

2. The branch of government that makes laws is the _____.

Answer: Legislature

3. India has Union, State, and _____ levels of government.

Answer: Local

4. The Right to _____ Act allows citizens to ask for information about government actions.

Answer: Information

5. The spreading of power and decision-making across different levels is called _____.

Answer: Decentralisation

B. One-Mark Descriptive Questions:

1. **What is sovereignty?**
   Answer: Sovereignty is a state's authority to make and implement its own laws without outside control.

2. **What is a republic?**
   Answer: A republic has an elected head of state rather than a hereditary monarch.

3. **What is judicial review?**
   Answer: Judicial review is the judiciary's power to check whether laws or government actions follow the Constitution.

C. Two-Mark Descriptive Questions:

1. **How is a state different from a government?**
   Answer:
   (i) A state includes its people, territory, government, and sovereignty.
   (ii) A government runs the state and may change after elections.

2. **Name two ways citizens can raise concerns with the government.**
   Answer:
   (i) Citizens can file a grievance with the relevant department.
   (ii) They can contact their elected representatives.

3. **What is the difference between the political and permanent executives?**
   Answer:
   (i) The political executive consists of elected leaders who make major decisions.
   (ii) The permanent executive consists of civil servants who implement policies and continue across changes in government.

D. Three-Mark Descriptive Questions:

1. **What are the three main organs of government and their functions?**
   Answer:
   (i) The legislature makes laws.
   (ii) The executive implements laws and policies.
   (iii) The judiciary interprets laws and settles disputes.

2. **What are the three levels of government in India?**
   Answer:
   (i) The Union Government works at the national level.
   (ii) State governments work at the state level.
   (iii) Local governments work in villages, towns, and cities.

3. **A streetlight in your neighbourhood is broken. What can residents do?**
   Answer:
   (i) They can report the issue to the local government.
   (ii) They can file a grievance if it is not addressed.
   (iii) They can follow up with their local representative.

E. Five-Mark Descriptive Questions:

1. **Explain how citizens can engage with the government.**
   Answer:
   (i) Citizens can file grievances about public services.
   (ii) They can request information under the Right to Information Act.
   (iii) They can raise concerns through the media.
   (iv) They can join civil society organisations.
   (v) They can contact representatives and vote when eligible.

2. **Why is decentralisation important in India?**
   Answer:
   (i) India is a large and diverse country.

(ii) People have different needs at national, state, and local levels.
(iii) Local leaders often understand nearby problems well.
(iv) Decentralisation gives people more opportunities to participate.
(v) It makes it easier to question local leaders and seek answers.

****

7th Standard Social Science Book (Part 2) Chapter 7

Chapter 7: Infrastructure: Engine of India's Development

7.1 Summary of the Chapter:

Summary: "Infrastructure: Engine of India's Development":

(1) **Physical infrastructure** means the tangible systems and structures that help cities and villages function, such as roads, railways, electricity networks, water pipelines, and communication systems.

(2) Infrastructure supports daily life by helping people travel, access services, communicate, and receive essential supplies.

(3) Connected infrastructure helps businesses, farmers, and traders move goods to markets, supports tourism, creates jobs, and links remote areas.

(4) **Roads and highways** connect homes, villages, towns, and cities; local roads support daily needs, while state and national highways link larger areas.

(5) **Bridges and tunnels** help people travel through difficult terrain. The Dhola Sadiya Bridge provides year-round access, while Meghalaya's living root bridges show how communities use local knowledge and nature.

(6) **Railways** carry large numbers of passengers and goods. Although introduced during British rule to move resources and troops, they later helped expand trade, markets, and settlements.

(7) **Metro systems** offer faster urban travel, reduce road traffic, and can lower pollution by using electricity and, in some cases, solar power.

(8) **Air transport** connects distant places quickly, carries passengers and valuable or perishable goods, and helps deliver aid during disasters.

(9) **Shipping and ports** move heavy goods over long distances and connect India with international trade routes.

(10) **Communication infrastructure**—including cables, mobile towers, satellites, and data centres—enables calls, internet access, online learning, e-commerce, emergency alerts, and e-governance.

(11) **Social infrastructure**, such as schools, hospitals, libraries, courts, and community centres, supports people's wellbeing and development.

(12) Infrastructure must be safe, sustainable, accessible, and maintained. Governments and citizens share responsibility for protecting public facilities and reporting damage.

7.2 Important Formulas:

Important Rules for Answering Qualitative Questions:

(1) **Identify the type of infrastructure.** Decide whether the question concerns transport, communication, energy, water, or social infrastructure.

(2) **Name the specific facility or system.** For example, roads, railways, airports, ports, mobile towers, schools, or hospitals.

(3) **Explain its purpose.** State what the infrastructure helps people or communities do, such as travel, communicate, access services, or move goods.

(4) **Connect infrastructure with daily life.** Give a clear effect on people, such as reaching school or hospitals more easily, accessing online learning, or obtaining fresh produce.

(5) **Show the link with economic activity.** Explain how infrastructure can support farming, trade, tourism, businesses, jobs, or access to markets.

(6) **Trace the chain of effects.** For example: irrigation and roads help farmers grow and transport crops; cold storage helps keep produce fresh; communication can provide market information.

(7) **Consider the location and terrain.** Explain why a road, bridge, tunnel, airport, or other facility may be needed in a particular area.
(8) **Use a relevant chapter example.** Examples include the Dhola Sadiya Bridge, Meghalaya's living root bridges, Indian Railways, metro systems, or the Silent Valley movement.
(9) **Include benefits and possible concerns.** Consider improved access and livelihoods alongside pollution, environmental harm, safety, or damage to local communities.
(10) **Remember that infrastructure systems are connected.** Transport, electricity, water, and communication often depend on one another to work effectively.
(11) **Include accessibility and sustainability.** When suggesting improvements, consider children, older people, and people with disabilities, as well as clean energy and environmental protection.
(12) **Mention shared responsibility.** Governments plan and maintain public infrastructure, while citizens should use it responsibly and report damage such as potholes or broken streetlights.

7.3 Fill-Up the Blank LOTS type questions with Answers: (40 Questions)

Fill in the Blanks – LOTS:

1. Physical infrastructure is a network of tangible structures built to help cities and villages _____.

Answer: Function

2. Roads, bridges, and railways are examples of _____ infrastructure.

Answer: Transportation

3. Electricity networks and water pipelines are examples of public _____.

Answer: Utilities

4. Mobile towers, cables, and satellites support _____ infrastructure.

Answer: Communication

5. Windmills and solar parks are examples of _____ infrastructure.

Answer: Energy

6. Roads help farmers carry their crops to the _____.

Answer: Market

7. Roads also help ambulances reach _____.

Answer: Hospitals

8. State highways connect towns and districts within a _____.

Answer: State

9. State highways are built and maintained by state governments through their public works _____.

Answer: Departments

10. National highways and expressways connect cities across _____.

Answer: States

11. The Dhola Sadiya Bridge is also known as the _____ Setu.

Answer: Bhupen Hazarika

12. The Dhola Sadiya Bridge connects Assam and _____ Pradesh.

Answer: Arunachal

13. The Dhola Sadiya Bridge crosses the _____ River.

Answer: Lohit

14. Meghalaya's living root bridges are made from the roots of the _____ elastica tree.

Answer: Ficus

15. The Khasi and _____ tribes make living root bridges in Meghalaya.

Answer: Jaintia

16. The British introduced railways in India in _____.
Answer: 1853
17. The British used early Indian railways to transport raw materials such as cotton and _____.
Answer: Tea
18. Railways helped transport raw materials to _____ for export.
Answer: Ports
19. As the railway network expanded, trade grew and major _____ developed.
Answer: Markets
20. Cargo trains carry goods such as coal, grains, textiles, and _____.
Answer: Electronics
21. Metro trains help reduce road _____ in cities.
Answer: Traffic
22. Metro trains use cleaner fuels such as _____.
Answer: Electricity
23. Some metro systems, such as the Delhi Metro, also use _____ power.
Answer: Solar
24. Air transport is the _____ way to connect people and places.
Answer: Fastest
25. Cargo flights carry high-value or _____ goods.
Answer: Perishable
26. Cargo planes can deliver aid to people during floods and _____.
Answer: Earthquakes
27. Ships carry heavy goods over long _____.
Answer: Distances
28. Ships dock at _____ where goods are loaded and unloaded.
Answer: Ports
29. India's coastline is approximately _____ km long.
Answer: 11,100
30. The communication infrastructure includes cables, wireless devices, towers, satellites, and data _____.
Answer: Centres
31. Communication infrastructure enables the transmission of messages, images, and _____.
Answer: Videos
32. The use of communication technology by the government to deliver services is called _____.
Answer: E-governance
33. Buying or selling products and services over the internet is called _____.
Answer: E-commerce
34. Online classes and digital libraries are supported by communication _____.
Answer: Infrastructure
35. J. C. Bose pioneered wireless _____.
Answer: Transmission
36. Schools, hospitals, libraries, and courts are examples of _____ infrastructure.
Answer: Social
37. Taking care of public infrastructure is a _____ responsibility.
Answer: Collective
38. Solar panels can help reduce _____ from buildings.
Answer: Emissions

39. Infrastructure should consider the needs of children, older people, and people with _____.

Answer: Disabilities

40. Citizens should report public infrastructure damage, such as potholes or broken _____.

Answer: Streetlights

7.4 Fill-Up the Blank HOTS type questions with Answers: (40 Questions)

Fill in the Blanks – HOTS:

1. If roads, electricity, water, and communication systems stop working, daily life becomes difficult because these systems support essential _____.

Answer: Activities

2. A farmer who can irrigate crops, check market prices online, and transport produce to town benefits from connected _____.

Answer: Infrastructure

3. When a new road helps farmers reach a market faster, it improves their access to _____.

Answer: Buyers

4. A road that links towns within one state is most likely a _____ highway.

Answer: State

5. A highway that connects cities across different states is generally a _____ highway.

Answer: National

6. If a river floods and ferries cannot operate, a bridge can provide more reliable, year-round _____.

Answer: Travel

7. In a mountainous area where roads are difficult to build, _____ can help people cross difficult terrain.

Answer: Tunnels

8. A bridge made from growing tree roots reflects the local community's knowledge of _____.

Answer: Nature

9. If a farmer's vegetables spoil before reaching the market, better roads and _____ could help preserve and transport them.

Answer: Cold storage

10. Railways can move large quantities of goods using much less energy than _____ transport.

Answer: Road

11. Replacing diesel trains with electric trains can help reduce _____.

Answer: Pollution

12. A city wants to reduce road traffic and make daily commutes faster; expanding its _____ system could help.

Answer: Metro

13. An airport is especially useful during a disaster when relief supplies must reach a remote _____ quickly.

Answer: Area

14. If a shipment contains vaccines that must arrive quickly, _____ transport may be suitable.

Answer: Air

15. For carrying heavy goods such as coal over long distances at lower cost, _____ transport is useful.

Answer: Shipping

16. When ships load and unload goods, they use facilities called _____.

Answer: Ports

17. A voice message travelling from one state to another depends on towers, cables, satellites, and data _____.

Answer: Centres

18. If students in a remote village attend online classes, they are benefiting from communication _____.

Answer: Infrastructure

19. Applying for a document online is an example of _____, where technology helps government provide services.

Answer: E-governance

20. Buying and selling products through an online platform is an example of _____.

Answer: E-commerce

21. If mobile networks send quick alerts during a flood, communication infrastructure supports emergency _____.

Answer: Response

22. When a new road links a remote area to towns, it can improve access to jobs, markets, and public _____.

Answer: Services

23. Schools, hospitals, and libraries support people's wellbeing and are part of _____ infrastructure.

Answer: Social

24. A project that uses solar panels to power a public building is using cleaner _____.

Answer: Energy

25. When infrastructure is designed for children, older people, and people with disabilities, it is more _____.

Answer: Accessible

26. A footpath that allows pedestrians to move safely makes transport infrastructure more _____.

Answer: Inclusive

27. If people litter on roads or damage monuments, the quality of public infrastructure _____.

Answer: Declines

28. Repairing potholes and reporting broken streetlights are ways citizens can help maintain public _____.

Answer: Infrastructure

29. Since public facilities serve many people, their care is a _____ responsibility.

Answer: Collective

30. A factory needs electricity, transport links, and communication systems to operate smoothly; these are forms of _____.

Answer: Infrastructure

31. When ports, highways, and airports connect to one another, goods can move more _____.

Answer: Smoothly

32. Better roads and railways can support tourism by making destinations easier to _____.

Answer: Reach

33. If a road is built without considering forests and wildlife, infrastructure development may harm _____.

Answer: Biodiversity

34. Choosing cleaner energy and environment-friendly materials can make infrastructure more _____.

Answer: Sustainable

35. A local community that reports damage to a water pipeline is helping protect a public _____.

Answer: Utility

36. An ambulance reaching a hospital quickly because of good local roads shows how infrastructure supports public _____.

Answer: Health

37. If internet access helps a small business sell products in other regions, communication infrastructure supports _____.

Answer: Trade

38. A rail station that attracts shops, vendors, and taxi services can create direct and indirect _____.

Answer: Jobs

39. If roads and communication systems remain usable during an earthquake, they can help emergency workers deliver _____.

Answer: Aid

40. Infrastructure development is most beneficial when it improves people's lives while protecting the _____.

Answer: Environment

7.5 One-mark questions with Answers of LOTS Type: (35 Questions)

One-Mark Descriptive Questions – LOTS:

1. **What is physical infrastructure?**
   Answer: Physical infrastructure is the network of tangible structures that helps cities and villages function.
2. **Name one example of transportation infrastructure.**
   Answer: A railway is an example of transportation infrastructure.
3. **What do water pipelines provide?**
   Answer: Water pipelines carry water to homes and other places.
4. **What is the purpose of a road network?**
   Answer: A road network helps people and goods travel between places.
5. **Which department maintains state highways?**
   Answer: State public works departments maintain state highways.
6. **Which government builds and maintains national highways and expressways?**
   Answer: The Central Government builds and maintains national highways and expressways.
7. **What is another name for the Dhola Sadiya Bridge?**
   Answer: The Dhola Sadiya Bridge is also called the Bhupen Hazarika Setu.
8. **Which two states does the Dhola Sadiya Bridge connect?**
   Answer: It connects Assam and Arunachal Pradesh.
9. **Which river does the Dhola Sadiya Bridge cross?**
   Answer: It crosses the Lohit River.
10. **Which communities make living root bridges in Meghalaya?**
    Answer: The Khasi and Jaintia communities make living root bridges in Meghalaya.
11. **Which tree's roots are used to make living root bridges?**
    Answer: The roots of the Ficus elastica tree are used to make living root bridges.

12. **When were railways introduced in India by the British?**
Answer: The British introduced railways in India in 1853.
13. **Why did the British introduce railways in India?**
Answer: They introduced railways to transport raw materials to ports and move goods and troops.
14. **Name one type of cargo carried by Indian Railways.**
Answer: Indian Railways carries cargo such as coal.
15. **What is one benefit of metro trains?**
Answer: Metro trains help reduce road traffic in cities.
16. **Which cleaner energy source powers some metro trains?**
Answer: Some metro trains use electricity.
17. **What is the fastest mode of transport for connecting distant places?**
Answer: Air transport is the fastest way to connect distant places.
18. **What types of goods are commonly carried by cargo flights?**
Answer: Cargo flights carry high-value or perishable goods.
19. **How can air transport help during a natural disaster?**
Answer: Air transport can deliver aid to remote areas during disasters.
20. **What is the function of a port?**
Answer: A port is a place where ships load and unload goods.
21. **Name one type of heavy good carried by ships.**
Answer: Ships carry heavy goods such as coal.
22. **What is communication infrastructure?**
Answer: Communication infrastructure includes systems that transmit messages, images, and videos.
23. **Name one component of communication infrastructure.**
Answer: A mobile tower is one component of communication infrastructure.
24. **What does e-governance mean?**
Answer: E-governance is the use of communication technology to deliver government services.
25. **What is e-commerce?**
Answer: E-commerce is the buying or selling of products and services over the internet.
26. **Name one way communication infrastructure helps students.**
Answer: It allows students to access online classes and digital libraries.
27. **Who pioneered wireless transmission in India?**
Answer: Jagadish Chandra Bose pioneered wireless transmission in India.
28. **What is social infrastructure?**
Answer: Social infrastructure includes facilities such as schools, hospitals, libraries, and courts.
29. **Name one example of social infrastructure.**
Answer: A hospital is an example of social infrastructure.
30. **Whose responsibility is it to care for public infrastructure?**
Answer: Caring for public infrastructure is a collective responsibility.
31. **Name one way citizens can help maintain public infrastructure.**
Answer: Citizens can report damaged facilities to the authorities.
32. **How can solar panels benefit public buildings?**
Answer: Solar panels can provide cleaner electricity and reduce emissions.
33. **What should designers consider when planning infrastructure?**
Answer: Designers should consider the needs of children, older people, and people with disabilities.

34. **Which ancient Indian text discussed the construction and maintenance of roads and waterways?**
    Answer: Kautilya's *Arthashastra* discussed the construction and maintenance of roads and waterways.
35. **What does quality infrastructure support besides travel?**
    Answer: Quality infrastructure supports economic activity, employment, and ease of living.

7.6 One-mark questions with Answers of HOTS Type: (30 Questions)

One-Mark Descriptive Questions – HOTS:

1. **A farmer cannot get crops to market before they spoil; which two infrastructure services could help most directly?**
   Answer: Better roads and cold storage could help the farmer transport and preserve the crops.
2. **Why can a bridge be especially important in an area where floods interrupt ferry services?**
   Answer: A bridge can provide more reliable travel when ferries cannot operate.
3. **A remote village needs quick delivery of vaccines after an earthquake; which transport mode may be most useful?**
   Answer: Air transport may be most useful because it can reach difficult terrain quickly.
4. **How can metro expansion help a crowded city?**
   Answer: It can shorten commutes and reduce road traffic.
5. **Why is electricity needed for a mobile message to travel from a village to another state?**
   Answer: Electricity powers communication equipment such as mobile towers and data systems.
6. **What does a farmer gain when internet access provides information about market prices?**
   Answer: The farmer can make better-informed decisions about when and where to sell crops.
7. **How can railway stations support economic activity in nearby areas?**
   Answer: They attract services such as vending, catering, and taxi businesses.
8. **Why might shipping be chosen to carry cement or coal over long distances?**
   Answer: Ships can carry heavy goods over long distances at relatively low cost.
9. **A new highway connects a remote village to nearby towns; name one likely benefit for residents.**
   Answer: Residents may gain easier access to markets, services, or employment.
10. **How can communication infrastructure support students who live far from a school or library?**
    Answer: It can provide access to online classes, digital libraries, and educational videos.
11. **Why should a new road project consider forests and wildlife?**
    Answer: Poor planning can damage habitats and biodiversity.
12. **How can solar panels make a public building more environmentally friendly?**
    Answer: They can provide cleaner electricity and reduce emissions.
13. **Why should a transport system be designed for older people and people with disabilities?**
    Answer: Accessible design allows more people to travel safely and independently.

14. **What could happen to a town's public spaces if people litter and damage facilities?**
    Answer: The spaces may become unsafe, unattractive, and costly for the community to repair.
15. **How can citizens help protect a public road or streetlight?**
    Answer: They can use the facilities responsibly and report damage to the authorities.
16. **Why does a business benefit when roads, ports, and communication systems are well connected?**
    Answer: The business can move goods and share information more efficiently.
17. **How can better roads help emergency services during a flood?**
    Answer: They can help rescuers and supplies reach affected people more quickly.
18. **Why can living root bridges be considered an example of local knowledge?**
    Answer: They show how Khasi and Jaintia communities use tree roots and local understanding of nature to build crossings.
19. **A student applies for a document through an online government service; what type of service is this?**
    Answer: This is e-governance.
20. **How does e-commerce help a small business reach customers beyond its town?**
    Answer: It lets the business offer and sell products through online platforms.
21. **Why might electric trains be preferable to trains powered by coal or diesel?**
    Answer: Electric trains can reduce dependence on polluting fuels.
22. **What connection does infrastructure have with tourism?**
    Answer: Transport and communication links can make tourist places easier to reach.
23. **Why is cold storage important between a farm and a distant market?**
    Answer: It helps keep perishable produce fresh during transport and storage.
24. **How can ports support trade between India and other regions of the world?**
    Answer: Ports allow ships to load and unload goods for international trade.
25. **What is one likely effect when a bridge cuts travel time to a hospital?**
    Answer: People may be able to reach medical care sooner.
26. **Why is maintaining existing infrastructure as important as building new infrastructure?**
    Answer: Poorly maintained facilities can become unsafe and less useful to the public.
27. **A school wants to reduce its emissions; which infrastructure improvement from the chapter could help?**
    Answer: Installing solar panels could supply cleaner electricity.
28. **How can communication networks help government during a natural disaster?**
    Answer: They can quickly send alerts and help officials coordinate emergency responses.
29. **Why can infrastructure improve both economic activity and people's quality of life?**
    Answer: It connects people to jobs, markets, services, and essential supplies.
30. **What lesson does the chapter give about responsibility for public infrastructure?**
    Answer: Governments and citizens share responsibility for maintaining and protecting public infrastructure.

7.7 Two-mark questions with Answers of LOTS Type: (30 Questions)

Two-Mark Descriptive Questions – LOTS:

1. **What is physical infrastructure?**
   Answer:

(i) Physical infrastructure is a network of tangible structures.
(ii) It helps cities and villages function.

2. **Name two examples of transportation infrastructure.**
   Answer:
   (i) Roads are a type of transportation infrastructure.
   (ii) Railways are another type.
3. **Name two utilities included in physical infrastructure.**
   Answer:
   (i) Electricity networks are a utility.
   (ii) Water pipelines are another utility.
4. **What are two uses of roads near homes?**
   Answer:
   (i) Roads help children reach school.
   (ii) They help farmers carry crops to markets.
5. **Which government maintains state highways, and through which departments?**
   Answer:
   (i) State governments build and maintain state highways.
   (ii) They do this through public works departments.
6. **Which government builds and maintains national highways and expressways?**
   Answer:
   (i) The Central Government builds national highways.
   (ii) It also maintains national highways and expressways.
7. **Name the two states connected by the Dhola Sadiya Bridge.**
   Answer:
   (i) The bridge connects Assam.
   (ii) It also connects Arunachal Pradesh.
8. **What is another name for the Dhola Sadiya Bridge, and which river does it cross?**
   Answer:
   (i) It is also called the Bhupen Hazarika Setu.
   (ii) It crosses the Lohit River.
9. **How are Meghalaya's living root bridges made?**
   Answer:
   (i) The Khasi and Jaintia communities guide the roots of Ficus elastica trees across streams.
   (ii) The roots grow stronger over time to form bridges.
10. **Why were railways introduced in India during British rule?**
    Answer:
    (i) They were used to transport raw materials such as cotton and tea to ports.
    (ii) They also helped move British goods and troops across India.
11. **Name two benefits of railway expansion in India.**
    Answer:
    (i) Railway expansion helped trade grow.
    (ii) It supported the development of markets and settlements near stations.
12. **What goods are carried by Indian Railways?**
    Answer:
    (i) Cargo trains carry goods such as coal and grains.
    (ii) They also carry textiles and electronics.
13. **How do metro trains benefit city residents?**
    Answer:

(i) Metro trains offer fast and reliable travel.
(ii) They help reduce road traffic and travel time.

14. **What are two uses of air transport?**
Answer:
(i) Passenger flights carry people between places.
(ii) Cargo flights transport valuable or perishable goods.
15. **How can air transport help during natural disasters?**
Answer:
(i) Aircraft can reach remote and difficult terrains.
(ii) They can deliver aid to people affected by disasters.
16. **What are two functions of a port?**
Answer:
(i) Ports allow ships to load goods.
(ii) They also allow ships to unload goods.
17. **What types of goods are commonly transported by ships?**
Answer:
(i) Ships carry heavy goods such as coal and cement.
(ii) They also carry goods such as cars over long distances.
18. **Name two parts of communication infrastructure.**
Answer:
(i) Mobile towers are part of communication infrastructure.
(ii) Satellites are another part.
19. **What are two benefits of communication infrastructure for students?**
Answer:
(i) It gives students access to online classes.
(ii) It helps them use digital libraries and educational videos.
20. **What is e-governance? Give one example.**
Answer:
(i) E-governance uses communication technology to deliver government services.
(ii) DigiLocker is an example of e-governance.
21. **What is e-commerce?**
Answer:
(i) E-commerce involves buying or selling products and services online.
(ii) It takes place through internet platforms.
22. **What is social infrastructure? Give one example.**
Answer:
(i) Social infrastructure includes facilities that support people's wellbeing.
(ii) A school or hospital is an example.
23. **Name two examples of social infrastructure.**
Answer:
(i) Libraries are social infrastructure.
(ii) Courts are also social infrastructure.
24. **How can communication systems help during a disaster?**
Answer:
(i) They can send quick mobile alerts to people.
(ii) They help share information during emergency response.
25. **Who pioneered wireless transmission in India, and where did he demonstrate it?**
Answer:
(i) Jagadish Chandra Bose pioneered wireless transmission.
(ii) He demonstrated it in Calcutta.

26. **Why should infrastructure be made accessible?**
    Answer:
    (i) Infrastructure should consider the needs of children and older people.
    (ii) It should also consider people with disabilities.
27. **How can solar panels benefit a public building?**
    Answer:
    (i) Solar panels can generate electricity for the building.
    (ii) They can help reduce emissions.
28. **What is meant by collective responsibility for infrastructure?**
    Answer:
    (i) Governments have a role in maintaining public infrastructure.
    (ii) Citizens must also use it responsibly and report damage.
29. **How does good infrastructure support economic activity?**
    Answer:
    (i) It connects goods and services with markets.
    (ii) It helps create employment opportunities.
30. **How does infrastructure improve people's quality of life?**
    Answer:
    (i) It makes travel and access to services easier.
    (ii) It improves connectivity and ease of living.

7.8. Two-mark questions with Answers of HOTS Type: (30 Questions)

Two-Mark Descriptive Questions – HOTS:

1. **A farmer's crops often spoil before reaching the market. Which two infrastructure improvements could help?**
   Answer:
   (i) Better roads could help transport the crops more quickly.
   (ii) Cold storage could help keep them fresh.
2. **A river floods often, stopping ferry services between two areas. How could a bridge help local people?**
   Answer:
   (i) It could provide a more reliable crossing when ferries cannot operate.
   (ii) It could help people reach markets, schools, or hospitals throughout the year.
3. **A remote community needs urgent medical supplies after an earthquake. Why might air transport be useful?**
   Answer:
   (i) Aircraft can reach difficult terrain quickly.
   (ii) Cargo flights can carry urgent supplies such as vaccines.
4. **A crowded city is trying to reduce traffic and long commutes. How could a metro system help?**
   Answer:
   (i) Metro trains can carry many passengers efficiently.
   (ii) They can reduce road congestion and travel time.
5. **A small business wants to sell products to customers in other states. Which two types of infrastructure could support it?**
   Answer:
   (i) Communication infrastructure can help the business reach customers online.
   (ii) Roads, railways, or shipping can transport its products.

6. **Why are communication networks important during natural disasters?**
   Answer:
   (i) They can deliver quick alerts and emergency information.
   (ii) They help people and officials coordinate relief efforts.
7. **A town plans to build a new road near a forest. What two concerns should planners consider?**
   Answer:
   (i) They should consider the road's effect on forests and biodiversity.
   (ii) They should plan for people's transport needs while reducing environmental harm.
8. **Why should a public building consider the needs of people with disabilities?**
   Answer:
   (i) Accessible design allows more people to use the building safely.
   (ii) It makes public infrastructure more inclusive.
9. **A school wants to reduce pollution from its electricity use. What change could help, and why?**
   Answer:
   (i) The school could install solar panels.
   (ii) Solar power can provide cleaner electricity and reduce emissions.
10. **How can better transport links help a remote village?**
    Answer:
    (i) They can help residents reach schools, hospitals, and markets more easily.
    (ii) They can help farmers and businesses move goods to buyers.
11. **Why might a company choose ships to carry heavy goods over long distances?**
    Answer:
    (i) Ships can carry heavy goods such as coal and cement.
    (ii) Shipping is a relatively low-cost way to move goods over long distances.
12. **How can a railway station support jobs in nearby areas?**
    Answer:
    (i) It can create direct railway jobs.
    (ii) It can support related work such as vending, catering, and taxi services.
13. **A public road has potholes, but no one has reported them. What two actions could residents take?**
    Answer:
    (i) They could report the potholes to the relevant authorities.
    (ii) They could use the road carefully until repairs are made.
14. **Why is it useful to connect highways with railway stations, airports, and ports?**
    Answer:
    (i) People can transfer more easily between different modes of transport.
    (ii) Goods can move more smoothly between producers and markets.
15. **A village has mobile coverage but no electricity to power its nearby tower. What problem might result?**
    Answer:
    (i) The tower may not operate reliably without power.
    (ii) Residents may have difficulty making calls or accessing the internet.
16. **How does cold storage support farmers and consumers?**
    Answer:
    (i) It helps preserve perishable crops after harvest.
    (ii) It allows produce to reach markets while still fresh.
17. **Why can electric trains be preferable to trains that use coal or diesel?**
    Answer:

(i) Electric trains can use cleaner energy.
(ii) They can help reduce pollution from transport.

18. **A region has steep mountains and deep valleys. Why might tunnels or bridges be needed there?**
Answer:
(i) They can help roads cross difficult terrain.
(ii) They can connect communities that would otherwise be harder to reach.
19. **How can better infrastructure support tourism?**
Answer:
(i) Roads, railways, and airports can make destinations easier to reach.
(ii) Communication services can help visitors access travel information.
20. **A neighbourhood has no safe footpaths. What impact might this have, and what improvement is needed?**
Answer:
(i) Pedestrians may have difficulty walking safely.
(ii) The local area needs pedestrian-friendly footpaths.
21. **How can e-governance make government services easier to access?**
Answer:
(i) Citizens can use digital services to apply for documents or file complaints.
(ii) They may be able to access information without travelling to an office.
22. **Why does damage to public infrastructure affect the whole community?**
Answer:
(i) Damaged facilities become less safe and useful for everyone.
(ii) Repair costs place an additional burden on the public.
23. **A farmer wants to learn about the best inputs and current market prices. Which infrastructure can help?**
Answer:
(i) Communication infrastructure can provide access to online information.
(ii) The farmer can use that information to make decisions about crops and sales.
24. **How can better roads and communication help emergency workers during a flood?**
Answer:
(i) Roads can help rescue teams reach affected areas.
(ii) Communication systems can help them share alerts and coordinate their work.
25. **Why should infrastructure projects consider local knowledge?**
Answer:
(i) Local communities understand the area's terrain and needs.
(ii) Their knowledge can help create suitable and sustainable designs.
26. **A family cannot access online learning because its internet connection is unreliable. What infrastructure improvement could help?**
Answer:
(i) The communication network in the area could be strengthened.
(ii) Reliable internet could help the family access classes and digital resources.
27. **How can a port contribute to trade and employment?**
Answer:
(i) Ports help load and unload goods for trade.
(ii) Port activity supports jobs in shipping and related services.
28. **A town wants public spaces that are safe for children and older people. What two design ideas could help?**
Answer:

(i) Provide safe walking paths and accessible entrances.
(ii) Design facilities to meet the needs of people of different ages and abilities.

29. **Why is infrastructure described as the backbone of economic activity?**
Answer:
(i) It connects producers, workers, businesses, and markets.
(ii) It supports the movement of people, goods, and information.
30. **What two responsibilities do citizens have toward public infrastructure?**
Answer:
(i) They should use public facilities responsibly.
(ii) They should report damage, such as potholes or broken streetlights.

7.9. Three-mark questions with Answers of LOTS Type: (30 Questions)

Three-Mark Descriptive Questions – LOTS:

1. **What is physical infrastructure?**
Answer:
(i) Physical infrastructure is a network of tangible structures.
(ii) It helps cities and villages function.
(iii) It includes transport, utilities, communication, and energy systems.
2. **Name three types of physical infrastructure.**
Answer:
(i) Transportation systems are one type.
(ii) Electricity and water systems are another type.
(iii) Communication networks are also physical infrastructure.
3. **How does infrastructure support farmers?**
Answer:
(i) Canals and electric pumps help irrigate crops.
(ii) Roads help transport crops to markets.
(iii) Cold storage helps keep produce fresh.
4. **What is the role of local roads?**
Answer:
(i) Local roads help children reach school.
(ii) They help farmers carry crops to markets.
(iii) They help ambulances reach hospitals.
5. **What do state highways do, and who maintains them?**
Answer:
(i) State highways connect towns and districts within a state.
(ii) State governments build and maintain them.
(iii) Public works departments carry out this work.
6. **What do national highways and expressways do?**
Answer:
(i) They connect cities across states.
(ii) They support the movement of people and goods.
(iii) They connect with railway stations, airports, and ports.
7. **Write three facts about the Dhola Sadiya Bridge.**
Answer:
(i) It is also called the Bhupen Hazarika Setu.
(ii) It connects Assam and Arunachal Pradesh.
(iii) It crosses the Lohit River.

8. **How are Meghalaya's living root bridges made?**
   Answer:
   (i) The Khasi and Jaintia communities make them using tree roots.
   (ii) They guide the roots of Ficus elastica trees across streams.
   (iii) The roots grow stronger over many years to form bridges.
9. **Why were railways introduced in India during British rule?**
   Answer:
   (i) They helped transport raw materials such as cotton and tea.
   (ii) They carried raw materials to ports for export.
   (iii) They also helped move British goods and troops across India.
10. **How did railway expansion affect trade and settlements?**
    Answer:
    (i) Trade grew as the railway network expanded.
    (ii) Major markets developed.
    (iii) New settlements emerged near railway stations.
11. **What are three benefits of Indian Railways today?**
    Answer:
    (i) Railways carry large numbers of passengers every day.
    (ii) Cargo trains transport goods across the country.
    (iii) Railways provide many direct and indirect jobs.
12. **What are three features of metro train systems?**
    Answer:
    (i) Metro trains provide fast and reliable city travel.
    (ii) They help reduce road traffic and travel time.
    (iii) They use cleaner energy such as electricity.
13. **What are three uses of air transport?**
    Answer:
    (i) Passenger flights carry people between places.
    (ii) Cargo flights carry valuable or perishable goods.
    (iii) Aircraft can deliver aid during natural disasters.
14. **Why is air transport useful during disasters?**
    Answer:
    (i) Aircraft can reach remote areas quickly.
    (ii) They can access difficult terrain.
    (iii) They can carry emergency supplies such as vaccines.
15. **What are the functions of ships and ports?**
    Answer:
    (i) Ships carry heavy goods over long distances.
    (ii) Ports are places where ships dock.
    (iii) Goods are loaded and unloaded at ports.
16. **What is communication infrastructure?**
    Answer:
    (i) It supports the transmission of information.
    (ii) It includes cables, wireless devices, and towers.
    (iii) It also includes satellites and data centres.
17. **How does communication infrastructure support education and emergencies?**
    Answer:
    (i) Students can access online classes and digital libraries.
    (ii) People can receive mobile alerts during disasters.
    (iii) It helps communities access information quickly.

18. **What are e-governance and e-commerce?**
Answer:
(i) E-governance uses communication technology to deliver government services.
(ii) Citizens may apply for documents or file complaints online.
(iii) E-commerce involves buying and selling products or services online.
19. **What did J. C. Bose contribute to communication technology?**
Answer:
(i) J. C. Bose pioneered wireless transmission.
(ii) He demonstrated the transmission of signals in Calcutta in 1895.
(iii) He developed devices that contributed to early wireless systems.
20. **What is social infrastructure? Give examples.**
Answer:
(i) Social infrastructure supports the wellbeing and development of people.
(ii) Schools and hospitals are examples.
(iii) Libraries, courts, and community centres are also examples.
21. **How does good infrastructure support economic activity?**
Answer:
(i) It connects places where goods are produced with markets.
(ii) It supports trade and businesses.
(iii) It creates employment opportunities.
22. **How can infrastructure help during floods or earthquakes?**
Answer:
(i) Roads can help rescuers reach affected areas.
(ii) Airports can help deliver supplies to remote places.
(iii) Communication systems can send alerts and share information.
23. **What are three responsibilities involved in maintaining public infrastructure?**
Answer:
(i) Governments should maintain public facilities and services.
(ii) Citizens should use public infrastructure responsibly.
(iii) People should report damage to the authorities.
24. **How can infrastructure be made more sustainable?**
Answer:
(i) Use cleaner energy such as solar power.
(ii) Choose materials that are less harmful to the environment.
(iii) Plan projects to reduce pollution and protect biodiversity.
25. **Whose needs should be considered when designing infrastructure?**
Answer:
(i) The needs of children should be considered.
(ii) Infrastructure should also suit older people.
(iii) It should be accessible to people with disabilities.
26. **What did Kautilya's *Arthashastra* say about roads?**
Answer:
(i) It described rules for building roads.
(ii) It recommended different road widths for different uses.
(iii) It discussed roads connecting towns, villages, and neighbouring countries.
27. **How did the *Arthashastra* seek to protect infrastructure?**
Answer:
(i) It recommended penalties for damaging public infrastructure.
(ii) It included rules for protecting waterworks.
(iii) It also discouraged damage to public parks and paths.

28. **What is one benefit of a bridge in a flood-prone area?**
    Answer:
    (i) It can provide year-round travel across a river.
    (ii) It can reduce travel time.
    (iii) It can help people reach markets or hospitals more easily.
29. **How can infrastructure improve people's quality of life?**
    Answer:
    (i) It makes travel easier.
    (ii) It improves access to services and communication.
    (iii) It increases ease of living for individuals and communities.
30. **Why is infrastructure called the backbone of a nation's development?**
    Answer:
    (i) It supports economic activities.
    (ii) It connects people, goods, and services.
    (iii) It creates employment and improves quality of life.

7.10. Three-mark questions with Answers of HOTS Type: (30 Questions)

Three-Mark Descriptive Questions – HOTS:

1. **A farmer has good crops but cannot get them to market in time. How could connected infrastructure help?**
   Answer:
   (i) Irrigation systems can support crop production.
   (ii) Cold storage can keep produce fresh after harvesting.
   (iii) Good roads can help farmers transport produce to markets quickly.
2. **A river crossing becomes unsafe during floods. Explain how a bridge could benefit nearby communities.**
   Answer:
   (i) It can provide a more reliable crossing when ferries cannot operate.
   (ii) It can help people reach schools and hospitals during floods.
   (iii) It can help farmers transport goods to markets throughout the year.
3. **A remote region is hit by an earthquake. How could transport and communication infrastructure support relief work?**
   Answer:
   (i) Airports can help deliver supplies to places that are hard to reach.
   (ii) Roads can help emergency workers reach affected communities.
   (iii) Communication networks can send alerts and coordinate relief efforts.
4. **A city wants to reduce traffic and air pollution. How could a metro system help?**
   Answer:
   (i) Metro trains can carry many passengers on a single trip.
   (ii) They can reduce the number of vehicles using busy roads.
   (iii) Electric metros can use cleaner energy than many road vehicles.
5. **A village has weak internet access. Explain three ways stronger communication infrastructure could help residents.**
   Answer:
   (i) Students could access online classes and digital libraries.
   (ii) Farmers could check information such as market prices.
   (iii) Residents could receive emergency alerts more quickly.
6. **A small business wants to sell products in other states. Which infrastructure links could help it expand?**

Answer:
(i) Internet access can help the business reach customers through e-commerce.
(ii) Roads and railways can transport products to other regions.
(iii) Ports can support the movement of goods for international trade.

7. **A highway is planned near a forest. What should planners consider to balance development and environmental protection?**
Answer:
(i) They should study the possible effects on forests and biodiversity.
(ii) They should consider the transport needs of nearby communities.
(iii) They should plan to reduce environmental damage and use sustainable methods.
8. **A public building uses a large amount of electricity. Suggest ways to make its infrastructure more sustainable.**
Answer:
(i) Install solar panels to generate cleaner electricity.
(ii) Use energy-efficient lighting and equipment.
(iii) Choose materials and designs that reduce environmental harm.
9. **A new railway station is attracting shops and transport services. How can this affect the local economy?**
Answer:
(i) More people may visit the area.
(ii) Shops, vending, and taxi services may create jobs.
(iii) Nearby businesses may find it easier to reach customers.
10. **A community cannot reach a hospital quickly because a river divides it from the town. How might a bridge improve daily life?**
Answer:
(i) It can reduce travel time to the hospital.
(ii) It can make access more reliable during bad weather or floods.
(iii) It can also help residents reach schools and markets.
11. **A town has damaged footpaths and few safe walking routes. Why should the local body treat this as an infrastructure issue?**
Answer:
(i) Footpaths are part of public infrastructure.
(ii) Damaged paths can make walking unsafe, especially for children and older people.
(iii) Repairing them can improve access and mobility for residents.
12. **A local council is designing a new bus station. How can it make the station accessible to more people?**
Answer:
(i) Provide step-free routes and ramps.
(ii) Include clear signs and safe waiting areas.
(iii) Consider the needs of children, older people, and people with disabilities.
13. **A farmer receives market information online but has no reliable road to transport crops. What does this show about infrastructure?**
Answer:
(i) Communication infrastructure can provide useful information.
(ii) Transport infrastructure is still needed to move the crops.
(iii) Different infrastructure systems work together to support livelihoods.
14. **Why might air transport be more useful than road transport for delivering vaccines to an isolated area?**
Answer:

(i) Aircraft can reach difficult terrain more quickly.
(ii) Vaccines may need to be delivered rapidly and handled carefully.
(iii) Air transport can support emergency response when roads are unavailable.

15. **A town's port is expanded. Explain two benefits and one point planners should consider.**
Answer:
(i) The port may handle more goods for trade.
(ii) Port-related businesses may create employment.
(iii) Planners should consider possible effects on coastal communities and the environment.
16. **How can e-governance make public services more convenient for people in remote areas?**
Answer:
(i) People may apply for documents online.
(ii) They may file complaints without travelling to an office.
(iii) They can access government information through digital services.
17. **A school wants to improve learning for students who live far away. Which infrastructure improvements could help?**
Answer:
(i) Reliable internet can support online classes.
(ii) Devices and digital libraries can provide learning materials.
(iii) Better local roads can help students travel safely to school.
18. **Why is infrastructure maintenance as important as building new facilities?**
Answer:
(i) Poorly maintained facilities can become unsafe.
(ii) Damage can disrupt services such as transport or water supply.
(iii) Maintenance helps public infrastructure remain useful for the community.
19. **A neighbourhood notices potholes and a broken streetlight. How can residents contribute to solving these problems?**
Answer:
(i) They can report the damage to the relevant authorities.
(ii) They can provide the exact location and details.
(iii) They can follow up and use public facilities responsibly.
20. **How can better roads, airports, and communication systems support tourism?**
Answer:
(i) Roads and airports can make destinations easier to reach.
(ii) Communication systems can help visitors find information and services.
(iii) Increased visitor access can support local businesses and jobs.
21. **A new road reduces travel time but passes through an area rich in wildlife. How should the project be assessed?**
Answer:
(i) Consider the benefits to travel and local access.
(ii) Assess the possible harm to wildlife and biodiversity.
(iii) Choose a design that meets transport needs while reducing environmental damage.
22. **How do the living root bridges of Meghalaya show a connection between infrastructure and local culture?**
Answer:
(i) The Khasi and Jaintia communities use local knowledge to guide tree roots.

(ii) The bridges develop over many years and can last for generations.
(iii) They are pathways as well as cultural links between generations.

23. **A town is planning a new bus service. What information should planners gather to make it useful?**
Answer:
(i) Identify where residents need to travel most often.
(ii) Consider routes to schools, markets, hospitals, and stations.
(iii) Plan stops and vehicles that serve people of different ages and abilities.
24. **Why does infrastructure help connect rural and urban communities?**
Answer:
(i) Roads and railways allow people to travel between villages and cities.
(ii) Communication systems help share information across locations.
(iii) These links support access to markets, jobs, and services.
25. **A town experiences frequent power cuts that affect mobile networks and water pumps. What does this situation demonstrate?**
Answer:
(i) Electricity supports several other infrastructure services.
(ii) Communication and water systems can be disrupted when power fails.
(iii) Reliable infrastructure depends on connected systems working together.
26. **How can infrastructure create both direct and indirect employment?**
Answer:
(i) Building and operating facilities creates direct jobs.
(ii) Transport hubs support related services such as vending and taxis.
(iii) Better connectivity can help businesses grow and create further work.
27. **A local authority wants to reduce waste and improve sanitation. Which infrastructure needs should it address?**
Answer:
(i) Improve waste collection and management.
(ii) Maintain sewer systems and drainage.
(iii) Provide clean and safe drinking water.
28. **Why should new infrastructure use cleaner energy and environment-friendly materials?**
Answer:
(i) Cleaner energy can reduce pollution and emissions.
(ii) Environment-friendly materials can reduce harm to nature.
(iii) Sustainable design helps protect resources and biodiversity.
29. **How can communication technology help a person access government services?**
Answer:
(i) It can allow the person to apply for documents online.
(ii) It can help the person file complaints or seek information.
(iii) It can reduce the need to travel to a government office.
30. **Why is infrastructure described as an engine of development?**
Answer:
(i) It connects people, goods, and services.
(ii) It supports trade, jobs, and other economic activities.
(iii) It improves access and ease of living for communities.

7.11 Five-mark questions with Answers of LOTS Type: (20 Questions)

Five-Mark Descriptive Questions – LOTS:

1. **Name five components of physical infrastructure.**
   Answer:
   (i) Roads are part of physical infrastructure.
   (ii) Bridges and railways are transport components.
   (iii) Electricity networks are utilities.
   (iv) Water pipelines supply water.
   (v) Communication networks connect people and places.
2. **What are the uses of roads and highways?**
   Answer:
   (i) Local roads help children reach school.
   (ii) They help farmers carry crops to markets.
   (iii) They allow ambulances to reach hospitals.
   (iv) State highways connect towns and districts within a state.
   (v) National highways connect cities across states.
3. **Write five facts about India's road network mentioned in the chapter.**
   Answer:
   (i) India has one of the world's largest road networks.
   (ii) Local roads serve nearby communities.
   (iii) State highways connect towns and districts within a state.
   (iv) National highways and expressways connect cities across states.
   (v) Roads connect with railway stations, airports, and ports.
4. **What is the Golden Quadrilateral?**
   Answer:
   (i) It is an important highway network in India.
   (ii) It connects Delhi.
   (iii) It connects Mumbai.
   (iv) It connects Chennai.
   (v) It connects Kolkata.
5. **Why are bridges and tunnels needed?**
   Answer:
   (i) Highways cannot be built everywhere.
   (ii) Some places have wide rivers or riverbeds.
   (iii) Some areas have steep mountains.
   (iv) Dense forests can make travel difficult.
   (v) Bridges and tunnels help people cross or pass through such terrain.
6. **Write five facts about the growth of Indian Railways.**
   Answer:
   (i) The British introduced railways in India in 1853.
   (ii) Early railways carried raw materials to ports.
   (iii) Railway expansion helped trade grow.
   (iv) Markets and settlements developed near railway stations.
   (v) Indian Railways is now one of the largest railway systems in the world.
7. **What goods are transported by Indian Railways?**
   Answer:
   (i) Trains carry coal.
   (ii) They carry grains.
   (iii) They carry textiles.
   (iv) They carry electronics.
   (v) They transport goods across the country.

8. **How does Indian Railways support employment?**
   Answer:
   (i) It employs engineers.
   (ii) It employs ticket collectors.
   (iii) It employs service staff.
   (iv) Railway stations support vendors and caterers.
   (v) Taxi services near stations provide additional work.
9. **Write five features of metro train systems.**
   Answer:
   (i) Metro trains operate in several Indian cities.
   (ii) They provide fast travel.
   (iii) They offer reliable daily commutes.
   (iv) They run on underground or elevated tracks.
   (v) They help reduce road traffic.
10. **What are five uses of airports and air transport?**
    Answer:
    (i) Airports connect cities and regions.
    (ii) Passenger flights carry people.
    (iii) Cargo flights carry goods.
    (iv) Aircraft can transport perishable items such as seafood.
    (v) Air transport can deliver aid during disasters.
11. **Write five facts about shipping and ports.**
    Answer:
    (i) India has a long coastline.
    (ii) Ships connect India with regions such as West Asia, Africa, and Europe.
    (iii) Ships carry heavy goods over long distances.
    (iv) Goods are loaded and unloaded at ports.
    (v) Ports support trade.
12. **Describe five components or functions of communication infrastructure.**
    Answer:
    (i) Cables carry information.
    (ii) Wireless devices transmit signals.
    (iii) Mobile towers help connect phones.
    (iv) Satellites support communication over long distances.
    (v) Data centres help process and store digital information.
13. **How has communication developed over time?**
    Answer:
    (i) People once used runners, pigeons, and horse couriers.
    (ii) The telegraph enabled long-distance electric signals.
    (iii) Telephones made voice communication possible over distance.
    (iv) Radio and television enabled broadcasting.
    (v) The internet and smartphones enable fast digital communication.
14. **Name five ways modern communication infrastructure supports people.**
    Answer:
    (i) It allows people to make phone calls.
    (ii) It enables online learning.
    (iii) It supports digital libraries and educational videos.
    (iv) It helps businesses sell products online.
    (v) It allows citizens to use government services digitally.

15. **What are five examples of social infrastructure?**
Answer:
(i) Schools are social infrastructure.
(ii) Hospitals and health centres are social infrastructure.
(iii) Police and fire stations are public facilities.
(iv) Courts and libraries are social infrastructure.
(v) Parks and community centres support community life.
16. **Name five public infrastructure problems discussed in the chapter.**
Answer:
(i) Roads may have potholes.
(ii) Public places may have litter.
(iii) Buildings and monuments may be stained or marked.
(iv) Waste management may need improvement.
(v) Communities may need better sewer systems and clean drinking water.
17. **What infrastructure improvements can make towns and cities more comfortable?**
Answer:
(i) Improve waste management.
(ii) Maintain sewer systems.
(iii) Provide clean and safe drinking water.
(iv) Improve traffic management.
(v) Build pedestrian-friendly footpaths.
18. **What road-width recommendations are described in Kautilya's *Arthashastra*?**
Answer:
(i) It recommended different widths for roads based on their use.
(ii) Royal highways and roads connecting towns and villages were described as 16 metres wide.
(iii) Roads in forests were described as 8 metres wide.
(iv) Roads within cities were also described as 8 metres wide.
(v) Chariot roads were described as 2.5 metres wide.
19. **How did Kautilya's *Arthashastra* recommend protecting infrastructure?**
Answer:
(i) It recommended rules for building roads and waterways.
(ii) It advised penalties for damaging public infrastructure.
(iii) It suggested severe penalties for damaging waterworks.
(iv) It recommended fines for damaging public parks.
(v) It discouraged blocking paths to waterworks and forests.
20. **How does infrastructure help connect the work of a farmer with consumers?**
Answer:
(i) Canals and electric pumps help irrigate crops.
(ii) Roads help transport crops to towns and cities.
(iii) Cold storage helps preserve produce.
(iv) Internet access helps farmers learn about inputs and market prices.
(v) Transport and storage help produce reach consumers safely and on time.

7.12 Five-mark questions with Answers of HOTS Type: (20 Questions)

Five-Mark Descriptive Questions – HOTS:

1. **A farmer's crops need irrigation, safe storage, and quick transport to market. Explain how different infrastructure systems work together to help the farmer.**

Answer:
(i) Canals and electric pumps provide water for irrigation.
(ii) Good roads connect farms with markets.
(iii) Trucks can carry harvested crops to towns and cities.
(iv) Cold storage helps keep perishable produce fresh.
(v) Internet access can help farmers check inputs and market prices.

2. **A river floods often and interrupts travel between two regions. Explain how a bridge could improve life in the area.**
Answer:
(i) A bridge can provide a more reliable river crossing.
(ii) It can allow travel when ferries cannot operate.
(iii) Farmers can carry produce to markets more easily.
(iv) Residents can reach hospitals and medicines faster.
(v) The bridge can reduce isolation between communities.
3. **A city is planning a new metro line. Explain how it could improve travel and the environment.**
Answer:
(i) Metro trains can carry many passengers on each trip.
(ii) They can reduce the number of vehicles on busy roads.
(iii) They can make daily commutes faster.
(iv) Electric metro systems can use cleaner energy.
(v) Reduced road congestion may also help lower pollution.
4. **A remote district is at risk of floods and earthquakes. Explain how different forms of infrastructure can support people during emergencies.**
Answer:
(i) Roads can help rescue workers reach affected communities.
(ii) Bridges can keep routes open across rivers.
(iii) Airports can deliver supplies to difficult-to-reach areas.
(iv) Communication networks can send alerts quickly.
(v) Reliable transport links can help people reach safety and medical care.
5. **A new highway is proposed near a forest. How can planners balance transport needs with environmental protection?**
Answer:
(i) They should study the likely effects on forests and biodiversity.
(ii) They should consider how nearby communities will use the highway.
(iii) They should examine route options that reduce environmental damage.
(iv) They should use sustainable materials and construction methods where possible.
(v) They should plan for the long-term effects of the project.
6. **A small business wants to reach customers in other parts of India. Explain how communication and transport infrastructure can support it.**
Answer:
(i) Internet access can help the business advertise its products.
(ii) E-commerce platforms can connect it with customers.
(iii) Online payments can make buying easier.
(iv) Roads and railways can carry products to other regions.
(v) Ports can help businesses move goods for international trade.
7. **A village has a mobile tower but unreliable electricity. Explain how this could affect communication and daily life.**
Answer:
(i) The mobile tower may not work reliably without power.

(ii) Residents may have difficulty making calls or accessing the internet.
(iii) Students may lose access to online learning.
(iv) Farmers may not receive market information in time.
(v) Emergency alerts may not reach people reliably.

8. **A town wants to build a new bus station. What should planners consider to make it useful and inclusive?**
Answer:
(i) The station should connect with important local routes.
(ii) It should have safe waiting areas.
(iii) It should provide clear information for passengers.
(iv) It should be accessible to children, older people, and people with disabilities.
(v) It should be designed to support smooth movement in and around the station.

9. **How does the example of Meghalaya's living root bridges show that infrastructure can reflect local knowledge and culture?**
Answer:
(i) The Khasi and Jaintia communities use roots of the Ficus elastica tree.
(ii) They guide the roots across streams with supports.
(iii) The roots grow stronger over many years.
(iv) The bridges are useful pathways for crossing streams.
(v) They also carry cultural meaning and connect generations.

10. **A school wants to provide more learning opportunities to students in remote areas. Recommend infrastructure improvements and explain their value.**
Answer:
(i) Reliable internet can support online classes.
(ii) Digital devices can provide access to learning resources.
(iii) Digital libraries can give students access to books and information.
(iv) Electricity is needed to power the devices and networks.
(v) Better roads can help students reach school and libraries.

11. **Why is maintaining existing infrastructure as important as building new infrastructure?**
Answer:
(i) Damaged roads and bridges can become unsafe.
(ii) Broken facilities can disrupt public services.
(iii) Poor maintenance can make infrastructure less useful.
(iv) Repairing damage can prevent more serious problems.
(v) Maintenance helps protect public investment and community wellbeing.

12. **A neighbourhood has potholes, litter, and broken streetlights. Explain how government and citizens can share responsibility for addressing these problems.**
Answer:
(i) The local government can organise repairs and waste services.
(ii) Residents can report potholes and broken streetlights.
(iii) Citizens can use public facilities responsibly.
(iv) Community groups can help raise awareness about littering.
(v) Cooperation can keep public spaces safer and cleaner.

13. **A town is planning a public building. Explain how sustainable and accessible design can benefit the community.**
Answer:
(i) Solar panels can provide cleaner electricity.
(ii) Environment-friendly materials can reduce harm to nature.
(iii) Ramps and accessible entrances can support people with disabilities.

(iv) Safe pathways can help children and older people.
(v) Inclusive design allows more residents to use the building.

14. **A region depends on one road for access to schools, markets, and hospitals. Explain why this may be a problem and suggest what infrastructure planning should consider.**
Answer:
(i) If the road is blocked, important services may become hard to reach.
(ii) Floods or landslides could isolate the region.
(iii) Planners should assess local terrain and common hazards.
(iv) They should consider alternative routes or bridges where suitable.
(v) Reliable communication can help residents receive travel and emergency information.
15. **How can ports, highways, and airports together support trade and employment?**
Answer:
(i) Highways carry goods between production areas and transport hubs.
(ii) Ports move heavy goods by ship over long distances.
(iii) Airports transport passengers and certain high-value or perishable goods.
(iv) Businesses can reach more markets through these connections.
(v) Transport and related services can create jobs.
16. **A city wants to reduce pollution while improving mobility. Compare how metro systems and electric vehicles could contribute.**
Answer:
(i) Metro trains can carry many people in one journey.
(ii) They can reduce the number of vehicles on roads.
(iii) Electric vehicles avoid using petrol or diesel directly.
(iv) Cleaner electricity makes electric transport more sustainable.
(v) Both approaches can support mobility with lower pollution when planned well.
17. **How can communication infrastructure make government services more convenient for citizens?**
Answer:
(i) Citizens can apply for documents online.
(ii) They can file complaints without travelling to an office.
(iii) They can access government information digitally.
(iv) Digital alerts can share important updates quickly.
(v) These services can save time and improve access, including for some remote users.
18. **Why should infrastructure projects consider both economic benefits and possible environmental costs?**
Answer:
(i) Infrastructure can connect markets and support jobs.
(ii) Roads, ports, and airports can improve access and trade.
(iii) Construction may affect forests, wildlife, or local communities.
(iv) Sustainable design can reduce pollution and biodiversity loss.
(v) Considering both helps planners make more responsible decisions.
19. **How can railways help connect people, goods, and economic activity?**
Answer:
(i) Passenger trains help people travel between places.
(ii) Cargo trains move goods such as coal, grains, textiles, and electronics.
(iii) Railway stations connect with roads and other transport.

(iv) Markets and settlements can grow near stations.
(v) Railway services also provide direct and indirect employment.

20. **The chapter calls infrastructure the "engine of development." Explain this idea.**
Answer:
(i) Infrastructure connects people and places.
(ii) It helps goods and services reach markets.
(iii) It supports education, healthcare, communication, and trade.
(iv) It creates employment and economic opportunities.
(v) It improves quality of life when built and maintained responsibly.

7.13 Five-mark questions with Answers of Applied Type: (20 Questions)

Five-Mark Descriptive Questions – Applied Type:

1. **Your village's farmers are losing vegetables because they cannot transport them quickly. Suggest an infrastructure plan to help them.**
Answer:
(i) Improve the local road connecting farms to the main road.
(ii) Provide access to cold-storage facilities.
(iii) Arrange transport links to nearby markets.
(iv) Improve irrigation through canals or electric pumps.
(v) Provide reliable internet access for checking market prices.
2. **A river often floods and cuts off a town from nearby villages. Suggest five measures to improve safe access.**
Answer:
(i) Assess whether a bridge is suitable for crossing the river.
(ii) Plan the bridge to remain usable during seasonal floods.
(iii) Connect it to roads on both sides of the river.
(iv) Provide signs and safety barriers for travellers.
(v) Maintain the bridge and nearby roads regularly.
3. **Your city wants to reduce traffic near schools and offices. Suggest five transport improvements.**
Answer:
(i) Improve public bus services on busy routes.
(ii) Expand metro access where it is suitable.
(iii) Provide safe walking paths near schools and workplaces.
(iv) Connect bus and metro stops with nearby roads.
(v) Encourage people to use shared public transport.
4. **A remote area needs help during floods, but roads are often blocked. Propose five ways to strengthen emergency infrastructure.**
Answer:
(i) Identify routes that remain accessible during floods.
(ii) Build or maintain suitable bridges and raised roads.
(iii) Use aircraft to deliver urgent supplies where needed.
(iv) Set up reliable communication systems for emergency alerts.
(v) Keep essential supplies ready in accessible locations.
5. **Your school wants to make its buildings more sustainable. Suggest five infrastructure changes.**
Answer:
(i) Install solar panels to generate electricity.
(ii) Use energy-efficient lights and equipment.

(iii) Provide systems to collect and use rainwater.
(iv) Improve waste sorting and disposal.
(v) Use environment-friendly materials for repairs and new construction.

6. **A new public building is being planned in your town. How can designers make it inclusive?**
   Answer:
   (i) Provide ramps and step-free entrances.
   (ii) Make pathways wide and safe for mobility aids.
   (iii) Add clear signs that are easy to understand.
   (iv) Provide safe seating and waiting areas for older people.
   (v) Consider the needs of children and people with disabilities.
7. **A neighbourhood has broken streetlights and potholes. Prepare a five-step action plan for residents.**
   Answer:
   (i) Record the exact locations of the problems.
   (ii) Take clear notes or photographs of the damage.
   (iii) Report the problems to the local authority.
   (iv) Ask for a complaint number or written acknowledgement.
   (v) Follow up until repairs are completed.
8. **A village has unreliable internet access, affecting students and small businesses. Suggest five improvements.**
   Answer:
   (i) Identify areas where the signal is weak.
   (ii) Improve mobile tower or cable connections where needed.
   (iii) Ensure a reliable electricity supply for communication systems.
   (iv) Create a shared digital learning or service centre.
   (v) Teach residents how to use online learning and e-governance services.
9. **A town wants to improve waste and water services. Suggest five infrastructure actions for the local authority.**
   Answer:
   (i) Provide regular waste collection.
   (ii) Create suitable systems for waste sorting and disposal.
   (iii) Maintain sewer and drainage systems.
   (iv) Protect and maintain clean drinking-water sources.
   (v) Repair leaking pipelines and report service interruptions promptly.
10. **A local producer wants to send goods to customers in other states. Suggest five useful infrastructure links.**
    Answer:
    (i) Connect the production site to a reliable road.
    (ii) Use railway services for suitable bulk shipments.
    (iii) Use ports if goods need to travel overseas.
    (iv) Use internet access to reach customers through e-commerce.
    (v) Use communication networks to coordinate orders and deliveries.
11. **Your community is planning a new bus station. List five features to include in the plan.**
    Answer:
    (i) Connect the station to main local routes.
    (ii) Provide safe areas for passengers to wait.
    (iii) Display clear route and timing information.

(iv) Provide accessible paths for older people and people with disabilities.
(v) Include safe pedestrian access to nearby roads and facilities.

12. **A factory is planned in your area. What infrastructure should planners consider for its operation?**
Answer:
(i) Reliable roads or railways are needed to move materials and products.
(ii) A dependable electricity supply is required.
(iii) Water supply and wastewater systems must be planned.
(iv) Communication networks are needed for business operations.
(v) Environmental safeguards should be included in the plan.
13. **A coastal town wants to improve its port. Suggest five points planners should include.**
Answer:
(i) Provide suitable areas for loading and unloading goods.
(ii) Connect the port to roads or railways.
(iii) Plan safe facilities for workers and ships.
(iv) Consider the needs of local fishing and coastal communities.
(v) Reduce pollution and protect the coastal environment.
14. **Your neighbourhood has no safe footpaths. Suggest five improvements to make walking safer.**
Answer:
(i) Build continuous footpaths along busy roads.
(ii) Repair uneven or broken sections.
(iii) Provide safe crossings near schools and public places.
(iv) Keep footpaths clear of waste and obstacles.
(v) Design them for children, older people, and people with disabilities.
15. **A community wants to protect a forest while improving access to nearby villages. Suggest five steps for planning the project.**
Answer:
(i) Study the local terrain and forest biodiversity.
(ii) Consult residents who use the area.
(iii) Compare route options to reduce damage to the forest.
(iv) Use suitable, environment-friendly construction methods.
(v) Monitor the area after construction and address any harm.
16. **A public park is damaged by littering and broken facilities. Suggest five ways to improve and maintain it.**
Answer:
(i) Repair damaged benches, lights, and pathways.
(ii) Provide waste bins and regular collection.
(iii) Put up clear signs encouraging responsible use.
(iv) Ask residents to report damage to the local authority.
(v) Organise community activities to care for the park.
17. **A district is planning an emergency response system for storms. Suggest five infrastructure measures.**
Answer:
(i) Maintain roads and bridges used by emergency services.
(ii) Identify safe shelters in accessible locations.
(iii) Set up communication systems for alerts.
(iv) Prepare routes for delivering food, medicine, and other supplies.

(v) Ensure facilities are accessible to children, older people, and people with disabilities.

18. **A tourist destination is difficult to reach. Suggest five infrastructure improvements that could support visitors and local residents.**
    Answer:
    (i) Repair and maintain roads leading to the destination.
    (ii) Provide reliable public transport connections.
    (iii) Add clear signs and travel information.
    (iv) Improve communication and emergency services.
    (v) Protect the natural and cultural features that attract visitors.
19. **A school wants to use e-governance services but has limited digital facilities. Suggest five steps to make access easier.**
    Answer:
    (i) Provide reliable internet access.
    (ii) Set up computers or shared digital devices.
    (iii) Ensure a dependable electricity supply.
    (iv) Train staff to use online services safely.
    (v) Help families learn how to access relevant digital information.
20. **Your class is creating a "Community Responsibility Pact" for public infrastructure. Suggest five commitments.**
    Answer:
    (i) We will use roads, parks, and public facilities responsibly.
    (ii) We will not litter or damage public property.
    (iii) We will report potholes and broken streetlights.
    (iv) We will respect facilities used by people of all ages and abilities.
    (v) We will take part in community efforts to keep public spaces clean and safe.

7.14 Multiple Choice Questions with answers for Olympiad type Competitive Exams:

Olympiad-Style Multiple Choice Questions:

1. **Which option is an example of physical infrastructure?**
   A. A festival
   B. A railway line
   C. A family tradition
   D. A local language
   Answer: B. A railway line
2. **Which group contains only examples of utilities?**
   A. Electricity networks and water pipelines
   B. Roads and airports
   C. Schools and libraries
   D. Ports and railway stations
   Answer: A. Electricity networks and water pipelines
3. **A farmer needs to irrigate crops, preserve vegetables, and take them to market. Which combination would help most?**
   A. Canals, cold storage, and roads
   B. Airports, libraries, and courts
   C. Metro trains, parks, and satellites
   D. Ports, hospitals, and footpaths
   Answer: A. Canals, cold storage, and roads

4. **Which statement about state highways is correct?**
   A. They connect towns and districts within a state.
   B. They are used only by trains.
   C. They are maintained by international organisations.
   D. They connect only airports and ports.
   Answer: A. They connect towns and districts within a state.
5. **Which authority builds and maintains national highways and expressways, as described in the chapter?**
   A. Local residents
   B. Central Government
   C. Village schools
   D. Private libraries
   Answer: B. Central Government
6. **Which cities are connected by the Golden Quadrilateral?**
   A. Delhi, Mumbai, Chennai, and Kolkata
   B. Delhi, Jaipur, Lucknow, and Patna
   C. Mumbai, Pune, Goa, and Kochi
   D. Chennai, Bengaluru, Hyderabad, and Kochi
   Answer: A. Delhi, Mumbai, Chennai, and Kolkata
7. **National Highway 44 runs between which two places?**
   A. Mumbai and Kolkata
   B. Srinagar and Kanyakumari
   C. Delhi and Chennai
   D. Guwahati and Kochi
   Answer: B. Srinagar and Kanyakumari
8. **The Dhola Sadiya Bridge connects Assam with:**
   A. Meghalaya
   B. Arunachal Pradesh
   C. Nagaland
   D. Manipur
   Answer: B. Arunachal Pradesh
9. **Which river does the Dhola Sadiya Bridge cross?**
   A. Lohit
   B. Godavari
   C. Narmada
   D. Kaveri
   Answer: A. Lohit
10. **What makes Meghalaya's living root bridges distinctive?**
    A. They are made from tree roots that grow stronger over time.
    B. They are built only from steel.
    C. They are carried from one village to another.
    D. They are used only by trains.
    Answer: A. They are made from tree roots that grow stronger over time.
11. **Which communities are known for making living root bridges in Meghalaya?**
    A. Khasi and Jaintia
    B. Toda and Bhil
    C. Naga and Mizo
    D. Santhal and Gond
    Answer: A. Khasi and Jaintia

12. **Which tree is used to create living root bridges?**
    A. Banyan
    B. Ficus elastica
    C. Neem
    D. Teak
    Answer: B. Ficus elastica
13. **When did the British introduce railways in India?**
    A. 1753
    B. 1853
    C. 1903
    D. 1947
    Answer: B. 1853
14. **What was one purpose of the early railways built under British rule?**
    A. To carry raw materials to ports
    B. To connect every village to an airport
    C. To transport only passengers
    D. To provide online communication
    Answer: A. To carry raw materials to ports
15. **Which goods are carried by Indian cargo trains, according to the chapter?**
    A. Coal, grains, textiles, and electronics
    B. Only fruit and vegetables
    C. Only passengers and luggage
    D. Water, electricity, and internet signals
    Answer: A. Coal, grains, textiles, and electronics
16. **What is one way railway expansion affected nearby areas?**
    A. Markets and settlements developed near stations.
    B. Ports disappeared from the coastline.
    C. Roads became unnecessary everywhere.
    D. Communication networks stopped growing.
    Answer: A. Markets and settlements developed near stations.
17. **Freight trains use considerably less energy than which mode of transport?**
    A. Road transport
    B. Air transport
    C. Water pipelines
    D. Walking
    Answer: A. Road transport
18. **Which change can help reduce pollution from railway transport?**
    A. Electrifying trains
    B. Using more coal
    C. Removing railway stations
    D. Replacing tracks with roads
    Answer: A. Electrifying trains
19. **Which city transport system can reduce road congestion and commute time?**
    A. Metro
    B. Cargo ship
    C. Water pipeline
    D. Airport terminal
    Answer: A. Metro
20. **Some metro systems, such as the Delhi Metro, also use which energy source?**
    A. Solar power

B. Firewood
C. Tidal waves only
D. Coal carts
Answer: A. Solar power

21. **Which is the fastest way to connect distant places, according to the chapter?**
A. Air transport
B. Walking paths
C. Local roads
D. River ferries
Answer: A. Air transport

22. **Which shipment is best suited to air cargo during an emergency?**
A. Vaccines needed quickly in a remote area
B. Sand for a nearby construction site
C. Coal for a power plant
D. Furniture for a local shop
Answer: A. Vaccines needed quickly in a remote area

23. **Which transport mode is especially useful for carrying heavy goods over long distances at relatively low cost?**
A. Shipping
B. Metro
C. Bicycle
D. Helicopter
Answer: A. Shipping

24. **What is the main function of a port?**
A. To load and unload goods from ships
B. To generate internet signals
C. To maintain local roads
D. To provide online classes
Answer: A. To load and unload goods from ships

25. **Which set lists only components of communication infrastructure?**
A. Cables, towers, satellites, and data centres
B. Roads, bridges, buses, and tunnels
C. Schools, parks, courts, and hospitals
D. Canals, pumps, dams, and reservoirs
Answer: A. Cables, towers, satellites, and data centres

26. **A citizen applies for a document online using a government service. This is an example of:**
A. E-governance
B. Shipping
C. Social forestry
D. Road transport
Answer: A. E-governance

27. **Buying or selling goods through an online platform is called:**
A. E-commerce
B. E-democracy
C. E-transport
D. E-irrigation
Answer: A. E-commerce

28. **Who pioneered wireless transmission in India?**
A. Jagadish Chandra Bose

B. Satyendra Nath Bose
C. C. V. Raman
D. Homi Bhabha
Answer: A. Jagadish Chandra Bose

29. **What did J. C. Bose demonstrate in Calcutta in 1895?**
A. Signals could pass through a wall.
B. A railway could run without tracks.
C. A ship could travel through a tunnel.
D. Solar panels could power a city.
Answer: A. Signals could pass through a wall.

30. **Which group contains only examples of social infrastructure?**
A. Schools, hospitals, libraries, and courts
B. Bridges, roads, railways, and ports
C. Towers, cables, satellites, and data centres
D. Windmills, solar parks, and pipelines
Answer: A. Schools, hospitals, libraries, and courts

31. **A village receives mobile alerts about an approaching flood. Which infrastructure made this possible?**
A. Communication infrastructure
B. Social infrastructure only
C. Road infrastructure only
D. Port infrastructure
Answer: A. Communication infrastructure

32. **A road project is planned through a wildlife-rich forest. Which concern should planners examine?**
A. Possible harm to biodiversity
B. The colour of railway tickets
C. The number of school libraries
D. The capacity of a port
Answer: A. Possible harm to biodiversity

33. **Which action best shows a citizen's responsibility toward infrastructure?**
A. Reporting a broken streetlight
B. Scribbling on a monument
C. Leaving waste on a road
D. Damaging a public bench
Answer: A. Reporting a broken streetlight

34. **Which improvement would most directly reduce emissions from a public building?**
A. Installing solar panels
B. Adding more road signs
C. Building a larger car park
D. Increasing paper notices
Answer: A. Installing solar panels

35. **Which design choice makes infrastructure more inclusive?**
A. Providing accessible paths for people with disabilities
B. Removing footpaths
C. Making entrances accessible only by stairs
D. Placing signs where they cannot be seen
Answer: A. Providing accessible paths for people with disabilities

36. **According to Kautilya's *Arthashastra*, roads should be planned with different widths based on:**
    A. The nature of traffic and the road's use
    B. The colour of the nearby buildings
    C. The number of shops on the road
    D. The age of the trees nearby
    Answer: A. The nature of traffic and the road's use
37. **Which action would help protect waterworks and public parks?**
    A. Following rules against damaging public infrastructure
    B. Breaking the reservoir dam
    C. Blocking paths to waterworks
    D. Damaging park hedges
    Answer: A. Following rules against damaging public infrastructure
38. **A family reaches a farm through canals, pumps, roads, cold storage, and internet information. What does this illustrate?**
    A. Different infrastructure systems work together.
    B. Only roads are needed for farming.
    C. Communication replaces transport.
    D. Cold storage makes irrigation unnecessary.
    Answer: A. Different infrastructure systems work together.
39. **Which statement best describes infrastructure's role in national development?**
    A. It supports connectivity, economic activity, jobs, and quality of life.
    B. It is useful only for travel.
    C. It benefits only large cities.
    D. It replaces the need for public services.
    Answer: A. It supports connectivity, economic activity, jobs, and quality of life.
40. **Who shares responsibility for maintaining public infrastructure?**
    A. Government and citizens
    B. Only private businesses
    C. Only tourists
    D. Only school students
    Answer: A. Government and citizens

7.15 Best Practices Opportunity List from the Chapter: (12 Ideas)

Best Practices for Teaching "Infrastructure: Engine of India's Development":

(1) Begin with students' daily experiences. Ask how they travel to school, get water and electricity, and use phones or the internet.

(2) Use a concept map. Group examples under transport, utilities, communication, energy, and social infrastructure.

(3) Use a map of India. Locate examples from the chapter, such as the Dhola Sadiya Bridge, major ports, airports, and railway routes.

(4) Explain how infrastructure systems connect. Use the farmer's journey in the chapter to show how irrigation, roads, cold storage, and internet information work together.

(5) Compare transport modes. Discuss what roads, railways, metros, air transport, and shipping each do best.

(6) Connect infrastructure to local life. Have students identify facilities they use nearby, such as roads, schools, hospitals, water systems, or parks.

(7) Teach with clear cause-and-effect examples. For instance, better transport can help farmers reach markets and people reach hospitals more quickly.

(8) **Include both benefits and challenges.** Discuss improved access and trade alongside pollution, environmental damage, and poor maintenance.
(9) **Use examples of local knowledge.** Discuss Meghalaya's living root bridges as infrastructure shaped by community knowledge and nature.
(10) **Link infrastructure to sustainability and inclusion.** Ask students how facilities can use cleaner energy and serve children, older people, and people with disabilities.
(11) **Discuss shared responsibility.** Let students suggest how government and citizens can maintain public facilities and report damage.
(12) **Check understanding with short scenarios.** Ask students to choose suitable infrastructure for a village road, a flood-prone area, or a school needing internet access.

7.16 Innovations Opportunity List from the Chapter: (14 Ideas)

Innovations in Teaching–Learning:

(1) **Community infrastructure map:** Students mark nearby roads, schools, hospitals, water facilities, parks, and communication services on a simple local map.
(2) **Build-a-route challenge:** Give teams a map with rivers, hills, and towns; ask them to design a route using suitable roads, bridges, or tunnels.
(3) **Farmer-to-market simulation:** Students role-play a farmer, transporter, cold-storage operator, and market seller to show how infrastructure supports crops from farm to buyer.
(4) **Bridge-building activity:** Teams build a simple model bridge from classroom materials and explain which terrain or travel problem it could solve.
(5) **Transport mode decision game:** Give students different cargoes or travel needs and ask them to choose between road, rail, air, or shipping with reasons.
(6) **"Trace a message" activity:** Students follow a voice message from one phone to another, identifying the roles of electricity, towers, cables, satellites, and data centres.
(7) **Design an inclusive bus station:** Groups draw a station with safe waiting areas, clear signs, accessible paths, and routes connecting to nearby services.
(8) **Sustainable school audit:** Students observe their school and suggest practical improvements such as solar panels, waste management, water saving, or safer footpaths.
(9) **Infrastructure news wall:** Students collect or write short reports about local infrastructure projects, explaining who benefits and what concerns need attention.
(10) **Living root bridge model or digital storyboard:** Students illustrate how the Khasi and Jaintia communities guide tree roots across streams and explain its cultural and practical value.
(11) **Emergency-response map:** Teams map safe routes and communication needs for a fictional flood or earthquake scenario.
(12) **Infrastructure "before and after" presentation:** Students compare how a bridge, road, or communication network changes travel, access to services, or trade.
(13) **Public infrastructure responsibility pact:** The class creates a poster with commitments to use public facilities responsibly and report damage.
(14) **Infrastructure innovation pitch:** Students propose one improvement for their village, town, or school and explain its users, benefits, cost considerations, and environmental impact.

7.17: Practicing Questions/Question Bank

Sample Question Bank:

A. Fill in the Blanks:

1. The Dhola Sadiya Bridge connects Assam and _____ Pradesh.

Answer: Arunachal

2. Living root bridges in Meghalaya are made using the roots of the _____ elastica tree.

Answer: Ficus

3. Buying and selling products over the internet is called _____.

Answer: E-commerce

B. One-Mark Descriptive Questions:

1. **What is physical infrastructure?**
   Answer: Physical infrastructure is a network of tangible structures that helps cities and villages function.

2. **What is social infrastructure?**
   Answer: Social infrastructure includes facilities such as schools, hospitals, libraries, and courts that support community wellbeing.

3. **Who pioneered wireless transmission in India?**
   Answer: Jagadish Chandra Bose pioneered wireless transmission in India.

C. Two-Mark Descriptive Questions:

1. **How do roads help farmers?**
   Answer:
   (i) Roads help farmers carry crops to markets.
   (ii) They help transport produce to buyers before it spoils.

2. **What are two functions of communication infrastructure?**
   Answer:
   (i) It transmits messages, images, and videos.
   (ii) It supports services such as online learning and e-governance.

3. **How can citizens help maintain public infrastructure?**
   Answer:
   (i) They should use public facilities responsibly.
   (ii) They should report damage, such as potholes or broken streetlights.

D. Three-Mark Descriptive Questions:

1. **What are three benefits of metro train systems?**
   Answer:
   (i) They provide fast and reliable travel.
   (ii) They help reduce road traffic.
   (iii) They can lower pollution by using cleaner energy.

2. **How can air transport help during a natural disaster?**
   Answer:
   (i) Aircraft can reach difficult terrain quickly.
   (ii) Cargo flights can carry urgent supplies such as vaccines.
   (iii) Air transport can deliver aid to people in remote areas.

3. **What features should sustainable infrastructure have?**
   Answer:
   (i) It should use cleaner energy where possible.
   (ii) It should reduce pollution and harm to biodiversity.
   (iii) It should consider the needs of people of different ages and abilities.

E. Five-Mark Descriptive Questions:

1. **Explain how infrastructure supports a farmer in taking crops from the field to the market.**
   Answer:
   (i) Canals and electric pumps help irrigate crops.
   (ii) Roads connect farms with towns and markets.
   (iii) Trucks can carry harvested crops to buyers.
   (iv) Cold storage helps keep produce fresh.
   (v) Internet access can help farmers check market prices and information.

2. **Describe five ways citizens can help care for public infrastructure.**
   Answer:
   (i) Use public roads, parks, and facilities responsibly.
   (ii) Avoid littering in public places.
   (iii) Do not damage buildings or monuments.
   (iv) Report potholes and broken streetlights to the authorities.
   (v) Take part in community efforts to keep public spaces clean and safe.

****

7th Standard Social Science Book (Part 2) Chapter 8

Chapter 8: Banks and the Magic of Finance

8.1 Summary of the Chapter:

Summary: "Banks and the Magic of Finance":

(1) **Financial infrastructure** includes banks, payment systems, stock markets, and other financial institutions that help people, businesses, and governments manage money.

(2) Banks accept deposits, keep people's money safe, allow withdrawals, and lend money to borrowers.

(3) Banks offer different accounts: savings accounts for regular saving, current accounts for businesses and traders, and fixed deposits for money kept over a set period.

(4) Banks pay interest on deposits and charge interest on loans. The difference between the rates helps banks earn income.

(5) **Compounding** means earning interest on the original deposit and on interest earned earlier, so savings can grow over time.

(6) Passbooks and other account records help people track money coming into and going out of their accounts.

(7) The Pradhan Mantri Jan Dhan Yojana, launched in 2014, helped expand access to bank accounts, especially for low-income earners.

(8) Post offices and institutions such as NABARD provide financial services and support areas such as rural development, farming, and village industries.

(9) The Reserve Bank of India (RBI) supervises India's banking system, supports banks, and sets rules related to currency and benchmark interest rates.

(10) People can make payments using cash, cheques, debit cards, internet banking, and mobile payment systems such as UPI.

(11) A share represents part-ownership in a company; companies can raise funds by issuing shares, while share prices can rise or fall in the stock market.

(12) Digital payments are convenient, but users must protect personal and banking details, never share OTPs or PINs, avoid suspicious links, and report fraud.

8.2 Important Formulas:

Important Rules for Answering Qualitative Questions:

(1) **Identify the purpose of the financial service.** Decide whether the situation involves saving, borrowing, making a payment, transferring money, or investing.

(2) **Choose the bank account that matches the user.** Savings accounts suit individuals who save regularly; current accounts serve businesses and traders; fixed deposits hold money for a set period.

(3) **Distinguish deposits from loans.** A deposit is money placed in a bank; a loan is money borrowed and must be repaid, usually with interest.

(4) **Explain interest from both sides.** Depositors may earn interest on savings, while borrowers pay interest on loans.

(5) **Recognise how banks earn income.** Banks generally pay a lower interest rate on deposits and charge a higher rate on loans; the difference contributes to bank income.

(6) **Explain compounding correctly.** Compounding means earning interest on the original amount and on interest earned earlier.

(7) **Match the payment method to the task.** Cash, cheques, debit cards, ATMs, internet banking, and UPI have different uses and ways of processing payments.

(8) **Know what happens in a UPI payment.** The payer enters the amount and authorises the transaction with a UPI PIN; the payment system processes the transfer to the receiver's bank account.
(9) **Distinguish debit from credit.** A debit is money going out of an account; a credit is money coming into an account.
(10) **Understand the RBI's role.** The Reserve Bank of India supervises the banking system and sets rules related to currency and benchmark interest rates.
(11) **Treat shares as investments with changing value.** A share represents part-ownership in a company; its price can rise or fall, so trading may result in gains or losses.
(12) **Apply digital-payment safety rules.** Never share OTPs, PINs, passwords, or sensitive account details; avoid unknown links and report suspected fraud through the channels named in the chapter.

8.3 Fill-Up the Blank LOTS type questions with Answers: (35 Questions)

Fill in the Blanks – LOTS:

1. A network of banks, payment systems, stock markets, and other financial institutions is called financial _____.

Answer: Infrastructure

2. A financial institution that accepts deposits and gives loans is called a _____.

Answer: Bank

3. Money placed in a bank account is called a _____.

Answer: Deposit

4. Money borrowed from a bank that must be repaid is called a _____.

Answer: Loan

5. The amount charged for borrowing money or earned by lending money is called _____.

Answer: Interest

6. An account for individuals who save regularly and earn interest is a _____ account.

Answer: Savings

7. Businesses and traders commonly use a _____ account for frequent payments.

Answer: Current

8. Money kept in a bank for a fixed period is placed in a _____ deposit account.

Answer: Fixed

9. Earning interest on earlier interest as well as on the original amount is called _____.

Answer: Compounding

10. A bank document that records deposits and withdrawals is called a _____.

Answer: Passbook

11. Money taken out of an account is called a _____.

Answer: Debit

12. Money received into an account is called a _____.

Answer: Credit

13. A paper instrument used to pay someone directly from a bank account is a _____.

Answer: Cheque

14. A machine where people can withdraw cash using a debit card is called an _____.

Answer: ATM

15. ATM stands for Automated Teller _____.

Answer: Machine

16. The numeric code used to authorise an ATM or debit-card transaction is the _____.

Answer: PIN
17. PIN stands for Personal Identification _____.
Answer: Number
18. A debit card can be used to withdraw cash and make payments at retail _____.
Answer: Stores
19. A Point of Sale machine is commonly abbreviated as _____.
Answer: POS
20. Checking balances and transferring money through a bank's website or app is called internet _____.
Answer: Banking
21. The Unified Payments Interface is commonly abbreviated as _____.
Answer: UPI
22. The National Payments Corporation of India launched UPI in _____.
Answer: 2016
23. A UPI payment can be made by scanning a QR code or entering the recipient's _____ number.
Answer: Phone
24. The UPI user enters a UPI PIN to authorise a _____.
Answer: Transaction
25. BHIM stands for Bharat Interface for _____.
Answer: Money
26. A one-time temporary code used to verify identity or authorise a transaction is called an _____.
Answer: OTP
27. OTP stands for One-Time _____.
Answer: Password
28. The Pradhan Mantri Jan Dhan Yojana was launched in _____.
Answer: 2014
29. The Jan Dhan Yojana aimed to give people access to a bank _____.
Answer: Account
30. The Reserve Bank of India is also known as India's _____ bank.
Answer: Central
31. The Reserve Bank of India supervises the Indian _____ system.
Answer: Banking
32. The Reserve Bank of India was established in _____.
Answer: 1935
33. A base interest rate fixed by the RBI for lending money to commercial banks is called a _____ interest rate.
Answer: Benchmark
34. National Savings Certificates are commonly abbreviated as _____.
Answer: NSC
35. NABARD supports agriculture and _____ development.
Answer: Rural
36. A unit of ownership in a company is called a _____.
Answer: Share
37. The marketplace where shares and other financial securities are traded is called a stock _____.
Answer: Exchange
38. The Bombay Stock Exchange was established in _____.
Answer: 1875

39. A fall in the share prices of many companies at the same time may result in a stock market _____.

Answer: Crash

40. People should never share their bank passwords, PINs, or _____ with strangers.

Answer: OTPs

8.4 Fill-Up the Blank HOTS type questions with Answers: (40 Questions)

Fill in the Blanks – HOTS:

1. Navdeep wants to save part of his salary regularly and earn interest, so the most suitable account is a _____ account.

Answer: Savings

2. A shopkeeper makes and receives payments frequently for business, so a _____ account may suit the business.

Answer: Current

3. A family wants to deposit a sum once and keep it untouched for a fixed period to earn interest, so it may choose a _____ deposit.

Answer: Fixed

4. Rima needs money to buy machinery for her business and agrees to repay it later with interest; she is taking a _____.

Answer: Loan

5. When a bank lends a depositor's money to a borrower and charges the borrower a higher rate than it pays the depositor, the difference helps the bank earn _____.

Answer: Income

6. A student saves ₹1,000 and keeps both the original amount and earned interest in the account; future interest on the growing balance is called _____.

Answer: Compounding

7. If a bank customer wants to check a record of deposits and withdrawals, the document they can use is a _____.

Answer: Passbook

8. A student receives a scholarship payment into a bank account; the entry is recorded as a _____.

Answer: Credit

9. A person withdraws money from a bank account; the transaction is recorded as a _____.

Answer: Debit

10. Rohan wants to pay a friend directly from his bank account using a paper instrument; he can write a _____.

Answer: Cheque

11. A traveller needs cash when the bank branch is closed and has a debit card; the traveller can use an _____.

Answer: ATM

12. Before an ATM gives cash, the user must enter a secret numeric code called a _____.

Answer: PIN

13. A customer pays at a shop by inserting a debit card into a machine and entering a PIN; the payment is processed through a _____ machine.

Answer: POS

14. A person wants to check an account balance and transfer money through a bank's website; they can use internet _____.

Answer: Banking

15. A buyer scans a shopkeeper's QR code and enters the amount on a phone to send money instantly; this payment uses _____.

Answer: UPI

16. Before a UPI payment is processed, the payer must authorise the transfer with a UPI _____.

Answer: PIN

17. A person receives a call asking for an OTP and bank password; the safest action is to _____ the details.

Answer: Refuse to share

18. A message includes an unknown link asking someone to install an app to receive money; the person should avoid _____ the link.

Answer: Clicking

19. A person suspects that money has been stolen through a digital payment scam; they should report the fraud through helpline _____.

Answer: 1930

20. When citizens need a document or want to file a complaint online, they are using _____.

Answer: E-governance

21. A business sells goods through an online platform to customers in different places; this activity is called _____.

Answer: E-commerce

22. A person wants the authority responsible for supervising Indian banks; the institution to identify is the _____.

Answer: Reserve Bank of India

23. When the RBI sets rules for the banking system, it is performing its role as the banking system's _____.

Answer: Supervisor

24. A farmer seeks support for farming loans and rural development; the institution named in the chapter is _____.

Answer: NABARD

25. A company needs money to expand and offers part-ownership to investors; it can raise funds by issuing _____.

Answer: Shares

26. A person buys a share in a company; they become a part-_____ of that company.

Answer: Owner

27. If many investors want a company's shares because they expect it to do well, the share price may _____.

Answer: Rise

28. If a company has losses or a poor product and investors lose confidence, demand for its shares may fall and the share price may _____.

Answer: Drop

29. If share prices of many companies fall at the same time, the stock market may experience a _____.

Answer: Crash

30. If share prices of many companies rise, the stock market may experience a _____.

Answer: Boom

31. A person invests savings in shares hoping their value will grow, but the value can also fall; this activity involves financial _____.

Answer: Risk

32. A company issues shares to raise money for its operations, while buyers purchase shares as an _____.

Answer: Investment

33. The market where shares are bought and sold is called a stock _____.

Answer: Exchange

34. When a person keeps money in a bank instead of at home, it is generally safer and can earn _____.

Answer: Interest

35. A bank does not lend all the money deposited by customers because it keeps some money as a _____.

Answer: Reserve

36. A worker receives wages directly into a bank account instead of through several middlemen; this is an example of a direct _____.

Answer: Transfer

37. A person wants to transfer money to someone without writing a cheque or visiting a bank; an electronic payment method can make the transfer more _____.

Answer: Convenient

38. A UPI user can check balances and transaction records on a phone, reducing the need for frequent physical _____ updates.

Answer: Passbook

39. A bank account with no minimum balance requirement can help more people access formal banking; this supports financial _____.

Answer: Inclusion

40. When deposits, loans, digital payments, and investments help money flow among people and businesses, they support economic _____.

Answer: Activity

8.5 One-mark questions with Answers of LOTS Type: (35 Questions)

One-Mark Descriptive Questions – LOTS:

1. **What is financial infrastructure?**
   Answer: Financial infrastructure is a network of banks, payment systems, stock markets, and other financial institutions.
2. **What is a bank?**
   Answer: A bank is a financial institution that accepts deposits and lends money.
3. **What is a deposit?**
   Answer: A deposit is money placed in a bank account.
4. **What is a loan?**
   Answer: A loan is money borrowed from a bank or financial institution that must be repaid.
5. **What is interest?**
   Answer: Interest is the amount charged for borrowing money or earned by lending money.
6. **Who commonly uses a savings account?**
   Answer: Individuals who save regularly commonly use a savings account.
7. **Who commonly uses a current account?**
   Answer: Businesses and traders commonly use a current account.
8. **What is a fixed deposit account?**
   Answer: It is an account in which a sum of money is kept for a fixed period.

9. **What is compounding?**
   Answer: Compounding is earning interest on the original amount and on interest earned earlier.
10. **What does a passbook record?**
    Answer: A passbook records money received into and withdrawn from a bank account.
11. **What does "debit" mean in a bank account?**
    Answer: Debit means money has been taken out of an account.
12. **What does "credit" mean in a bank account?**
    Answer: Credit means money has been received into an account.
13. **What is a cheque?**
    Answer: A cheque is a paper instrument used to pay someone directly from a bank account.
14. **What is an ATM?**
    Answer: An ATM is a self-service machine that allows customers to withdraw cash.
15. **What is a PIN?**
    Answer: A PIN is a numeric code used to authenticate and secure financial transactions.
16. **What is a POS machine used for?**
    Answer: A POS machine is used to make debit-card payments at retail stores.
17. **What is internet banking?**
    Answer: Internet banking allows account holders to check balances and transfer money online.
18. **What is UPI?**
    Answer: UPI is a digital payment system that enables quick transfers between bank accounts.
19. **Which organisation launched UPI in 2016?**
    Answer: The National Payments Corporation of India launched UPI in 2016.
20. **Name one way to make a UPI payment.**
    Answer: A user can scan the recipient's QR code to make a UPI payment.
21. **What does BHIM stand for?**
    Answer: BHIM stands for Bharat Interface for Money.
22. **What is an OTP?**
    Answer: An OTP is a one-time temporary code used to verify identity or authorise a transaction.
23. **What is the Pradhan Mantri Jan Dhan Yojana?**
    Answer: It is a scheme launched in 2014 to expand access to bank accounts.
24. **What is the role of the RBI in India's banking system?**
    Answer: The RBI supervises India's banking system.
25. **When was the Reserve Bank of India established?**
    Answer: The Reserve Bank of India was established in 1935.
26. **What is a benchmark interest rate?**
    Answer: It is the base interest rate set by the RBI for lending money to commercial banks.
27. **What is one savings service offered by post offices?**
    Answer: Post offices offer savings schemes such as National Savings Certificates.
28. **What is NABARD's role?**
    Answer: NABARD supports rural development and provides funding for activities such as farming.

29. **What is a share?**
    Answer: A share is a unit of ownership in a company.
30. **What is a stock exchange?**
    Answer: A stock exchange is a marketplace where financial securities such as shares are traded.
31. **When was the Bombay Stock Exchange established?**
    Answer: The Bombay Stock Exchange was established in 1875.
32. **What is a stock market crash?**
    Answer: A stock market crash occurs when the prices of shares of many companies fall sharply.
33. **What is a stock market boom?**
    Answer: A stock market boom occurs when the prices of shares of many companies rise.
34. **What is one reason a company's share price may fall?**
    Answer: A company's share price may fall if it performs poorly or faces a major loss.
35. **What should people avoid sharing with strangers during digital payments?**
    Answer: People should never share their OTPs, PINs, passwords, or other sensitive banking details with strangers.

8.6 One-mark questions with Answers of HOTS Type: (30 Questions)

One-Mark Descriptive Questions – HOTS:

1. **Navdeep wants to save part of his salary regularly and earn interest; which account should he consider?**
   Answer: He should consider a savings account.
2. **A trader makes many deposits and withdrawals for business; which account is most suitable?**
   Answer: A current account is suitable for the trader.
3. **A person wants to deposit money once and keep it untouched for a fixed period; which account should they choose?**
   Answer: They should choose a fixed deposit account.
4. **Rima borrows money to buy machinery for her business; what must she repay?**
   Answer: She must repay the loan amount along with interest.
5. **Why can a bank earn income when it accepts deposits and gives loans?**
   Answer: It generally charges borrowers more interest than it pays depositors.
6. **A student leaves savings and earned interest in an account for another year; what process can make the balance grow faster?**
   Answer: Compounding can make the balance grow faster.
7. **A bank customer wants to check past deposits and withdrawals; which document should they consult?**
   Answer: They should consult their passbook.
8. **A scholarship payment enters a student's account; how is this recorded?**
   Answer: It is recorded as a credit.
9. **A customer withdraws cash from an ATM; how is this recorded in the account?**
   Answer: It is recorded as a debit.
10. **A customer wants to pay a friend from a bank account without using cash; which paper instrument could be used?**
    Answer: The customer could write a cheque.

11. **A person needs cash after the bank branch has closed; which service can they use with a debit card?**
    Answer: They can use an ATM.
12. **Why should an ATM user keep their PIN secret?**
    Answer: Keeping the PIN secret helps prevent others from accessing the account.
13. **A customer pays at a shop by inserting a debit card and entering a PIN; which machine processes the payment?**
    Answer: A Point of Sale machine processes the payment.
14. **A person wants to transfer money using a bank's website; which service should they use?**
    Answer: They should use internet banking.
15. **A buyer scans a shopkeeper's QR code and enters a UPI PIN; what kind of transaction are they making?**
    Answer: They are making a digital payment through UPI.
16. **A caller asks for a customer's OTP to "confirm" a bank payment; what should the customer do?**
    Answer: The customer should refuse to share the OTP.
17. **A message asks someone to click an unknown link to receive a prize; what is the safest response?**
    Answer: The person should avoid clicking the link.
18. **A person notices money missing after a suspected online scam; what should they do promptly?**
    Answer: They should report the fraud through helpline 1930 or the National Cybercrime Reporting Portal.
19. **A family wants to keep savings in a formal financial institution but lives far from a bank; what nearby option may help?**
    Answer: A post office may provide accessible savings services.
20. **A farmer needs financial support for farming or rural activity; which institution named in the chapter supports rural development?**
    Answer: NABARD supports rural development and farming-related finance.
21. **A bank customer wants to know who supervises Indian banks; which institution should they identify?**
    Answer: They should identify the Reserve Bank of India.
22. **Why does the RBI set rules for banks and benchmark interest rates?**
    Answer: It supervises the banking system and helps regulate banking policies.
23. **A company wants to raise funds by offering people part-ownership; what can it issue?**
    Answer: It can issue shares.
24. **A person buys shares in a company; what relationship do they gain with that company?**
    Answer: They become a part-owner of the company.
25. **A company performs well and more people want its shares; what may happen to its share price?**
    Answer: Its share price may rise.
26. **A company faces losses and a workers' strike; what may happen to demand for its shares?**
    Answer: Demand for its shares may fall.
27. **Share prices of many companies fall at the same time; what might the stock market experience?**
    Answer: It might experience a stock market crash.

28. **A person invests in shares expecting their value to rise; what should they remember about share prices?**
    Answer: Share prices can rise or fall and may bring gains or losses.
29. **A student wants to know how money moved through their account during the month; what record can help?**
    Answer: The passbook or transaction history can show the account activity.
30. **A worker receives wages directly into a bank account instead of through several intermediaries; what benefit does this illustrate?**
    Answer: It illustrates how direct transfers can reduce middlemen and deliver funds on time.

8.7 Two-mark questions with Answers of LOTS Type: (30 Questions)

Two-Mark Descriptive Questions – LOTS:

1. **What is financial infrastructure?**
   Answer:
   (i) Financial infrastructure includes banks, payment systems, stock markets, and other financial institutions.
   (ii) It helps people, businesses, and governments manage money and make transactions.
2. **What are two main services offered by banks?**
   Answer:
   (i) Banks accept and hold deposits.
   (ii) Banks lend money to borrowers as loans.
3. **What is a savings account?**
   Answer:
   (i) It is an account for individuals who save regularly.
   (ii) It earns interest, subject to the account's terms.
4. **What is a current account?**
   Answer:
   (i) It is commonly used by businesses and traders.
   (ii) It supports frequent deposits and withdrawals.
5. **What is a fixed deposit account?**
   Answer:
   (i) It holds a one-time deposit for a fixed period.
   (ii) At the end of that period, the bank returns the amount with interest.
6. **What is interest?**
   Answer:
   (i) Interest is the amount charged for borrowing money.
   (ii) It is also the amount earned by lending or depositing money.
7. **What is compounding?**
   Answer:
   (i) Compounding means earning interest on the original amount and earlier interest.
   (ii) It can help savings grow over time.
8. **What does a passbook record?**
   Answer:
   (i) A passbook records money deposited into an account.
   (ii) It also records withdrawals and other transactions.
9. **What do debit and credit mean in a bank account?**
   Answer:

(i) Debit means money is taken out of an account.
(ii) Credit means money is received into an account.

10. **What is a bank loan?**
Answer:
(i) A loan is money borrowed from a bank for a specific purpose.
(ii) The borrower must repay the amount with interest.
11. **How do banks earn income from deposits and loans?**
Answer:
(i) Banks usually pay depositors a lower rate of interest.
(ii) They generally charge borrowers a higher rate on loans.
12. **What is the purpose of the Pradhan Mantri Jan Dhan Yojana?**
Answer:
(i) It was launched to expand access to bank accounts.
(ii) It especially aimed to help low-income earners access banking services.
13. **What are two financial services offered by post offices?**
Answer:
(i) Post offices offer savings schemes such as National Savings Certificates.
(ii) They also offer schemes such as Kisan Vikas Patra and Sukanya Samriddhi accounts.
14. **What is NABARD's role?**
Answer:
(i) NABARD supports rural development.
(ii) It funds banks that provide loans for farming and village industries.
15. **What is the role of the Reserve Bank of India?**
Answer:
(i) The RBI supervises the Indian banking system.
(ii) It sets rules related to currency and benchmark interest rates.
16. **What is a benchmark interest rate?**
Answer:
(i) It is a base interest rate fixed by the RBI.
(ii) It applies to lending by the RBI to commercial banks.
17. **What is a cheque?**
Answer:
(i) A cheque is a paper instrument used to pay someone from a bank account.
(ii) The payer writes the recipient's name, amount, and signature on it.
18. **How can a customer withdraw cash using a debit card?**
Answer:
(i) The customer inserts the debit card into an ATM.
(ii) The customer enters the withdrawal amount and PIN.
19. **What is a POS machine used for?**
Answer:
(i) A POS machine processes debit-card payments at retail stores.
(ii) The customer enters a PIN to authorise the payment.
20. **What can a customer do through internet banking?**
Answer:
(i) The customer can check account balances and transaction history.
(ii) The customer can transfer money online.
21. **What is UPI?**
Answer:

(i) UPI is a digital payment system for transferring money between bank accounts.
(ii) It can use a QR code or the recipient's phone number.

22. **What is an OTP?**
Answer:
(i) OTP means One-Time Password.
(ii) It is a temporary code used to verify identity or authorise a transaction.
23. **What is a share?**
Answer:
(i) A share is a unit of ownership in a company.
(ii) A person who buys shares becomes a part-owner of that company.
24. **What is a stock exchange?**
Answer:
(i) A stock exchange is a marketplace for financial securities.
(ii) Shares are bought and sold there.
25. **What is the difference between a stock market boom and a crash?**
Answer:
(i) A boom occurs when share prices of many companies rise.
(ii) A crash occurs when share prices of many companies fall.
26. **Name two factors that can affect share prices.**
Answer:
(i) A company's performance can affect its share prices.
(ii) Government policy changes or economic shocks can also affect them.
27. **Why do companies issue shares?**
Answer:
(i) Companies issue shares to raise funds.
(ii) The funds can support their operations or expansion.
28. **Name two ways to stay safe during digital payments.**
Answer:
(i) Never share passwords, PINs, or OTPs with strangers.
(ii) Avoid clicking unknown links or messages.
29. **What should a person do after discovering digital payment fraud?**
Answer:
(i) Report the fraud through helpline 1930.
(ii) It can also be reported through the National Cybercrime Reporting Portal.
30. **How do banks support people and businesses?**
Answer:
(i) Banks provide safe places to save money and make payments.
(ii) They offer loans for purposes such as education, homes, or business needs.

8.8. Two-mark questions with Answers of HOTS Type: (30 Questions)

Two-Mark Descriptive Questions – HOTS:

1. **Navdeep wants to save part of his salary every month and earn interest. Which account suits him, and why?**
Answer:
(i) A savings account suits Navdeep because it is meant for regular savings.
(ii) It can earn interest on the money deposited.
2. **Rima's business needs frequent deposits and withdrawals. Which account should she consider, and why?**
Answer:

(i) She should consider a current account.
(ii) It is designed for businesses and traders who make frequent payments.

3. **A person wants to keep a sum of money untouched for a fixed period. Which account could suit this goal, and what does the bank return?**
   Answer:
   (i) A fixed deposit account could suit this goal.
   (ii) At the end of the fixed period, the bank returns the original amount with interest.
4. **Why might saving money in a bank be safer than keeping a large amount at home?**
   Answer:
   (i) A bank provides a secure place to keep money.
   (ii) Deposits may also earn interest according to the account's terms.
5. **A borrower takes a bank loan to buy machinery. What must the borrower repay, and when?**
   Answer:
   (i) The borrower must repay the original loan amount and the interest charged.
   (ii) Repayment is made after the period specified by the bank.
6. **Why do banks usually charge borrowers a higher interest rate than they pay depositors?**
   Answer:
   (i) The bank receives more interest from borrowers than it pays to depositors.
   (ii) The difference is one source of income for the bank.
7. **A student leaves both the original deposit and its interest in the account. How can this affect future savings?**
   Answer:
   (i) Future interest may be earned on the larger balance.
   (ii) This process is called compounding and can increase savings over time.
8. **A person wants to know whether money entered or left their bank account. Which record can help, and what does it show?**
   Answer:
   (i) The person can check a passbook or transaction history.
   (ii) It records credits received and debits taken from the account.
9. **A worker receives wages directly into a bank account. How can this benefit the worker?**
   Answer:
   (i) The money can reach the worker's account directly.
   (ii) Direct transfers can reduce middlemen and support timely payment.
10. **A customer needs cash while the bank branch is closed. What can they use, and what security step is required?**
    Answer:
    (i) The customer can use a debit card at an ATM.
    (ii) They must enter their PIN to authorise the withdrawal.
11. **A customer wants to pay a shop using a debit card. What equipment is used, and how is the transaction authorised?**
    Answer:
    (i) The shop uses a Point of Sale machine to process the payment.
    (ii) The customer enters a PIN to authorise the transaction.
12. **A person wants to transfer money quickly without visiting a bank. Name one suitable method and one way to make the payment.**
    Answer:

(i) UPI is a suitable electronic payment method.
(ii) The person can scan a QR code or enter the recipient's phone number.

13. **Why might a cheque be less convenient than an electronic payment for an urgent transfer?**
Answer:
(i) A cheque usually requires a physical visit or handling through a bank.
(ii) Electronic payments can transfer money more quickly.
14. **A caller asks a customer to reveal an OTP to "complete" a payment. What should the customer do, and why?**
Answer:
(i) The customer should not share the OTP.
(ii) An OTP can be used to authorise a transaction or verify identity.
15. **A message contains an unknown link and asks the recipient to install an app. What is the safer response?**
Answer:
(i) The recipient should avoid clicking the unknown link.
(ii) They should not enter banking details or install an unverified app.
16. **A person discovers that money has been stolen through a digital scam. What two steps should they take?**
Answer:
(i) They should report the fraud promptly through helpline 1930.
(ii) They can also use the National Cybercrime Reporting Portal.
17. **A farmer needs support for farming or rural infrastructure. Which institution from the chapter is relevant, and how does it help?**
Answer:
(i) NABARD is relevant to this need.
(ii) It supports rural development by funding banks that provide loans for farming and related activities.
18. **Why is the RBI important to people who use banks?**
Answer:
(i) The RBI supervises the Indian banking system and sets rules for it.
(ii) Its regulation supports the orderly functioning of banks.
19. **A company wants to raise money for expansion by offering investors part-ownership. What can it issue, and where are these traded?**
Answer:
(i) The company can issue shares to raise funds.
(ii) Shares are bought and sold on a stock exchange.
20. **A person buys shares in a company. What does this mean, and what could happen to the investment?**
Answer:
(i) The person becomes a part-owner of the company.
(ii) The investment may gain or lose value as share prices change.
21. **A company performs poorly and investors lose confidence. What may happen to its shares, and why?**
Answer:
(i) Fewer people may want to buy the company's shares.
(ii) Their price may fall as demand declines.
22. **Share prices across many companies rise at the same time. What is this called, and what does it indicate?**
Answer:

(i) It is called a stock market boom.
(ii) It indicates that share prices are rising broadly.

23. **Share prices across many companies fall at the same time. What is this called, and what could cause it?**
Answer:
(i) It is called a stock market crash.
(ii) It may be linked to economic shocks or other factors affecting investors.
24. **Why should a person understand that share prices can rise or fall before investing?**
Answer:
(i) Share prices change with company performance and other factors.
(ii) The person could gain money or incur a loss.
25. **A low-income family has difficulty accessing banking services. How can a no-minimum-balance account scheme help?**
Answer:
(i) It can make opening a bank account more accessible.
(ii) It can help the family use services such as deposits and direct transfers.
26. **A person living far from a bank wants to save through a nearby institution. Which option in the chapter may help?**
Answer:
(i) A post office may provide savings schemes.
(ii) Its wide network includes locations in remote areas.
27. **Why are records of deposits and withdrawals useful to an account holder?**
Answer:
(i) They show how much money entered and left the account.
(ii) They help the account holder track financial transactions.
28. **How can digital payments be convenient during a period when people need to avoid physical contact?**
Answer:
(i) UPI and other digital methods allow cashless payments.
(ii) Money can be transferred without handing over cash or a cheque.
29. **A business borrows money to buy raw materials and launch a product. How can the loan support the business?**
Answer:
(i) The loan provides funds for the business's needs.
(ii) The business can use those funds to prepare and sell its products.
30. **How do banks help money move between savers and businesses?**
Answer:
(i) Banks accept deposits from people who have savings.
(ii) They lend some of these funds to borrowers such as businesses.

8.9. Three-mark questions with Answers of LOTS Type: (30 Questions)

Three-Mark Descriptive Questions – LOTS:

1. **What is financial infrastructure?**
Answer:
(i) Financial infrastructure includes banks, payment systems, and stock markets.
(ii) It also includes other financial institutions.
(iii) It helps people, businesses, and governments manage money and make transactions.

2. **What are the main functions of a bank?**
   Answer:
   (i) A bank accepts deposits from people and businesses.
   (ii) It allows account holders to withdraw money.
   (iii) It lends money to borrowers as loans.
3. **What is a savings account?**
   Answer:
   (i) A savings account is meant for individuals who save regularly.
   (ii) It allows money to be deposited and withdrawn according to the bank's terms.
   (iii) It earns interest on savings.
4. **What is a current account?**
   Answer:
   (i) A current account is commonly used by businesses and traders.
   (ii) It supports frequent deposits and withdrawals.
   (iii) It generally does not earn interest.
5. **What is a fixed deposit account?**
   Answer:
   (i) A fixed deposit holds a one-time deposit for a set period.
   (ii) The account holder usually cannot withdraw the money freely during that period.
   (iii) The bank returns the original amount with interest at the end of the term.
6. **Explain the meaning of interest.**
   Answer:
   (i) Interest is an amount charged for borrowing money.
   (ii) It is also an amount earned by lending or depositing money.
   (iii) It is usually expressed as a percentage.
7. **What is compounding?**
   Answer:
   (i) Compounding means earning interest on the original deposit.
   (ii) It also includes earning interest on interest from earlier periods.
   (iii) It can help savings grow over time.
8. **What does a passbook show?**
   Answer:
   (i) A passbook records money deposited into an account.
   (ii) It records money withdrawn from the account.
   (iii) It helps account holders track their transactions.
9. **What are debit and credit entries?**
   Answer:
   (i) A debit entry records money taken out of an account.
   (ii) A credit entry records money received into an account.
   (iii) These entries help show the flow of money in an account.
10. **What is a bank loan?**
    Answer:
    (i) A bank loan is money borrowed for a specific purpose.
    (ii) People may borrow for a house, vehicle, or education.
    (iii) The borrower repays the loan amount with interest.
11. **How do banks earn income from deposits and loans?**
    Answer:
    (i) Banks pay interest on savings deposits.
    (ii) They charge interest on the loans they give.
    (iii) They generally charge borrowers a higher rate than they pay depositors.

12. **What was the aim of the Pradhan Mantri Jan Dhan Yojana?**
    Answer:
    (i) It was launched in 2014.
    (ii) It aimed to provide people access to a bank account.
    (iii) It especially focused on low-income earners.
13. **What financial services do post offices offer?**
    Answer:
    (i) Post offices offer savings schemes.
    (ii) These include National Savings Certificates and Kisan Vikas Patra accounts.
    (iii) They also offer Sukanya Samriddhi accounts.
14. **What is NABARD, and what does it support?**
    Answer:
    (i) NABARD is the National Bank for Agriculture and Rural Development.
    (ii) It supports rural development.
    (iii) It funds banks that provide loans for farming, village industries, and infrastructure.
15. **What are the functions of the Reserve Bank of India?**
    Answer:
    (i) The RBI supervises the Indian banking system.
    (ii) It maintains accounts of other banks and facilitates fund exchanges between them.
    (iii) It sets rules related to currency and benchmark interest rates.
16. **What is a cheque?**
    Answer:
    (i) A cheque is a paper instrument for paying someone from a bank account.
    (ii) It includes the payee's name and the amount.
    (iii) It must be signed by the account holder.
17. **How can a person withdraw cash using a debit card?**
    Answer:
    (i) The person inserts the debit card into an ATM.
    (ii) The person enters the amount to withdraw.
    (iii) The person enters the PIN and collects the cash.
18. **How is a debit card used at a Point of Sale machine?**
    Answer:
    (i) The card is swiped or inserted into the POS machine.
    (ii) The payment amount is entered.
    (iii) The customer enters a PIN to authorise payment.
19. **What is internet banking?**
    Answer:
    (i) Internet banking allows account holders to use a bank website or app.
    (ii) Users can check their balance and transaction history.
    (iii) They can also transfer money online.
20. **What is UPI?**
    Answer:
    (i) UPI is a digital payment system launched by NPCI in 2016.
    (ii) It enables quick transfers between bank accounts.
    (iii) Payments can be made using a QR code or a recipient's phone number.
21. **What is an OTP?**
    Answer:
    (i) OTP stands for One-Time Password.

(ii) It is a temporary code made of numbers or letters.
(iii) It is used to verify identity or authorise a transaction.

22. **What is a share?**
Answer:
(i) A share is a unit of ownership in a company.
(ii) A person who buys a share becomes a part-owner.
(iii) Owning more shares means having a larger share of ownership.
23. **What is a stock exchange?**
Answer:
(i) A stock exchange is a marketplace for financial securities.
(ii) Shares are bought and sold there.
(iii) The Bombay Stock Exchange was established in 1875.
24. **What is the difference between a stock market boom and a crash?**
Answer:
(i) A boom happens when share prices of many companies rise.
(ii) A crash happens when share prices of many companies fall.
(iii) Both describe changes in share prices across the market.
25. **Name three factors that can cause share prices to fluctuate.**
Answer:
(i) A company's performance can affect its share prices.
(ii) Government policy changes can influence prices.
(iii) Wars or economic shocks can also cause fluctuations.
26. **How can people stay safe when making digital payments?**
Answer:
(i) They should never share passwords, PINs, or OTPs with strangers.
(ii) They should avoid unknown links and videos received in messages.
(iii) They should not store sensitive banking details on devices.
27. **What should a person do after a digital payment fraud?**
Answer:
(i) The person should report the fraud promptly.
(ii) They can call helpline 1930.
(iii) They can also report it through the National Cybercrime Reporting Portal.
28. **How can UPI make payments convenient?**
Answer:
(i) It allows quick transfers between bank accounts.
(ii) It can use a QR code or phone number.
(iii) It lets users check balances and track transactions on a phone.
29. **What is the purpose of issuing shares for a company?**
Answer:
(i) Issuing shares helps a company raise funds.
(ii) The funds can support the company's operations.
(iii) They can also help the company expand its business.
30. **How does financial infrastructure support economic activity?**
Answer:
(i) It enables smooth transactions among people and businesses.
(ii) It promotes savings, credit, and investment.
(iii) These activities can contribute to economic growth and national prosperity.

8.10. Three-mark questions with Answers of HOTS Type: (30 Questions)

Three-Mark Descriptive Questions – HOTS:

1. **Navdeep is deciding whether to keep his monthly savings at home or deposit them in a bank. What three benefits might he gain by choosing the bank?**
   Answer:
   (i) The bank provides a safer place to keep his money.
   (ii) His savings account may earn interest.
   (iii) The bank record helps him track his money.
2. **Rima needs money to expand her bamboo-products business. How could a bank loan help, and what should she remember?**
   Answer:
   (i) The loan can provide money for business operations.
   (ii) She must repay the borrowed amount.
   (iii) She must also pay the interest charged by the bank.
3. **A student keeps savings in an account and leaves the interest there each year. Explain how compounding helps the money grow.**
   Answer:
   (i) The original deposit earns interest.
   (ii) Earlier interest remains in the account.
   (iii) Later interest is calculated on the larger balance.
4. **A person wants to make frequent business payments, while another wants to save regularly. Which accounts suit them, and why?**
   Answer:
   (i) A current account suits the business because it supports frequent transactions.
   (ii) A savings account suits the individual who saves regularly.
   (iii) The two accounts are designed for different banking needs.
5. **Why might a fixed deposit earn a higher rate than a savings account?**
   Answer:
   (i) Money in a fixed deposit is kept for a set period.
   (ii) The depositor usually has less flexibility to withdraw it.
   (iii) The bank may offer higher interest in return for keeping the money deposited.
6. **A bank pays depositors interest but charges borrowers a higher rate. Explain how this arrangement works.**
   Answer:
   (i) Depositors earn interest on money placed in the bank.
   (ii) Borrowers repay loans with interest.
   (iii) The difference between the rates contributes to the bank's income.
7. **Why should a bank keep some of its deposits as reserve money instead of lending every rupee?**
   Answer:
   (i) Customers may need to withdraw their money.
   (ii) The bank needs funds available for its operations.
   (iii) Lending all deposits could make it harder to meet those needs.
8. **A worker receives wages directly into a bank account. Explain two benefits and one wider effect of this arrangement.**
   Answer:
   (i) The worker can receive wages directly into the account.
   (ii) The payment can be recorded and tracked.
   (iii) Direct transfers can reduce middlemen and support timely payment.
9. **A family in a remote area has no nearby bank branch. How might a post office help them access financial services?**

Answer:
(i) Post offices provide savings schemes.
(ii) Their wide network reaches many remote locations.
(iii) This gives families a nearby option for saving.

10. **A farmer needs a loan for irrigation and a village business needs funds for growth. Which institution from the chapter supports such rural needs?**
Answer:
(i) NABARD supports rural development.
(ii) It funds banks that provide loans for farming.
(iii) It also supports village industries and infrastructure.
11. **Why is the RBI important to the banking system and its customers?**
Answer:
(i) The RBI supervises the Indian banking system.
(ii) It sets rules related to currency and benchmark interest rates.
(iii) Its role helps banks operate within a regulated system.
12. **A person wants to check an account balance and transfer money without visiting a bank. Which service can help, and what can it do?**
Answer:
(i) Internet banking can be used through a bank's website or app.
(ii) It allows the user to check balances and transaction history.
(iii) It also allows money transfers online.
13. **A shopper wants to pay quickly at a small store without cash. How can UPI help complete the transaction?**
Answer:
(i) The shopper can scan the store's QR code or use the recipient's phone number.
(ii) The shopper enters the amount and authorises the payment with a UPI PIN.
(iii) The money is transferred through the banking system to the store's account.
14. **A customer prefers to use a cheque for an urgent payment. What limitation should they consider?**
Answer:
(i) A cheque must be filled out with the correct payee and amount.
(ii) It usually requires physical handling through a bank.
(iii) The transfer may take longer than an electronic payment.
15. **A person receives a message asking for their bank PIN to prevent account closure. How should they respond?**
Answer:
(i) They should not share the PIN.
(ii) They should avoid clicking any unknown link in the message.
(iii) They should contact their bank through a trusted channel if concerned.
16. **Why is it unsafe to store passwords and debit-card PINs on a phone?**
Answer:
(i) Someone who gains access to the phone may find the details.
(ii) The details could be misused to access an account.
(iii) Keeping them off the device reduces the risk of financial fraud.
17. **A person discovers a digital payment scam. What should they do, and why should they act quickly?**
Answer:
(i) They should report it through helpline 1930 or the National Cybercrime Reporting Portal.

(ii) They should inform their bank through an official contact channel.
(iii) Prompt reporting may help authorities respond to the fraud.

18. **A business wants to raise funds without taking a bank loan. How can issuing shares help?**
Answer:
(i) The company can offer shares to investors.
(ii) Each share represents part-ownership in the company.
(iii) The money raised can support operations or expansion.
19. **A person buys shares because a company is doing well. What should the person remember about this investment?**
Answer:
(i) Good company performance may make shares more valuable.
(ii) Share prices can still change for many reasons.
(iii) The investment may result in a gain or a loss.
20. **A company faces a workers' strike and reports a large loss. How could this affect its shares?**
Answer:
(i) Investors may become less confident in the company.
(ii) Fewer people may want to buy its shares.
(iii) The share price may fall.
21. **Many companies' share prices fall at the same time. What may happen in the stock market, and what might contribute to it?**
Answer:
(i) The market may experience a crash.
(ii) Economic shocks or political instability may affect share prices.
(iii) Changes in government policies or tax rules may also influence the market.
22. **How can the Jan Dhan Yojana improve access to banking for low-income earners?**
Answer:
(i) It aimed to provide access to bank accounts without a minimum-balance requirement or fees.
(ii) Account holders can receive payments such as wages or scholarships directly.
(iii) Wider account access can help more people use formal banking services.
23. **Why are direct transfers of wages or scholarships useful to recipients?**
Answer:
(i) Money goes directly into the recipient's bank account.
(ii) Direct transfers can reduce the role of middlemen.
(iii) They can help payments reach recipients on time.
24. **A student sees a bank passbook entry marked "debit." What can the student infer?**
Answer:
(i) Money has been taken out of the account.
(ii) The passbook records the transaction.
(iii) The account holder can check the entry to understand the withdrawal.
25. **A student sees an entry marked "credit" after receiving a scholarship. What does the entry show?**
Answer:
(i) Money has entered the student's account.
(ii) The scholarship payment has been recorded.
(iii) The student can check the passbook or transaction history for details.

26. **Why might a debit card be more useful than a cheque for payment at a retail store?**
    Answer:
    (i) A debit card can be used directly at a POS machine.
    (ii) The payment is deducted from the customer's account.
    (iii) A cheque requires additional physical handling through a bank.
27. **How do payment systems help the flow of money in an economy?**
    Answer:
    (i) They allow people to transfer money to one another.
    (ii) They help businesses receive payments from customers.
    (iii) They support transactions among people, businesses, and organisations.
28. **Why can financial infrastructure contribute to a nation's prosperity?**
    Answer:
    (i) Banks encourage savings and provide credit.
    (ii) Payment systems make transactions easier.
    (iii) Investment and credit can support economic activity.
29. **A customer wants to make digital payments conveniently but safely. What three practices should they follow?**
    Answer:
    (i) Use trusted banking or payment apps.
    (ii) Never share OTPs, PINs, or passwords.
    (iii) Avoid unknown links and report suspected fraud promptly.
30. **How are banks, depositors, and borrowers connected in the financial system?**
    Answer:
    (i) Depositors place their savings in banks.
    (ii) Banks lend some of these funds to borrowers.
    (iii) Borrowers repay the loans with interest according to the agreed terms.

8.11 Five-mark questions with Answers of LOTS Type: (20 Questions)

Five-Mark Descriptive Questions – LOTS:

1. **What is financial infrastructure, and what does it include?**
    Answer:
    (i) Financial infrastructure is a network that helps manage money.
    (ii) It includes banks.
    (iii) It includes payment systems.
    (iv) It includes stock markets.
    (v) It also includes other financial institutions.
2. **Describe the main services provided by banks.**
    Answer:
    (i) Banks accept deposits.
    (ii) They keep deposited money safe.
    (iii) They allow customers to withdraw money.
    (iv) They provide loans to borrowers.
    (v) They help people and businesses make payments.
3. **Describe the three types of bank accounts discussed in the chapter.**
    Answer:
    (i) A savings account is for individuals who save regularly.
    (ii) Savings accounts earn interest according to the bank's terms.
    (iii) A current account is commonly used by businesses and traders.

(iv) A fixed deposit holds a one-time deposit for a set period.
(v) The bank returns a fixed deposit with interest at the end of its term.

4. **Explain the meaning of interest.**
Answer:
(i) Interest is charged when someone borrows money.
(ii) Interest can be earned by depositing or lending money.
(iii) Banks pay interest to depositors on some accounts.
(iv) Banks charge interest to borrowers on loans.
(v) Interest is usually expressed as a percentage.

5. **Describe compounding using the chapter's example of savings.**
Answer:
(i) A person deposits ₹1,000 in a bank.
(ii) At 6% interest, the first year's interest is ₹60.
(iii) The balance after the first year becomes ₹1,060.
(iv) In the second year, interest is calculated on ₹1,060.
(v) Earning interest on earlier interest is called compounding.

6. **What is a passbook, and what information does it record?**
Answer:
(i) A passbook is a record provided by a bank.
(ii) It records deposits made into an account.
(iii) It records withdrawals from an account.
(iv) Money received is shown as a credit.
(v) Money taken out is shown as a debit.

7. **What is a bank loan, and why might people or businesses take one?**
Answer:
(i) A loan is money borrowed from a bank or financial institution.
(ii) A person may borrow to buy a house or vehicle.
(iii) A person may borrow to fund education.
(iv) A business may borrow to buy machinery or raw materials.
(v) The borrower repays the loan amount with interest.

8. **How do banks earn income through deposits and loans?**
Answer:
(i) People deposit money in banks.
(ii) Banks pay interest on some deposits.
(iii) Banks lend money to borrowers.
(iv) Borrowers repay loans with interest.
(v) Banks generally charge a higher rate on loans than they pay on deposits.

9. **Write five facts about the Pradhan Mantri Jan Dhan Yojana.**
Answer:
(i) The scheme was launched in 2014.
(ii) It aimed to expand access to bank accounts.
(iii) It especially focused on low-income earners.
(iv) It allowed accounts without a minimum-balance requirement or fees.
(v) Direct transfers can send wages or scholarships into beneficiaries' accounts.

10. **Describe the financial services offered by post offices.**
Answer:
(i) Post offices offer financial services in India.
(ii) They provide savings schemes.
(iii) They offer National Savings Certificates.

(iv) They offer Kisan Vikas Patra accounts.
(v) They also offer Sukanya Samriddhi accounts.

11. **What is the role of NABARD?**
Answer:
(i) NABARD is the National Bank for Agriculture and Rural Development.
(ii) It supports rural development.
(iii) It funds banks that give farming loans.
(iv) It supports loans for village industries.
(v) It also supports infrastructure such as roads and irrigation.
12. **Describe the role of the Reserve Bank of India.**
Answer:
(i) The RBI is India's central bank.
(ii) It supervises the Indian banking system.
(iii) It maintains accounts of other banks.
(iv) It facilitates the exchange of funds between banks.
(v) It sets rules related to currency and benchmark interest rates.
13. **What is a cheque, and how does it transfer money?**
Answer:
(i) A cheque is a paper instrument for paying someone from a bank account.
(ii) The payer writes the recipient's name on it.
(iii) The amount is written in words and numbers.
(iv) The payer signs the cheque.
(v) The recipient deposits it so that money can move to their account.
14. **Describe how a person withdraws cash from an ATM using a debit card.**
Answer:
(i) The customer inserts the debit card into the ATM.
(ii) The customer enters the amount to be withdrawn.
(iii) The customer enters the PIN.
(iv) The bank verifies and processes the request.
(v) The customer collects the cash.
15. **What are Point of Sale machines and how are they used?**
Answer:
(i) POS machines are used at retail stores.
(ii) A customer can use a debit card for payment.
(iii) The card is swiped or inserted into the machine.
(iv) The payment amount is entered.
(v) The customer enters a PIN to authorise the payment.
16. **What is internet banking?**
Answer:
(i) Internet banking is also called online banking.
(ii) It can be accessed through a bank's website or mobile application.
(iii) Customers can check account balances.
(iv) They can view transaction history.
(v) They can transfer money online.
17. **Describe how UPI is used to make a payment.**
Answer:
(i) A user opens a UPI-based payment application.
(ii) The user scans the recipient's QR code or enters a phone number.
(iii) The user enters the amount to be paid.

(iv) The user enters a UPI PIN to authorise the transaction.
(v) The payment is transferred to the recipient's bank account.

18. **What is a share and how does a stock exchange work?**
Answer:
(i) A share is a unit of ownership in a company.
(ii) A person who buys shares becomes a part-owner of the company.
(iii) Companies issue shares to raise funds.
(iv) A stock exchange is a marketplace for buying and selling shares.
(v) The Bombay Stock Exchange was established in 1875.
19. **Describe the meaning of a stock market boom and crash.**
Answer:
(i) Share prices can rise and fall.
(ii) A rise in the prices of many companies' shares is called a boom.
(iii) A fall in the prices of many companies' shares is called a crash.
(iv) Company performance can affect share prices.
(v) Government policies and economic shocks can also cause price changes.
20. **List five rules for staying safe during digital payments.**
Answer:
(i) Do not share personal information with strangers.
(ii) Never share an OTP.
(iii) Do not share passwords or debit-card PINs.
(iv) Avoid clicking unknown links or videos received through messages.
(v) Report fraud through helpline 1930 or the National Cybercrime Reporting Portal.

8.12 Five-mark questions with Answers of HOTS Type: (20 Questions)

Five-Mark Descriptive Questions – HOTS:

1. **Navdeep is deciding whether to keep his monthly savings at home or deposit them in a bank. Explain why the bank may be a better choice.**
Answer:
(i) A bank provides a safer place to keep money than an unsecured place at home.
(ii) A savings account can earn interest.
(iii) The account record helps him track deposits and withdrawals.
(iv) Money in a bank account can be used for digital payments.
(v) The bank may lend some deposits to people or businesses that need funds.
2. **Rima wants to expand her bamboo-products business and is considering a bank loan. What should she understand before borrowing?**
Answer:
(i) A loan can provide money for business needs such as machinery or raw materials.
(ii) She must repay the amount borrowed.
(iii) She must also pay the interest charged by the bank.
(iv) She should understand the repayment period and loan terms.
(v) She should consider whether the business can manage the repayments.
3. **Explain how compounding can help a person who saves regularly over a long period.**
Answer:
(i) A deposit earns interest over time.
(ii) If the interest remains in the account, it becomes part of the balance.
(iii) Later interest is earned on the larger balance.

(iv) This process is called compounding.
(v) It can make savings grow more than interest on the original amount alone.

4. **A business owner makes many payments each day, while a student saves a small amount every month. Which bank accounts suit them, and why?**
   Answer:
   (i) A current account suits the business owner.
   (ii) It supports frequent deposits and withdrawals.
   (iii) A savings account suits the student.
   (iv) It is meant for individuals who save regularly.
   (v) The account types match their different financial needs.
5. **A person has money they will not need for several years. Explain why a fixed deposit may be considered and what should be checked.**
   Answer:
   (i) A fixed deposit keeps a one-time amount for a set period.
   (ii) It may offer a higher interest rate than a savings account.
   (iii) The money may not be freely available during the fixed period.
   (iv) The person should check the term and conditions before depositing.
   (v) The bank returns the original amount with interest at the end of the term.
6. **How do banks connect people who save money with people or businesses that need loans?**
   Answer:
   (i) People deposit surplus money in bank accounts.
   (ii) Banks keep records of these deposits.
   (iii) Banks lend some of the money to borrowers for specific purposes.
   (iv) Borrowers repay the loans with interest.
   (v) This process helps money flow through the economy.
7. **Why should banks not lend all the money deposited by their customers?**
   Answer:
   (i) Customers may need to withdraw their money.
   (ii) Banks need to maintain reserve funds.
   (iii) Reserves help banks manage withdrawals and other requirements.
   (iv) Lending every deposit could make it difficult to meet customer needs.
   (v) Banks balance lending with keeping funds available.
8. **A worker receives wages directly in a bank account. Explain the advantages of this method.**
   Answer:
   (i) The worker receives the payment directly.
   (ii) The transaction is recorded in the account.
   (iii) The worker can check the payment through a passbook or transaction history.
   (iv) Direct transfers can reduce the role of middlemen.
   (v) They can help wages reach workers on time.
9. **A person must choose between paying by cheque and using UPI for an urgent transfer. Compare the two methods.**
   Answer:
   (i) A cheque is a paper instrument linked to a bank account.
   (ii) The cheque must be physically deposited or handled through a bank.
   (iii) UPI allows a digital transfer using a QR code or phone number.
   (iv) UPI transactions are generally faster than cheque payments.
   (v) Both methods require accurate payment details.

10. **A person receives a phone call asking for an OTP to prevent their account from being blocked. How should they respond and why?**
    Answer:
    (i) They should not share the OTP.
    (ii) They should not share passwords, PINs, or account details.
    (iii) They should avoid clicking any link sent by the caller.
    (iv) They should contact the bank through a trusted channel.
    (v) They should report suspected fraud through the official reporting options.
11. **A student wants to use UPI for a purchase. Explain the main steps and one safety rule.**
    Answer:
    (i) The student opens a trusted UPI payment application.
    (ii) The student scans the seller's QR code or enters the recipient's phone number.
    (iii) The student enters the correct payment amount.
    (iv) The student authorises the payment using the UPI PIN.
    (v) The student should never share the PIN with anyone.
12. **How can the Jan Dhan Yojana improve financial access for low-income families?**
    Answer:
    (i) It aims to provide access to bank accounts.
    (ii) Accounts can be opened without a minimum balance requirement or fees, as described in the chapter.
    (iii) Families can receive wages or scholarships directly into accounts.
    (iv) Account records help users track transactions.
    (v) Wider access allows more people to use formal banking services.
13. **A farmer needs funds for irrigation and farming activities. Explain how financial institutions can support the farmer.**
    Answer:
    (i) The farmer may seek a loan through a bank.
    (ii) NABARD supports rural development by funding banks.
    (iii) Those banks can provide loans for farming and irrigation.
    (iv) The loan can help the farmer carry out agricultural activities.
    (v) The farmer must repay the loan with interest according to its terms.
14. **Why does India need the RBI as a central bank?**
    Answer:
    (i) The RBI supervises the banking system.
    (ii) It sets rules that banks are expected to follow.
    (iii) It regulates matters related to printing and distributing currency.
    (iv) It sets benchmark interest rates.
    (v) It helps maintain an organised financial system.
15. **A company wants money to expand but does not want to borrow from a bank. Explain how issuing shares can help and what buyers should know.**
    Answer:
    (i) The company can issue shares to raise funds.
    (ii) Each share represents part-ownership in the company.
    (iii) Investors who buy shares become part-owners.
    (iv) The share price can rise or fall.
    (v) Investors may gain or lose money as prices change.
16. **A company's product performs poorly and it reports a major loss. Explain how this could affect its share price.**
    Answer:

(i) Investors may lose confidence in the company.
(ii) Fewer people may want to buy its shares.
(iii) Lower demand may cause the share price to fall.
(iv) The company's performance is one factor affecting share prices.
(v) Other factors, such as policy changes or economic shocks, may also affect prices.

17. **A student sees reports that share prices across many companies have fallen. What might this mean for the stock market and investors?**
Answer:
(i) A broad fall in share prices may be called a stock market crash.
(ii) The value of investors' shares may decrease.
(iii) Investors may experience financial losses.
(iv) Economic shocks or policy changes can contribute to price movements.
(v) Share prices can change, so investment values are not guaranteed.
18. **Explain how digital payments can be convenient while still requiring caution.**
Answer:
(i) Digital payments can transfer money quickly.
(ii) UPI can use QR codes or phone numbers.
(iii) Users can check balances and transactions on their phones.
(iv) Fraudsters may try to obtain OTPs, passwords, or account details.
(v) Users should protect their information and report suspected fraud.
19. **How do banks, payment systems, and stock markets contribute in different ways to financial infrastructure?**
Answer:
(i) Banks accept deposits and provide loans.
(ii) Payment systems transfer money between people and organisations.
(iii) Stock markets allow shares to be bought and sold.
(iv) These services support households and businesses.
(v) Together, they help money flow through the economy.
20. **The chapter describes financial infrastructure as supporting national prosperity. Explain how this happens.**
Answer:
(i) Banks encourage people to save money.
(ii) Loans provide credit for households and businesses.
(iii) Payment systems make transactions easier.
(iv) Stock markets help companies raise investment funds.
(v) These activities support economic growth and prosperity.

8.13 Five-mark questions with Answers of Applied Type: (20 Questions)

Five-Mark Descriptive Questions – Applied Type:

1. **Navdeep receives a salary every month and wants to save part of it regularly. Suggest five steps he can take using banking services.**
Answer:
(i) He can open a savings account.
(ii) He can deposit part of his salary each month.
(iii) He can keep track of deposits and withdrawals in his passbook or transaction history.
(iv) He can avoid withdrawing money that he intends to save.
(v) He can allow interest to remain in the account so savings may grow through compounding.

2. **Rima needs money to buy machinery for her bamboo-products business. Explain how she can use a bank loan responsibly.**
   Answer:
   (i) She can approach a bank to ask about a business loan.
   (ii) She should explain how the machinery will support her business.
   (iii) She should understand the loan amount, interest, and repayment period.
   (iv) She should borrow only what she needs and can repay.
   (v) She must repay the loan and interest according to the agreed terms.
3. **A small shop makes many daily payments and receives payments from customers. Which banking services could help the shop?**
   Answer:
   (i) The shop can use a current account for frequent transactions.
   (ii) It can accept debit-card payments through a POS machine.
   (iii) It can receive digital payments through UPI.
   (iv) It can use internet banking to check transactions and transfer money.
   (v) It should maintain records of payments received and made.
4. **A family wants to save money for a goal several years away. Describe five points they should consider before choosing an account.**
   Answer:
   (i) They should decide when they will need the money.
   (ii) They can compare a savings account with a fixed deposit.
   (iii) They should check the interest rate offered by the bank.
   (iv) They should check whether withdrawals are allowed during the saving period.
   (v) They should understand all account terms before depositing money.
5. **A customer wants to withdraw cash from an ATM using a debit card. Write the steps and one important precaution.**
   Answer:
   (i) Insert the debit card into the ATM.
   (ii) Select the withdrawal option and enter the amount.
   (iii) Enter the PIN privately.
   (iv) Collect the cash and card before leaving.
   (v) Never tell the PIN to anyone or allow others to see it.
6. **A customer wants to pay a local vegetable seller using UPI. Describe the steps to make the payment safely.**
   Answer:
   (i) Open a trusted UPI payment application.
   (ii) Scan the seller's QR code or enter the correct phone number.
   (iii) Check the recipient's details and enter the amount.
   (iv) Enter the UPI PIN to authorise the payment.
   (v) Check the transaction confirmation and never share the PIN.
7. **A person receives a suspicious message asking them to click a link and provide bank details. What should they do?**
   Answer:
   (i) Avoid clicking the unknown link.
   (ii) Do not share account details, PINs, passwords, or OTPs.
   (iii) Do not download an app sent by an unknown person.
   (iv) Contact the bank through a trusted channel if concerned.
   (v) Report suspected fraud through helpline 1930 or the National Cybercrime Reporting Portal.

8. **A worker has been paid, but the amount does not appear in the bank account. Explain five steps the worker can take.**
   Answer:
   (i) Check the passbook or account transaction history.
   (ii) Confirm the expected payment date and amount with the employer.
   (iii) Check that the correct account details were used.
   (iv) Contact the bank or relevant payment department for assistance.
   (v) Keep a record of the communication and any reference numbers.
9. **A student receives a scholarship in a bank account. How can the student and family keep track of the money?**
   Answer:
   (i) Check the account balance after the expected payment.
   (ii) Review the passbook or transaction history.
   (iii) Identify the scholarship as a credit entry.
   (iv) Keep records of any withdrawals or payments.
   (v) Protect the account details, PIN, and OTP.
10. **A farmer in a village needs a loan to improve irrigation. Explain how financial institutions could support the farmer.**
    Answer:
    (i) The farmer can approach a bank and explain the purpose of the loan.
    (ii) The bank can consider a loan for farming needs.
    (iii) NABARD supports rural development by funding banks that provide farming loans.
    (iv) The farmer should understand the interest and repayment terms.
    (v) The farmer should keep records of the loan and repayments.
11. **A family wants to use digital payments but is worried about fraud. Suggest five safety practices.**
    Answer:
    (i) Use trusted banking and payment applications.
    (ii) Never share OTPs, PINs, or passwords with strangers.
    (iii) Avoid clicking unknown links in messages.
    (iv) Do not store sensitive banking details on a device.
    (v) Report suspected fraud promptly through the official channels.
12. **A person wants to transfer money to a friend who lives in another town. Compare two payment methods they could use.**
    Answer:
    (i) A cheque can be written with the recipient's name and payment amount.
    (ii) The recipient can deposit the cheque into their bank account.
    (iii) UPI can transfer money electronically using a QR code or phone number.
    (iv) Electronic payments are generally faster than cheque processing.
    (v) The sender should check the recipient and amount before authorising either payment.
13. **A business wants to raise funds to expand its operations without taking a bank loan. Explain how issuing shares could help.**
    Answer:
    (i) The business can issue shares to investors.
    (ii) Each share represents part-ownership in the company.
    (iii) Investors provide money by buying the shares.
    (iv) The company can use the funds for its operations or expansion.
    (v) The share price may rise or fall, so investors may gain or lose.

14. **A student is learning about the stock market and wants to understand why share prices change. List five factors to consider.**
Answer:
(i) A company's performance can affect its share price.
(ii) A poor product may reduce interest in the company's shares.
(iii) A workers' strike may affect investor confidence.
(iv) Government policy or tax changes can influence share prices.
(v) Wars or other economic shocks can also affect the market.
15. **A person notices a "debit" entry they do not recognise in their passbook. What actions should they take?**
Answer:
(i) Check the date and amount of the transaction.
(ii) Compare it with receipts or recent payments.
(iii) Contact the bank through a trusted channel.
(iv) Follow the bank's instructions for reporting the transaction.
(v) Do not share the PIN, OTP, or password with anyone who contacts them.
16. **A rural family does not have access to a nearby bank branch. What options from the chapter may help them access financial services?**
Answer:
(i) They can check whether a nearby post office offers savings services.
(ii) They can ask about schemes such as National Savings Certificates.
(iii) They can explore bank-account access through financial inclusion schemes.
(iv) They can use digital banking if they have safe internet access.
(v) They should seek information from an authorised institution or official source.
17. **A person wants to understand whether their bank has processed a payment. How can they use account records?**
Answer:
(i) They can check their passbook or online transaction history.
(ii) A debit entry shows money leaving their account.
(iii) A credit entry shows money entering their account.
(iv) They can compare the entry with the payment receipt.
(v) They can contact the bank if the record is unclear.
18. **A family is deciding whether to save at home or in a bank. Give five points they should consider.**
Answer:
(i) Money kept at home may be less secure.
(ii) A bank account provides a formal record of money.
(iii) Some bank accounts earn interest.
(iv) Bank accounts can support digital payments and transfers.
(v) The family should choose an account that matches its saving needs and terms.
19. **A customer wants to make a payment at a store without using cash. Describe two options and the key step for each.**
Answer:
(i) The customer can use a debit card at a POS machine and enter the PIN.
(ii) The customer can use UPI by scanning a QR code and entering the UPI PIN.
(iii) Both methods transfer money electronically.
(iv) The customer should check the payment amount before authorising it.
(v) The customer should keep the PIN private.
20. **A community group is preparing a financial safety poster for school. List five important messages to include.**

Answer:
(i) Never share an OTP with anyone.
(ii) Keep passwords and debit-card PINs private.
(iii) Avoid clicking unknown links or downloading suspicious apps.
(iv) Do not store sensitive banking details on a device.
(v) Report fraud through helpline 1930 or the National Cybercrime Reporting Portal.

8.14 Multiple Choice Questions with answers for Olympiad type Competitive Exams:

Olympiad-Style Multiple Choice Questions:

1. **Which group best describes financial infrastructure?**
   A. Banks, payment systems, stock markets, and financial institutions
   B. Roads, bridges, railways, and airports
   C. Schools, hospitals, parks, and libraries
   D. Farms, factories, shops, and homes
   Answer: A. Banks, payment systems, stock markets, and financial institutions
2. **What is a deposit?**
   A. Money borrowed from a bank
   B. Money placed in a bank account
   C. Interest paid on a loan
   D. A share in a company
   Answer: B. Money placed in a bank account
3. **Which account is most suitable for an individual who saves regularly?**
   A. Current account
   B. Savings account
   C. Fixed deposit account only
   D. Stock account
   Answer: B. Savings account
4. **Which account is commonly used by businesses that make frequent payments?**
   A. Current account
   B. Fixed deposit account
   C. Savings certificate
   D. Loan account
   Answer: A. Current account
5. **A person deposits a sum once and keeps it in the bank for a fixed period. Which account is most suitable?**
   A. Current account
   B. Fixed deposit account
   C. Passbook account
   D. Payment account
   Answer: B. Fixed deposit account
6. **What is interest?**
   A. A record of account transactions
   B. The amount charged for borrowing or earned by lending money
   C. A type of bank card
   D. A place to trade shares
   Answer: B. The amount charged for borrowing or earned by lending money
7. **What does compounding mean?**
   A. Earning interest only on the original amount
   B. Earning interest on the original amount and earlier interest

C. Paying the same loan twice
D. Moving money between two banks
Answer: B. Earning interest on the original amount and earlier interest

8. **A ₹1,000 deposit earns 6% interest in one year. How much interest is earned in the first year?**
A. ₹6
B. ₹60
C. ₹106
D. ₹1,060
Answer: B. ₹60

9. **At 6% annual interest, what is the balance on a ₹1,000 deposit after one year, if no money is withdrawn?**
A. ₹1,006
B. ₹1,060
C. ₹1,600
D. ₹1,120
Answer: B. ₹1,060

10. **Which document records deposits and withdrawals in a bank account?**
A. Share certificate
B. Passbook
C. Cheque book
D. Debit card
Answer: B. Passbook

11. **In a bank account, a debit entry usually means:**
A. Money entered the account
B. Money left the account
C. Interest was earned
D. A loan was approved
Answer: B. Money left the account

12. **In a bank account, a credit entry usually means:**
A. Money entered the account
B. Money was withdrawn
C. A PIN was changed
D. A cheque was cancelled
Answer: A. Money entered the account

13. **What must a borrower generally repay on a bank loan?**
A. Only the interest
B. The original amount and interest
C. Only the original amount
D. Nothing if the money was used for business
Answer: B. The original amount and interest

14. **How do banks generally earn income from deposits and loans?**
A. They pay higher interest on deposits than they charge on loans.
B. They charge a higher interest rate on loans than they pay on deposits.
C. They lend every deposit without keeping reserves.
D. They earn money only by selling debit cards.
Answer: B. They charge a higher interest rate on loans than they pay on deposits.

15. **Why do banks keep reserve money?**
A. To avoid recording transactions

B. To meet withdrawals and other needs
C. To stop all lending
D. To buy shares for every customer
Answer: B. To meet withdrawals and other needs

16. **When was the Pradhan Mantri Jan Dhan Yojana launched?**
A. 1991
B. 2000
C. 2014
D. 2020
Answer: C. 2014

17. **Which institution supervises the Indian banking system?**
A. NABARD
B. RBI
C. BSE
D. NPCI
Answer: B. RBI

18. **When was the Reserve Bank of India established?**
A. 1875
B. 1935
C. 1949
D. 2016
Answer: B. 1935

19. **Which institution supports rural development and helps fund banks that provide farming loans?**
A. RBI
B. BSE
C. NABARD
D. NPCI
Answer: C. NABARD

20. **Which financial services are offered by post offices?**
A. Savings schemes such as NSC and Kisan Vikas Patra
B. Only stock trading
C. Only foreign currency exchange
D. Only housing loans
Answer: A. Savings schemes such as NSC and Kisan Vikas Patra

21. **What is a cheque?**
A. A digital code for an ATM
B. A paper instrument used to pay someone from a bank account
C. A type of stock exchange
D. A fixed deposit receipt
Answer: B. A paper instrument used to pay someone from a bank account

22. **Which information is needed when writing a cheque?**
A. Recipient's name, amount, and signature
B. Recipient's PIN and OTP
C. ATM number and password
D. Stock price and company name only
Answer: A. Recipient's name, amount, and signature

23. **What is an ATM mainly used for?**
A. Buying shares
B. Withdrawing cash using a debit card

C. Applying for a loan
D. Printing currency
Answer: B. Withdrawing cash using a debit card

24. **What does PIN stand for?**
A. Personal Identification Number
B. Payment Interest Note
C. Private Internet Network
D. Permanent Identification Name
Answer: A. Personal Identification Number

25. **Where is a Point of Sale machine commonly used?**
A. At retail stores for card payments
B. At stock exchanges to issue shares
C. At post offices to print currency
D. At homes to update passbooks
Answer: A. At retail stores for card payments

26. **What can a customer do through internet banking?**
A. Check balances and transfer money online
B. Print currency
C. Set national interest rates
D. Issue shares on behalf of a company
Answer: A. Check balances and transfer money online

27. **Which organisation launched UPI in 2016?**
A. Reserve Bank of India
B. National Payments Corporation of India
C. Bombay Stock Exchange
D. NABARD
Answer: B. National Payments Corporation of India

28. **Which information can be used to make a UPI payment?**
A. A QR code or the recipient's phone number
B. Only a cheque number
C. Only the recipient's home address
D. A stock certificate
Answer: A. A QR code or the recipient's phone number

29. **What is required to authorise a UPI transaction?**
A. The recipient's ATM card
B. The payer's UPI PIN
C. A stock exchange certificate
D. A passbook signature
Answer: B. The payer's UPI PIN

30. **What does OTP stand for?**
A. One-Time Password
B. Online Transfer Payment
C. Official Transaction Passbook
D. Open Trade Platform
Answer: A. One-Time Password

31. **A caller asks for a customer's OTP. What is the safest response?**
A. Share it if the caller knows the customer's name
B. Share it only after clicking a link
C. Never share it with the caller

D. Send it to the caller after making a small payment
Answer: C. Never share it with the caller

32. **Which action is safest when a message contains an unknown banking link?**
A. Click it immediately
B. Forward it to all contacts
C. Avoid clicking it
D. Enter the ATM PIN on the page
Answer: C. Avoid clicking it

33. **Which number does the chapter give for reporting financial fraud?**
A. 100
B. 101
C. 1930
D. 1947
Answer: C. 1930

34. **What is a share?**
A. A unit of ownership in a company
B. A loan repayment slip
C. A type of bank account
D. A record of ATM withdrawals
Answer: A. A unit of ownership in a company

35. **Why might a company issue shares?**
A. To raise funds for its operations
B. To reduce the number of customers
C. To prevent all price changes
D. To make the company a bank
Answer: A. To raise funds for its operations

36. **Where are shares bought and sold?**
A. At a post office only
B. At a stock exchange
C. At an ATM
D. Through a passbook
Answer: B. At a stock exchange

37. **When was the Bombay Stock Exchange established?**
A. 1853
B. 1875
C. 1935
D. 2016
Answer: B. 1875

38. **What is a stock market boom?**
A. A rise in share prices of many companies
B. A fall in share prices of many companies
C. A rise in bank withdrawals
D. A decline in online payments
Answer: A. A rise in share prices of many companies

39. **Which factor can cause a company's share price to fall?**
A. A major company loss
B. A customer opening a savings account
C. A person checking a passbook
D. A debit-card payment at a shop
Answer: A. A major company loss

40. **Which statement best describes the role of financial infrastructure in the economy?**
A. It supports savings, credit, investment, and the flow of money.
B. It replaces all physical infrastructure.
C. It prevents people from making payments.
D. It serves only stock market investors.
Answer: A. It supports savings, credit, investment, and the flow of money.

8.15 Best Practices Opportunity List from the Chapter: (12 Ideas)

Best Practices for Teaching "Banks and the Magic of Finance":

(1) **Begin with familiar examples.** Discuss saving pocket money, receiving a scholarship, or paying for a purchase to introduce banking.
(2) **Teach key terms with simple examples.** Clarify deposit, withdrawal, debit, credit, loan, interest, compounding, share, and payment system.
(3) **Compare account types in a chart.** Show who might use savings, current, and fixed deposit accounts and how they differ.
(4) **Use a simple interest example.** Demonstrate how interest is calculated on a deposit, then explain how compounding adds earlier interest to the balance.
(5) **Explain the roles of banks and the RBI separately.** Emphasise that banks serve customers, while the RBI supervises the banking system.
(6) **Use a payment-method comparison.** Compare cash, cheques, debit cards, internet banking, and UPI by how each transfers money.
(7) **Practise reading a sample passbook.** Use fictional entries to identify deposits, withdrawals, credits, and debits.
(8) **Teach digital safety as part of payment lessons.** Practise recognising suspicious messages and reinforce that PINs, passwords, and OTPs must never be shared.
(9) **Use fictional scenarios for loans and shares.** Ask students to identify repayment obligations, interest, ownership, and the possibility of gains or losses.
(10) **Connect financial institutions to people's needs.** Use examples of farmers, workers, students, traders, and businesses to show how banking supports them.
(11) **Encourage questions and careful comparison.** Have students compare services based on their purpose and terms rather than assuming one account or payment method fits everyone.
(12) **Assess understanding with short case questions.** Ask students to choose an account or payment method for a fictional situation and explain their choice.

8.16 Innovations Opportunity List from the Chapter: (10 Ideas)

Innovations in Teaching–Learning:

(1) **Classroom bank simulation:** Create a mock bank with fictional customers, deposits, withdrawals, and loans to show how money moves.
(2) **"Choose the account" challenge:** Give students scenarios—regular saving, frequent business payments, or saving for a fixed period—and ask them to select a suitable account.
(3) **Compounding chessboard activity:** Use the king-and-sage rice story to show how a quantity doubles and grows rapidly over time.
(4) **Fictional passbook investigation:** Give groups sample transaction records and ask them to identify deposits, withdrawals, credits, and debits.
(5) **Payment-method role-play:** Students act out a cash, cheque, debit-card, internet-banking, or UPI payment using imaginary money and details.

(6) **UPI transaction flow diagram:** Students map a fictional QR-code payment from payer to payer's bank, payment system, and receiver's bank.
(7) **"Spot the scam" card game:** Students sort fictional messages into safe or suspicious examples and explain their choices.
(8) **Financial safety poster or comic:** Students create a poster or comic showing how to protect PINs, passwords, and OTPs and what to do after suspected fraud.
(9) **Simple interest and compounding calculator:** Students use a spreadsheet or classroom table to compare a deposit's growth over several years.
(10) **Stock-market classroom game:** Track fictional company shares with changing prices so students can observe booms, crashes, gains, and losses without using real money.
(11) **Money-flow role-play:** Students represent depositors, banks, borrowers, businesses, and customers to demonstrate how deposits can support loans and economic activity.
(12) **Financial institution matching map:** Students connect fictional needs—such as farming, rural development, or savings—to banks, post offices, NABARD, or the RBI.
(13) **Digital banking storyboard:** Students draw the steps a fictional person follows to check a balance, transfer money, or report a scam safely.
(14) **"Design a financial inclusion plan" project:** Groups propose how a village could improve access to accounts, post-office savings, digital payments, and financial safety information.

8.17: Practicing Questions/Question Bank:

Sample Question Bank:

A. Fill in the Blanks:

1. Money placed in a bank account is called a _____.

Answer: Deposit

2. Earning interest on earlier interest is called _____.

Answer: Compounding

3. The Reserve Bank of India supervises the Indian _____ system.

Answer: Banking

B. One-Mark Descriptive Questions:

1. **What is a loan?**
   Answer: A loan is money borrowed from a bank or financial institution that must be repaid with interest.

2. **What does a passbook record?**
   Answer: A passbook records deposits, withdrawals, and other account transactions.

3. **What is a share?**
   Answer: A share is a unit of ownership in a company.

C. Two-Mark Descriptive Questions:

1. **What is the difference between a savings account and a current account?**
   Answer:
   (i) A savings account is commonly used by individuals who save regularly.

(ii) A current account is commonly used by businesses and traders who make frequent transactions.

2. **How can a customer make a UPI payment?**
   Answer:
   (i) The customer can scan a QR code or enter the recipient's phone number.
   (ii) The customer enters the amount and authorises the payment with a UPI PIN.

3. **Name two ways to stay safe during digital payments.**
   Answer:
   (i) Never share an OTP, PIN, or password with strangers.
   (ii) Avoid clicking unknown links received through messages.

D. Three-Mark Descriptive Questions:

1. **What are three functions of the Reserve Bank of India?**
   Answer:
   (i) The RBI supervises the Indian banking system.
   (ii) It maintains accounts of other banks and facilitates fund exchanges.
   (iii) It sets rules related to currency and benchmark interest rates.

2. **How do banks connect savers and borrowers?**
   Answer:
   (i) People deposit their surplus money in banks.
   (ii) Banks lend some of these funds to people or businesses.
   (iii) Borrowers repay the loans with interest.

E. Five-Mark Descriptive Questions:

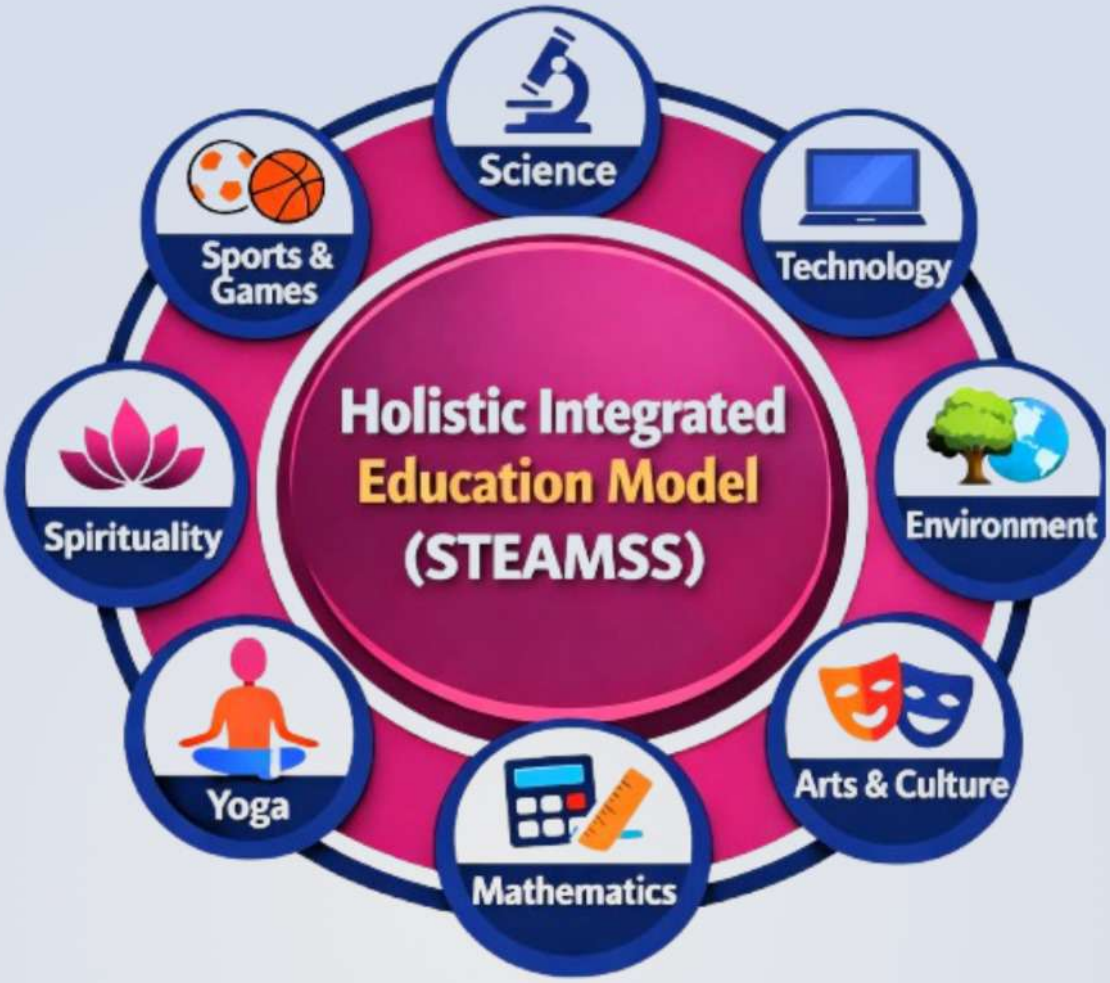
1. **Explain five ways people can make payments or transfer money through banking services.**
   Answer:
   (i) People can use cash for payments.
   (ii) They can write cheques to pay someone from a bank account.
   (iii) They can use debit cards at retail stores.
   (iv) They can transfer money through internet banking.
   (v) They can make quick digital transfers through UPI.

2. **Describe five safety practices for digital banking.**
   Answer:
   (i) Never share OTPs with anyone.
   (ii) Keep passwords and debit-card PINs private.
   (iii) Avoid clicking unknown links or videos in messages.
   (iv) Do not store sensitive banking details on a device.
   (v) Report suspected fraud through helpline 1930 or the National Cybercrime Reporting Portal.

****

ALEVOOR POORNAPRAJNA PUBLIC SCHOOL

(Proposed CBSE Tech School)



Alevoor Poornaprajna Public School (APPS) follows a unique and holistic learning approach that combines Science, Technology, Environment, Arts & Culture, Mathematics, Spiritual practices like Yoga and Meditation, and Sports-based education. This method helps in the overall development of children, including their physical, mental, emotional, social, moral, spiritual, and competitive growth.

The education provided by Alevoor Poornaprajna Public School is accessible, fair, high-quality, and well-managed, helping every child build confidence, maturity, and a competitive mindset for the future.

Few Seats are Available in Each Standard

Scan to Apply

CONTACT US

9731044005,
9844743573,
9845553341

www.alevoorpps.in

office@alevoorpps.in

admissions@alevoorpps.in